MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Functional Specification

Version: 1.1
Release date: 2016-04-22

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

© 2016 MediaTek Inc.
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Document Revision History

Revision	Date	Author	Description
1.0	2016-01-15	Yi-Chih Huang	First release
1.1	2016-04-22	Yi-Chih Huang	Modified CAM features.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table of Contents

Document Revision History **2**
Table of Contents **3**
Preface **11**
1 System Overview **12**
1.1 Highlighted Features Integrated in MT6737 12
1.2 Platform Features 14
1.3 Modem Features 16
1.4 Multimedia Features 18
1.5 Connectivity Features 20
1.6 General Descriptions 22
2 Product Description **24**
2.1 Pin Description 24
2.2 Electrical Characteristic 60
2.3 System Configuration 68
2.4 Power-on Sequence 69
2.5 Analog Baseband 70
2.6 Package Information 90
2.7 Ordering Information 91
3 MCU and BUS Fabric **92**
3.1 MCU System 92
3.2 On-chip Memory Controller 100
3.3 External Interrupt Controller 103
3.4 System Interrupt Controller 106
3.5 Infrastructure System Configuration Module 110
3.6 External Memory Interface 112
3.7 DRAM Controller 114
3.8 AP_DMA 119
3.9 CQDMA 121
4 Clock and Power Control **123**
4.1 Top Clock Generator 123
4.2 Top Reset Generate Unit 129
4.3 PMIC Wrapper 132
4.4 Frequency Hopping Controller 133
5 Peripherals **135**
5.1 Pericfg Controller 135
5.2 GPIO Control 137
5.3 Keypad Scanner 138
5.4 UART 142
5.5 USB 2.0 High Speed Dual-Role Controller 145
5.6 USBPHY Register File 150
5.7 SPI Interface Controller 153
5.8 MSDC Controller 157
5.9 AUXADC 160
5.10 I2C/SCCB Controller 163
5.11 Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) 167

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR lineiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.12 General-Purpose Timer (GPT) 169
5.13 Thermal Controller 171
5.14 IRTX....180
5.15 IrDA 185
5.16 Audio System....186
6 Multimedia Subsystem.... 190
6.1 Multimedia Subsystem Configuration 190
6.2 SMI_COMMON 193
6.3 SMI_LARB 195
6.4 CAM 197
6.5 SENINF_TOP (Sensor Interface)....198
6.6 MDP_RDMA 199
6.7 MDP RSZ 203
6.8 MDP ROT_DMA (Multimedia Data Path-Rotation DMA) 210
6.9 Display 2D Sharpness 217
6.10 DISP_OVL 221
6.11 DIPS RDMA (Display Read Direct Memory Access) 224
6.12 DISP_WDMA 228
6.13 Color Processor 231
6.14 DIPS CCORR (Display Color Correction Engine) 236
6.15 DIPS AAL (Display Adaptive Ambient Light Controller) 238
6.16 DIPS GAMMA (Display GAMMA Processing Engine) 240
6.17 DISP DITHER 241
6.18 DISPLAY PWM Generator.... 242
6.19 DPI (Digital Parallel Interface) 243
6.20 Display Serial Interface.... 246
6.21 MIPI TX Configuration Module 262
6.22 JPEG Encoder 266
6.23 Video Decoder 269
6.24 MPEG-4 Video Encoder....281
6.25 MFG 282
6.26 Multimedia Memory Management Unit (M4U).... 284
7 Analog Baseband.... 287
7.1 AP Mixedsys 287

Lists of Tables

Table 2-1. Pin coordinate (using LPDDR3).... 25
Table 2-2. Acronym for pin type 30
Table 2-3. Detailed pin description (using LPDDR3) 30
Table 2-4. Acronym for the table of state of pins.... 39
Table 2-5. State of pins.... 40
Table 2-6. Acronym for pull-up and pull-down type.... 44
Table 2-7. Pin multiplexing, capability and settings 44
Table 2-8. Absolute maximum ratings for power supply.... 60
Table 2-9. Recommended operating conditions for power supply....61
Table 2-10. LPDDR3 AC timing parameter table of external memory interface 63
Table 2-11. LPDDR2 AC timing parameter table of external memory interface.... 66

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-12. Mode selection 68
Table 2-13. Constant tied pins 68
Table 2-14. Baseband downlink specifications 71
Table 2-15. Baseband downlink specifications 73
Table 2-16. LTE_BBTX specifications 75
Table 2-17. C2K_BBTX specifications 76
Table 2-18. ETDAC specifications 77
Table 2-19. APC-DAC specifications 78
Table 2-20. Definitions of AUXADC channels 79
Table 2-21. AUXADC specifications 80
Table 2-22. Clock squarer specifications 81
Table 2-23. ARMPLL specifications 84
Table 2-24. MAINPLL specifications 84
Table 2-25. MMPLL specifications 84
Table 2-26. UNIVPLL specifications 85
Table 2-27. MSDCPLL specifications 85
Table 2-28. WPLL specifications 85
Table 2-29. WHPLL specifications 86
Table 2-30. C2KCPPLL specifications 86
Table 2-31. C2KDSPPLL specifications 86
Table 2-32. CR4PLL specifications 87
Table 2-33. VENCPLL specifications 87
Table 2-34. TVDPLL specifications 87
Table 2-35. LTEDSPPLL specifications 88
Table 2-36. APLL1 specifications 88
Table 2-37. Temperature sensor specifications 89
Table 2-38. Thermal operating specifications 90
Table 3-1. Interrupt request list for Cortex-A53 93
Table 3-2. Memory map of on-chip memory controller 100
Table 3-3. External interrupt request signal connection 104
Table 3-4. Definitions of domains 104
Table 3-5. EINT table 104
Table 3-6. DRAM bus signal list (refer to DRAMC side) 114
Table 3-7. DRAM bus command truth table (LPDDR2/3) 115
Table 3-8. Relationship between engines and devices 119
Table 4-1. PLL related control 126
Table 4-2. Clock gating settings 126
Table 5-1. SPI controller interface 153
Table 5-2. AUXADC: feature list 160
Table 5-3. AUXADC: design partition 162
Table 5-4. Operation mode of GPT 169
Table 5-5. Interface of audio sys 188
Table 6-1. Base addresses of SMI local arbiters 196
Table 6-2. Input format list 199
Table 6-3. Functional specifications of resizers 203
Table 6-4. Hardware specifications of resizers 204
Table 6-5. ROT_DMA OFST_ADDR settings for rotation/flip 212
Table 6-6. VIDO UV SEL for YUV420 format cooperated with CRSP 213
Table 6-7. Data map 244

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
weiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-8. Sequence to enable module clock 247
Table 6-9. Sequence to enable high-speed clock 247
Table 6-10. Sequence of exiting ultra-low power mode on clock lane..... 247
Table 6-11. Sequence of sleep-in control (entering ultra-low power mode) 247
Table 6-12. Sequence of sleep-out control (exiting ultra-low power mode) 248
Table 6-13. DPHY timing parameters register settings 248
Table 6-14. DPHY global operation timing parameter defined by MIPI spec 249
Table 6-15. Config. field description of main instruction 251
Table 6-16. Type-0 Tx example 252
Table 6-17. Type-1 Tx example 253
Table 6-18. Type-2 Tx example 254
Table 6-19. Type-3 Tx example 255
Table 6-20. Command mode status in debugging register 255
Table 6-21. Example of TE signaling detection 259
Table 6-22. Example of external TE pin detection 260
Table 6-23. Example of short packet transmission in video mode 260
Table 6-24. Example of long packet transmission in video mode 261
Table 6-25. MIPI PLL initial sequence 263
Table 6-26. MIPI PLL de-initial sequence 264
Table 6-27. Software control mode example 264
Table 6-28. MIPI PLL initial sequence with SSC enable 265
Table 6-29. VDEC base address 271
Table 6-30. Power down control and clock selection 276
Table 6-31. Checksum register 279

Lists of Figures

Figure 1-1. High-level MT6737 functional block diagram 13
Figure 1-2. Block diagram of MT6737 23
Figure 2-1. Ball map view for LPDDR3 24
Figure 2-2. Ball map view for LPDDR2 25
Figure 2-3. IO types in state of pins 44
Figure 2-4. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR3 commands 62
Figure 2-5. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR3 write 62
Figure 2-6. Basic LPDDR3 read timing parameter 63
Figure 2-7. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 commands 65
Figure 2-8. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 write 65
Figure 2-9. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 read 66
Figure 2-10 Power on/off Sequence by pressing PWRKEY 69
Figure 2-11. Block diagram of LTE_BBRX-ADC 71
Figure 2-12. Block diagram of C2K_BBRX-ADC 73
Figure 2-13. Block diagram of LTE_BBTX 74
Figure 2-14. Block diagram of C2K_BBTX 76
Figure 2-15. Block diagram of ETDAC 77
Figure 2-16. Block diagram of APC-DAC (same architecture for two APC-DACs) 78
Figure 2-17. Block diagram of AUXADC 79
Figure 2-18. Block diagram of ARMPLL 82
Figure 2-19. Block diagram of PLLGP 83

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR liwei9@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Figure 2-20. Outlines and dimensions of VFBGA 12.6mm*12.6mm, 641 balls, 0.4mm pitch package 90
Figure 2-21. Top marking of MT6737 ... 91
Figure 3-1. Block diagram of on-chip memory controller ... 100
Figure 3-2. Security memory protection scheme ... 101
Figure 3-3. Block diagram of external interrupt controller ... 103
Figure 3-4. System level block diagram of system interrupt controller ... 106
Figure 3-5. Block diagram of system interrupt controller ... 107
Figure 3-6. DCM in action ... 110
Figure 3-7. Top AXI fabric and control blocks ... 111
Figure 3-8. EMI/DRAM controller top connection ... 113
Figure 3-9. Block diagram of DRAM controller ... 117
Figure 3-10. APDMA block diagram ... 120
Figure 3-11. CQDMA block diagram ... 121
Figure 4-1. Block diagram of clock architecture ... 124
Figure 4-2. Example of clock multiplixer ... 124
Figure 4-3. PLL block diagram ... 125
Figure 4-4. ABIST FMETER structure ... 127
Figure 4-5. CKGEN FMETER structure ... 128
Figure 4-6. Block diagram of top reset generation unit ... 129
Figure 4-7. PMIC_WRAP architecture ... 132
Figure 4-8. Block diagram of frequency hopping controller ... 134
Figure 5-1. Block diagram of pericfg controller ... 135
Figure 5-2. GPIO block diagram ... 137
Figure 5-3. 8x8 keypad matrix (64 keys) ... 139
Figure 5-4. 3x3 keypad matrix (18 keys) ... 139
Figure 5-5. 8x8 keypad scan waveform ... 140
Figure 5-6. 5*5 keypad scan waveform ... 140
Figure 5-7. One key pressed with de-bounce mechanism denoted ... 140
Figure 5-8. (a) Two keys pressed, case 1; (b) Two keys pressed, case 2 ... 141
Figure 5-9. Block diagram of UART ... 143
Figure 5-10. USB controller block diagram ... 146
Figure 5-11. USBPHY RegFile block diagram ... 150
Figure 5-12. Pin connection between SPI master and SPI slave ... 153
Figure 5-13. SPI transmission formats ... 153
Figure 5-14. Operation flow with or without PAUSE mode ... 155
Figure 5-15. CS_N de-assert mode ... 155
Figure-5-16. Block diagram of SPI ... 155
Figure 5-17. Block diagram of MSDC controller ... 158
Figure 5-18. Block diagram of MSDC controller for emmc50 ... 158
Figure 5-19. Block diagram of AUXADC ... 161
Figure 5-20. SAR ADC architecture and conversion ... 162
Figure 5-21. Block diagram of I2C ... 166
Figure 5-22. Generation procedure of PWM ... 167
Figure 5-23. Block diagram of APXGPT ... 170
Figure 5-24. Implementation of CMOS temperature sensor ... 172
Figure 5-25. Block diagram of system temperature measurement ... 173
Figure 5-26. Block diagram of system temperature measurement ... 174
Figure 5-27. Programming flow ... 175
Figure 5-28. Immediate measurement programming flow ... 177

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Figure 5-29. Interrupt condition of high/low temperature monitoring 178
Figure 5-30. Finite state machine of high/low temperature monitoring 178
Figure 5-31. Interrupt condition of high/low offset monitoring 178
Figure 5-32. Finite state machine of high/low offset monitoring 179
Figure 5-33. Logic representation for NEC protocol 180
Figure 5-34. Pulse train in transmission of NEC protocol 180
Figure 5-35. A message is started by a 9ms AGC burst 181
Figure 5-36. A repeat code is transmitted every 110ms 181
Figure 5-37. Coding method for RC5 protocol 182
Figure 5-38. Lead pulse in RC6 protocol 183
Figure 5-39. Coding method for RC6 protocol 183
Figure 5-40. Trailer pulse in RC6 protocol 183
Figure 5-41. Block diagram of IrDA 185
Figure 5-42. Block diagram of audio sys 187
Figure 6-1. MDP function blocks of multimedia partition 191
Figure 6-2. DISP function blocks of multimedia partition 191
Figure 6-3. SMI_COMMON and neighbor blocks 193
Figure 6-4. SMI local arbiter block diagram 195
Figure 6-5. Support clipping from source frame buffer 199
Figure 6-6. Block diagram of DISP MDP_RDMA 200
Figure 6-7. SW control flow 202
Figure 6-8. HW FSM and mutex control flow 202
Figure 6-9. Separate 1D FIR operaiton 204
Figure 6-10. 4 tap cubic block diagram (Luma and Chroma data, in MT6737 4tap changes to 6tap) 205
Figure 6-11. Cubic accumulation (scaling ratio = 1x) 206
Figure 6-12. Cubic accumulation (scaling ratio = 1/2x) 206
Figure 6-13. Suggested algorithm v.s. supported size 207
Figure 6-14. Programming guide 209
Figure 6-15. Block diagram of ROT_DMA 210
Figure 6-16. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 0° rotation (scan-line) 211
Figure 6-17. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 90° rotation (scan-line) 211
Figure 6-18. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 180° rotation (scan-line) 212
Figure 6-19. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 270° rotation (scan-line) 212
Figure 6-20. Probability of crossing 256-byte boundary by random access 215
Figure 6-21. Scan-line request without considering 256-byte boundary 215
Figure 6-22. Scan-line request considering 256-byte boundary 216
Figure 6-23. 4-16 burst in 270° rotation with/without flip 216
Figure 6-24. Block diagram of display 2D sharpness 217
Figure 6-25. Block diagram of sharpness core 217
Figure 6-26. Visual effect of 2-dimensional sharpness 218
Figure 6-27. Visual effect of peaking by color 218
Figure 6-28. Usage scenarios 219
Figure 6-29. Gain curve control of sharpness 219
Figure 6-30. Block diagram of DISP_OVL 222
Figure 6-31. Typical DISP_OVL programming procedure 223
Figure 6-32. Block diagram of RDMA engine 225
Figure 6-33. General programming sequence 225
Figure 6-34. Basic memory mode configuration 226
Figure 6-35. Programmable color matrix 226

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Figure 6-36. Byte/RGB swap ... 227
Figure 6-37. Block diagram of DISP_WDMA ... 228
Figure 6-38. Typical DISP_WDMA programming sequence ... 230
Figure 6-39. Block diagram of color processor ... 232
Figure 6-40. 20 hue phases distribution ... 232
Figure 6-41. Partial hue adjustment example ... 233
Figure 6-42. Contrast/brightness adjustment example ... 233
Figure 6-43. Chroma boost demonstration ... 234
Figure 6-44. Example of partial S adjustment for one hue phase ... 234
Figure 6-45. Illustration of global saturation adjustment ... 235
Figure 6-46. Block diagram of color correction ... 236
Figure 6-47. Visual effect of color correction ... 237
Figure 6-48. Block diagram of AAL processor ... 238
Figure 6-49. Visual effect of DRE enhancement ... 239
Figure 6-50. Visual effect of gamma correction ... 240
Figure 6-51. Illustration of general timing relationship ... 243
Figure 6-52. Data/Clock timing ... 244
Figure 6-53. Programming flow diagram ... 245
Figure 6-54. Registers for data lane timing parameters ... 250
Figure 6-55. Registers for clock lane timing paramaters ... 250
Figure 6-56. Register for BTA timing parameters ... 250
Figure 6-57. DSI command queue instruction format ... 251
Figure 6-58. Type-0 instruction format ... 252
Figure 6-59. Type-1 instruction format ... 253
Figure 6-60. Type-2 instruction format ... 254
Figure 6-61. Type-3 instruction format ... 255
Figure 6-62. Non-burst transmission: sync-pulse mode ... 256
Figure 6-63. Sync-pulse mode line period ... 257
Figure 6-64. Sync-pulse mode word-count parameters ... 257
Figure 6-65. Non-burst transmission: Sync-event mode ... 257
Figure 6-66. Sync-event mode line period ... 258
Figure 6-67. Sync-event mode word-count parameters ... 258
Figure 6-68. Burst mode transmission ... 259
Figure 6-69. Initial waveform of MIPI PLL ... 263
Figure 6-70. Procedure of JPEG encoder ... 266
Figure 6-71. Memory footprint of source frame buffer ... 268
Figure 6-72. Block diagram of video decoder ... 270
Figure 6-73. Interface of VDEC ... 270
Figure 6-74. VDEC hardware architecture ... 272
Figure 6-75. VLD hardware architecture ... 272
Figure 6-76. VDEC decoding flow ... 273
Figure 6-77. Software reset and power control ... 274
Figure 6-78. Software reset and power control (turn off VDEC auto power down) ... 275
Figure 6-79. Initial fetch and initial Barrel-shift ... 277
Figure 6-80. Flow chart of initial fetch and initial Barrel-shift ... 277
Figure 6-81. Block diagram of bitstream buffer and barrel shifter ... 278
Figure 6-82. Block diagram of barrel shifter and input window ... 278
Figure 6-83. Field compact mode and progressive mode ... 279
Figure 6-84. Block diagram of MPEG-4 VENC ... 281

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR rlweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Figure 6-85. Block diagram and interface of MFG 282
Figure 6-86. Descriptor attributes 285
Figure 6-87. MM bus architecture 285
Figure 6-88. Block diagram of M4U 286
Figure 7-1. PLL block diagram 287

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Preface

Acronyms for register types

R/W	For both read and write access
RO	Read only
RC	Read only. After the register bank is read, every bit that is HIGH(1) will be cleared to LOW(0) automatically.
WO	Write only
W1S	Write only. When data bits are written to the register bank, every bit that is HIGH(1) will cause the corresponding bit to be set to 1. Data bits that are LOW(0) have no effects on the corresponding bit.
W1C	Write only. When data bits are written to the register bank, every bit that is HIGH(1) will cause the corresponding bit to be cleared to 0. Data bits that are LOW(0) have no effects on the corresponding bit.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

© 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1 System Overview

MT6737, with integrated Bluetooth, FM, WLAN and GPS modules, is a highly integrated baseband platform incorporating modem, application processing and connectivity subsystems to enable LTE smart phone applications. MT6737 integrates a Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ operating up to 1.25GHz, an ARM® Cortex-R4 MCU and a powerful multi-standard video accelerator. MT6737 interfaces to LPDDR2/3 optimal performance and also supports booting from eMMC to minimize the overall BOM cost. In addition, an extensive set of interfaces are included to interface to cameras, touch-screen displays, and MMC/SD cards.

The application processor, a Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ which includes a NEON multimedia processing engine, offers processing power necessary to support the latest OpenOS along with its demanding applications such as web browsing, email, GPS navigation and games. All while viewed on a high resolution touch screen display with graphics enhanced by the 2D and 3D graphics acceleration. The multi-standard video accelerator and an advanced audio subsystem are also included to provide advanced multimedia applications and services such as streaming audio and video, a multitude of decoders and encoders such as H.264 and MPEG-4. Audio supports include FR, HR, EFR, AMR FR, AMR HR and Wide-Band AMR vocoders, polyphonic ringtones and advanced audio functions such as echo cancellation, hands-free speakerphone operation and noise cancellation.

An ARM® Cortex-R4, DSP, and 2G and 3G coprocessors provide a powerful modem subsystem capable of supporting LTE Cat 4 (150Mbps), Category 24 (42 Mbps) HSDPA downlink and Category 7 (11 Mbps) HSUPA uplink data rates, Category 14 (2.8Mbps) TD-HSDPA downlink and Category 6 (2.2Mbps) TD-HSUPA uplink as well as Class 12 GPRS, EDGE.

MT6737 also embodies wireless communication device, including WLAN, Bluetooth and GPS. With four advanced radio technologies integrated into one single chip, MT6737 provides the best and most convenient connectivity solution in the industry.

The enhanced overall quality is achieved for simultaneous voice, data, and audio/video transmission on mobile phones. The small footprint with low-power consumption greatly reduces the PCB layout resource.

1.1 Highlighted Features Integrated in MT6737

- Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ operating at 1.25GHz
- LPDDR2/LPDDR3 up to 3GB, 640MHz
- LTE Cat 4 (150Mbps)
- Embedded connectivity system including WLAN/BT/FM/GPS
- Resolution up to HD (1280*720)
- OpenGL ES 3.0 3D graphic accelerator
- ISP supports 13MP@28fps.
- MPEG4 720p @ 30fps encoder
- Speech codec (FR, HR, EFR, AMR FR, AMR HR and Wide-Band AMR)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

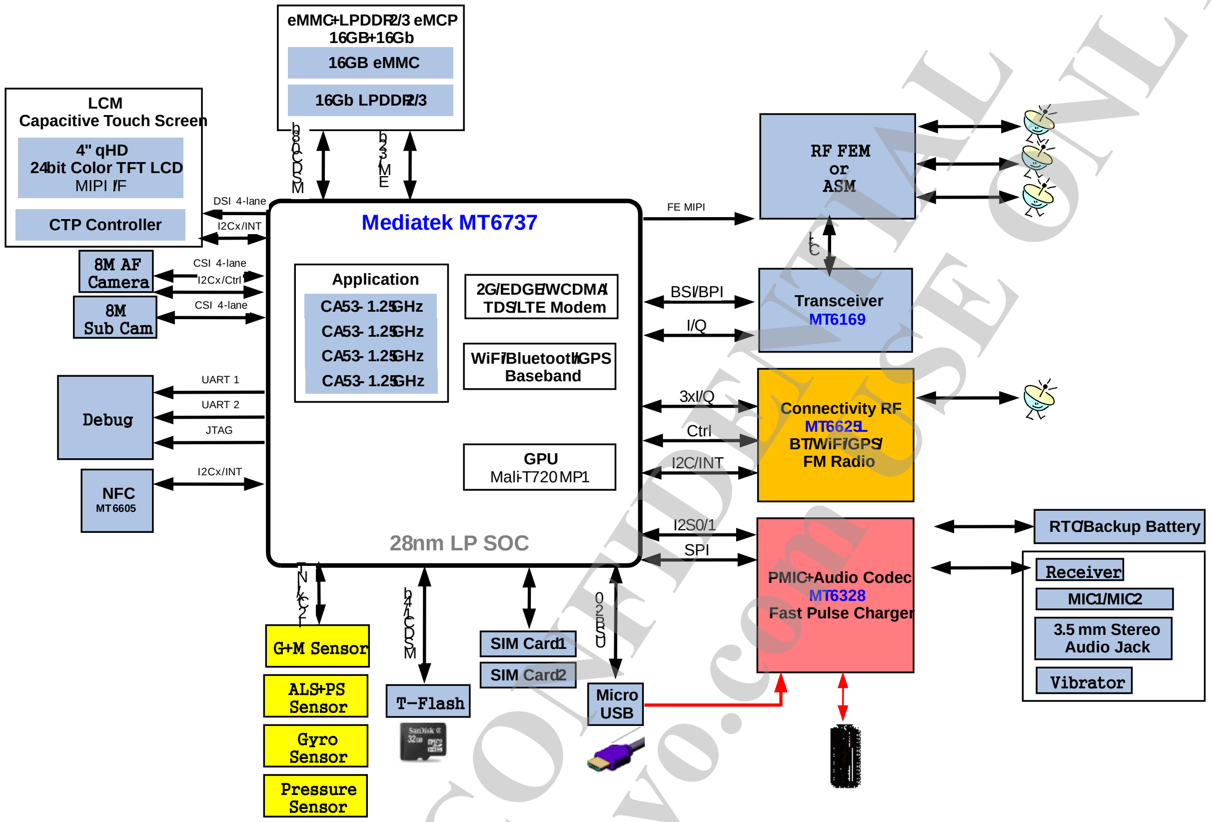


Figure 1-1. High-level MT6737 functional block diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1.2 Platform Features

- **General**
  - Smartphone two MCU subsystems architecture
  - eMMC bootloader

- **AP MCU subsystem**
  - Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCoreTM operating at 1.25GHz
  - NEON multimedia processing engine with SIMDv2/VFPv4 ISA support
  - 32KB L1 I-cache and 32KB L1 D-cache
  - 256KB unified L2 cache
  - DVFS technology with adaptive operating voltage from 0.95V to 1.26V

- **MD MCU subsystem**
  - ARM® Cortex-R4 processor with maximum 600MHz operation frequency
  - 64KB I-cache, 64KB D-cache
  - 512KB TCM (tightly-coupled memory)
  - Coresonic DSP for running LTE modem tasks, with maximum 300MHz operation frequency
  - FD216 DSP for running modem/voice tasks, with maximum 250MHz operation frequency
  - High-performance AXI and AHB bus
  - General DMA engine and dedicated DMA channels for peripheral data transfer
  - Watchdog timer for system error recovery
  - Power management for clock gating control

- **MD external interfaces**
  - Dual SIM/USIM interface supported
  - Interface pins with RF and radio-related peripherals (antenna tuner, PA, ...)

- **External memory interface**
  - Supports LPDDR2/3 up to 3GB
  - 32-bit data bus width
  - Memory clock up to 640MHz
  - Supports self-refresh/partial self-refresh mode
  - Low-power operation
  - Programmable slew rate for memory controller's IO pads
  - Supports dual rank memory device
  - Advanced bandwidth arbitration control

- **Security**
  - ARM® TrustZone® Security
  - Hardware Crypto Engine support

- **Peripherals**
  - USB2.0 high-speed OTG supporting 8 Tx and 8 Rx endpoints
  - eMMC5.0 supports
  - 4 UARTs for external devices and debugging interfaces
  - SPI for external devices
  - 4 I2C to control peripheral devices, e.g. CMOS image sensor, LCM or FM receiver module
  - I2S for connection with optional external hi-end audio codec
  - GPIOs
  - 2 sets of memory card controller supporting SD/SDHC/MS/MSPRO and MMC protocols
  - 1 set of programmable IRTX for remote control (Android API supported)
  - 1 set of IrDA
  - 6 sets of programmable PWM (1 channel reserved for IRTX software mode)

- **Operating conditions**
  - Core voltage: 1.05V

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- Processor DVFS voltage : 0.95V~1.26V (Typ. 1.05V; Sleep mode 0.85V)
- Processor SRAM voltage : 1.05V~1.26V (Typ. 1.05V; Sleep mode 0.85V)
- GPU voltage : 1.05V/1.15V/1.25V
- I/O voltage: 1.8V/2.8V/3.3V
- Memory: 1.2V
- LCM interface: 1.8V
- Clock source: 26MHz, 32.768kHz

- **Package**
  - Type: VFBGA
  - 12.6mm*12.6mm
  - Height: 0.9mm maximum
  - Ball count: 641 balls
  - Ball pitch: 0.4mm

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

© 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1.3 Modem Features

- **LTE**
  - FDD: up to 150 Mbps downlink, 50 Mbps uplink
  - TDD: up to 150 Mbps downlink, 50 Mbps uplink
  - 1.4 to 20 MHz RF bandwidth
  - 2*2 downlink SU-MIMO; 4*2 downlink SU-MIMO
  - IPv6, QoS
  - Inter-RAT capabilities with HSPA+, EDGE, and applicable backward-compatible modes
  - SNOW3G/ZUC cipher offload engine

- **3G UMTS FDD supported features**
  - 3G modem supports most main features in 3GPP Release 7 and Release 8
  - CPC (DTX in CELL_DCH, UL DRX DL DRX), HS-SCCH-less, HS-DSCH
  - Dual cell operation
  - MAC-ehs
  - Two DRX (receiver diversity) schemes in URA_PCH and CELL_PCH
  - Uplink Cat. 7 (16QAM), throughput up to 11.5Mbps
  - Downlink Cat. 24 (64QAM, dual-cell HSDPA), throughput up to 42.2Mbps
  - Fast dormancy
  - ETWS
  - Network selection enhancements

- **TD-SCDMA**
  - CDMA/HSDPA/HSUPA baseband
  - Supports TD-SCDMA Bands 34, 39 & 40 and Quad band GSM/EDGE
  - Circuit-switched voice and data, and packet-switched data
  - 384/384Kbps class in UL/DL for TD-SCDMA
  - TD-HSDPA: 2.8Mbps DL (Cat.14)
  - TD-HSUPA: 2.2Mbps UL (Cat.6)
  - F8/F9 ciphering/integrity protection

- **Radio interface and baseband front-end**
  - High dynamic range delta-sigma ADC converts the downlink analog I and Q signals to digital baseband
  - 10-bit D/A converter for Automatic Power Control (APC)
  - Programmable radio Rx filter with adaptive gain control
  - Dedicated Rx filter for FB acquisition
  - Baseband Parallel Interface (BPI) with programmable driving strength
  - Supports multi-band

- **GSM modem and voice CODEC**
  - Dial tone generation
  - Noise reduction
  - Echo suppression
  - Advanced sidetone oscillation reduction
  - Digital sidetone generator with programmable gain
  - Two programmable acoustic compensation filters
  - GSM quad vocoders for adaptive multirate (AMR), enhanced full rate (EFR), full rate (FR) and half rate (HR)
  - GSM channel coding, equalization and A5/1, A5/2 and A5/3 ciphering
  - GPRS GEA1, GEA2 and GEA3 ciphering
  - Programmable GSM/GPRS/EDGE modem
  - Packet switched data with CS1/CS2/CS3/CS4 coding schemes
  - GSM circuit switch data
  - GPRS/EDGE Class 12
  - Supports SAIC (single antenna interference cancellation) technology
  - Supports VAMOS (Voice services over Adaptive Multi-user channels on One Slot) technology in R9 spec

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- **CDMA2000**
  - Supports CDMA2000 1xRTT (release 1 and Advanced) and CDMA2000 HRPD/1xEV-DO Revision 1 and A.
  - Hybrid operation between 1x and HEPD
  - Simultaneous hybrid dual receiver (SHDR) support
  - Supports maximum 1x data rates of 153.6kbps for forward and reverse links and DO data rates of 3.1Mbps for forward link and 1.8Mbps for reverse link.
  - Supports 1x Diversity

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

 © 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1.4 Multimedia Features

- **Display**
  - Supports portrait panel resolution up to HD (1280x720)
  - MIPI DSI interface (4 data lanes)
  - Embedded LCD gamma correction
  - Supports true colors
  - 4 overlay layers with per-pixel alpha channel and gamma table
  - Supports spatial and temporal dithering
  - Supports side-by-side format output to stereo 3D panel in both portrait and landscape modes
  - Supports color enhancement
  - Supports adaptive contrast enhancement
  - Supports image/video/graphic sharpness enhancement
  - Supports dynamic backlight scaling
- **Graphics**
  - OpenGL ES 1.1/2.0/3.0 3D graphic accelerator capable of processing 71.5M tri/sec and 650M pixel/sec @ 650MHz
  - OpenVG1.1 vector graphics accelerator
- **Image**
  - Integrated image signal processor supporting 13 MP
  - Supports video stabilization
  - Supports preference color adjustment
  - Supports noise reduction
  - Supports lens shading correction
  - Supports auto sensor defect pixel correction
  - Supports AE/AWB/AF
  - Supports edge enhancement (sharpness)
  - Supports face detection and visual tracking
  - Supports zero shutter delay image capture
  - Supports capturing full size image when recording video (up to 13M sensor)
  - Supports MIPI CSI-2 high-speed camera serial interface with 4 data lane (for main) + 4 data lane (for sub)
  - Hardware JPEG encoder: baseline encoding with 120M pixel/sec
  - YUV422/YUV420 color format and EXIF/JFIF format support
  - Hardware WebP decoder
- **Video**
  - H.264 decoder: baseline 1080p @ 30fps/40Mbps (HW: CBP)
  - H.264 decoder: main/high profile 1080p@30fps/40Mbps
  - Sorenson H.263/H.263 decoder: 1080p @ 30fps/40Mbps
  - MPEG-4 SP/ASP decoder: 1080p @ 30fps/40Mbps
  - DIVX4/DIVX5/DIVX6/DIVX HD/XVID decoder: 1080p @ 30fps/40Mbps
  - MPEG-4 encoder: Simple profile 720p@ 30fps
  - H.263 encoder: VGA@ 30fps (SW)
- **Audio**
  - Hardware sampling rates supported: 8kHz to 192kHz
  - Hardware Sample formats supported: 8-bit/16-bit/24-bit, Mono/Stereo
  - Hardware interfaces supported: DAI, I2S, PCM
  - Software 4-band IIR compensation filter to enhance loudspeaker responses
  - Software proprietary audio post-processing technologies: BesLoudness(MB-DRC), BesSurround, Android built-in post processing
  - Software audio encode: AMR-NB, AMR-WB, AAC, OGG, ADPCM
  - Software audio decode: WAV, MP3, MP2, AAC, AMR-NB, AMR-WB, MIDI, Vorbis, APE, AAC-plus v1, AAC-plus v2, FLAC, WMA, ADPCM

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- **Speech (in DSP)**
  - Speech codec (FR, HR, EFR, AMR FR, AMR HR and Wide-Band AMR)
  - CTM
  - Noise reduction
  - Noise suppression
  - Noise cancellation
  - Dual-MIC noise cancellation
  - Echo cancellation
  - Echo suppression
  - Dual-MIC input
  - Digital MIC input

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1.5 Connectivity Features

MT6737 includes four wireless connectivity functions:

- WLAN
- Bluetooth
- GPS
- FM Receiver

The RF parts of those four blocks are placed on chip MT6625L. With four advanced radio technologies integrated on one chip, MT6737/MT6625L is the best and most convenient connectivity solution in the industry, implementing advanced and sophisticated Radio Coexistence algorithms and hardware mechanisms. It supports single antenna sharing among 2.4GHz Bluetooth, 2.4GHz/5GHz WLAN and 1.575GHz for GPS. The enhanced overall quality is achieved for simultaneous voice, data and audio/video transmission on mobile phones and Media Tablets. The small footprint with low-power consumption greatly reduces PCB layout resource.

- **Supports integrated Wi-Fi/Bluetooth/GPS**
  - Single antenna for Bluetooth and WLAN/GPS/Bluetooth
  - Self calibration
  - Single TCXO and TMS for GPS, BT and WLAN
  - Best-in-class current consumption performance
  - Intelligent BT/WLAN coexistence scheme that goes beyond PTA signaling (e.g. transmit window and duration that take into account protocol exchange sequence, frequency, etc.)
- **Wi-Fi**
  - Dual-band (2.4GHz/5GHz) single stream 802.11 a/b/g/n MAC/BB/RF
  - 802.11 d/h/k compliant
  - Security: WFA WPA/WPA2 personal, WPS2.0, WAPI (hardware)
  - QoS: WFA WMM, WMM PS
  - 802.11n optional features: STBC, A-MPDU, Blk-Ack, RIFS, MCS Feedback, 20/40MHz coexistence (PCO), unscheduled PSMP
  - Supports 802.11w protected managed frames
  - Supports Wi-Fi HotSpot 2.0
  - Integrated 2.4GHz PA with max. 19dBm CCK output power and 5GHz PA with max. 17dBm OFDM 54Mbps output power
  - Typical Rx sensitivity with companion chip modem: -75dBm at 11g 54Mbps mode and -75.5dBm at 11a 54Mbps mode
  - Per packet TX power control
- **Bluetooth**
  - Bluetooth specification v2.1+EDR
  - Bluetooth specification 3.0+HS compliance
  - Bluetooth v4.0 Low Energy (LE)
  - Integrated PA with 6dBm (class 1) transmit power
  - Typical Rx sensitivity with companion chip modem: GFSK -92.5dBm, DQPSK -91.5dBm, 8-DPSK -86dBm
  - Best-in-class BT/Wi-Fi coexistence performance
  - Up to 4 piconets simultaneously with background inquiry/page scan
  - Supports Scatternet
  - Packet Loss Concealment (PLC) function for better voice quality
  - Low-power scan function to reduce power consumption in scan modes

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- **GPS**
  - Supports GPS/QZSS/SBAS (Satellite-Based Augmentation Systems): WAAS/MSAS/EGNOS/GAGAN
  - Best-in-class sensitivity performance
    - -165 dBm tracking sensitivity
    - -163 dBm hot start sensitivity
    - -148 dBm cold start sensitivity
    - -151 dBm warm start sensitivity
  - AGPS sensitivity is 6dB design margin over 3GPP
  - Full A-GPS capability (E911/SUPL/EPO/HotStill)
  - Active interference cancellation for up to 8 in-band tones
  - Supports both TCXO and TMS (Thermister Crystal) clock source
  - 5Hz update rate

- **FM**
  - 65-108MHz with 50kHz step
  - RDS/RBDS
  - Digital stereo demodulator
  - Simplified digital audio interface (I2S)
  - Stereo noise reduction
  - Audio sensitivity 2dBµVemf (SINAD=26dB)
  - Audio SINAD 60dB
  - Anti-jamming
  - Integrated short antenna

- **WBT IPD**
  - Integrated matching network, balance band-pass filter, GPS-WBT diplexer
  - Fully integrated in one IPD die
  - Single and dual antenna operation

- **GPS IPD**
  - Integrated high-pass type matching network and 5th-order ellipse low-pass filter
  - Fully integrated in one IPD die
  - Single and dual antenna operatio

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwciaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1.6 General Descriptions

MediaTek's MT6737 hardware family is a highly integrated LTE System-on-Chip (SoC) which incorporates advanced features, e.g. LTE cat.4 modem, Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ operating at 1.25GHz, 3D graphics (OpenGL|ES 3.0), 13M camera ISP, LPDDR2 533/LPDDR3 640MHz and High-Definition 1080p video decoder. MT6737 helps phone manufacturers build high-performance LTE smart phones with PC-like browser, 3D gaming and cinema class home entertainment experiences.

The World-Leading Technology!
Based on MediaTek's world-leading mobile chip SoC architecture with advanced 28nm process, MT6737 is the brand-new generation smart phone SoC integrating MediaTek LTE cat.4 modem, 1.25GHz Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™, 3D graphics and High-Definition 1080p video decoder.

Rich in Features, High-Valued Product!
To enrich the camera features, MT6737 equips a 13M camera ISP with advanced features e.g. auto focus, anti-handshake, auto sensor defect pixel correction, continuous video AF, face detection, burst shot, and panorama view.

Incredible Browser Experience!
The 1.25GHz Quad-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ with NEON multimedia processing engine brings PC-like browser experiences and helps accelerate OpenGL|ES 3.0 3D Adobe Flash 10 rendering performance to an unbeatable level.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

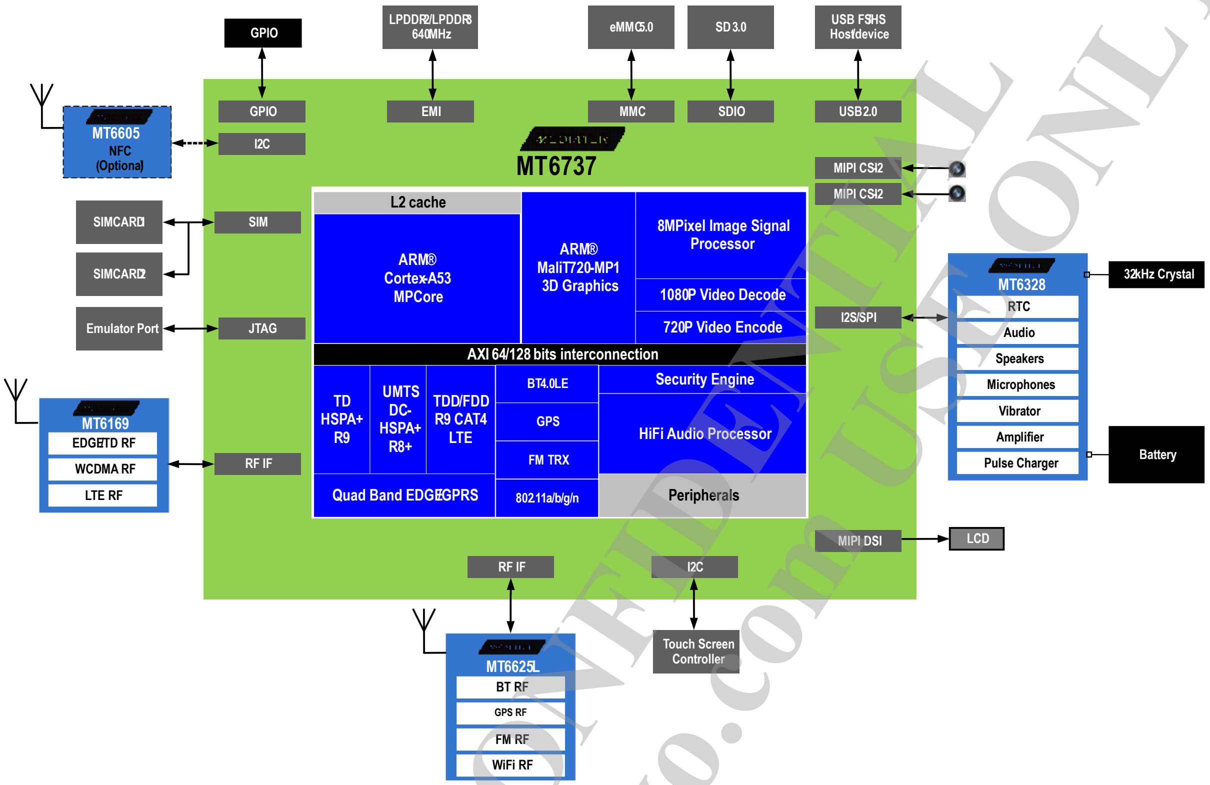


Figure 1-2. Block diagram of MT6737

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2 Product Description

2.1 Pin Description

2.1.1 Ball Map View

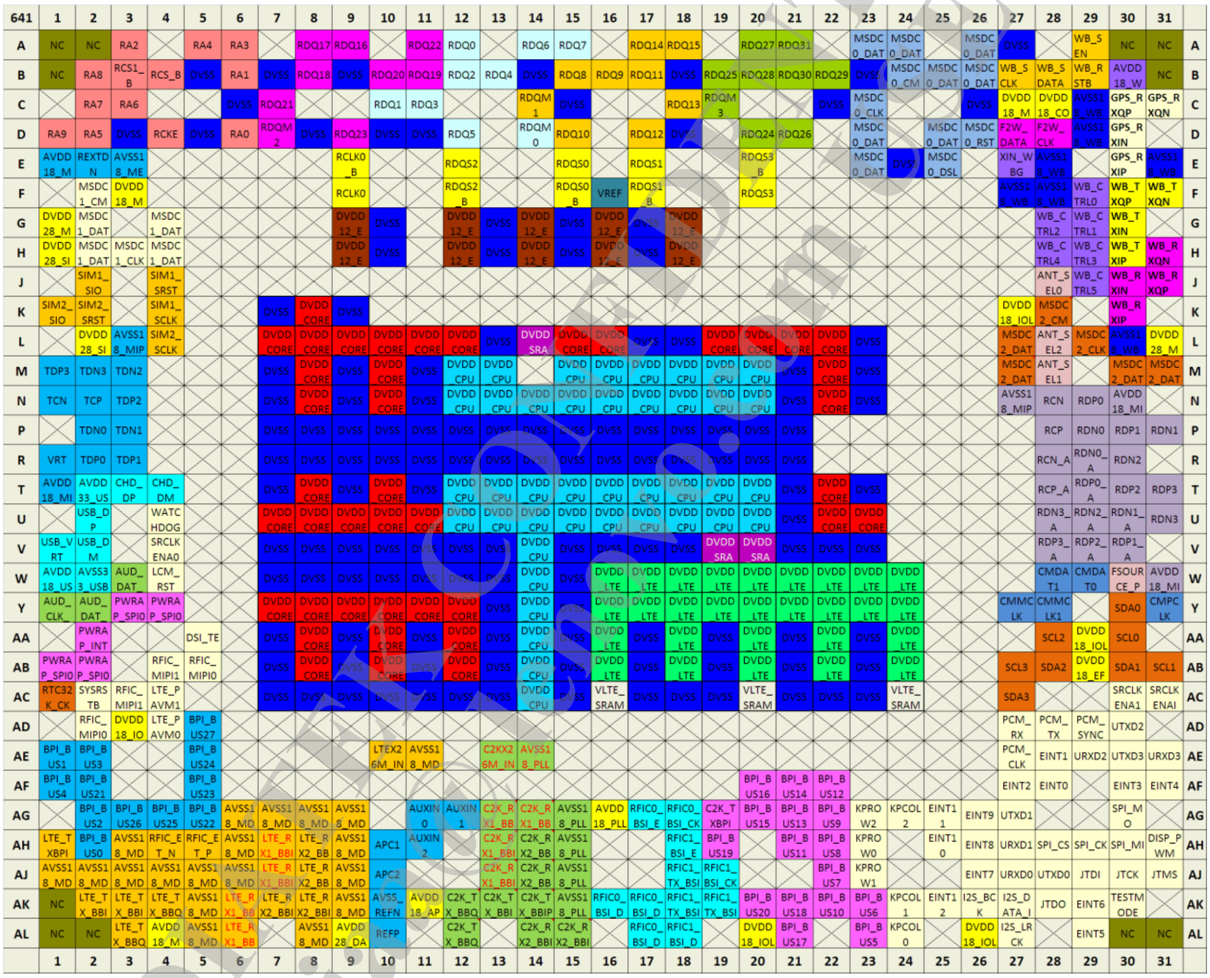


Figure 2-1. Ball map view for LPDDR3

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

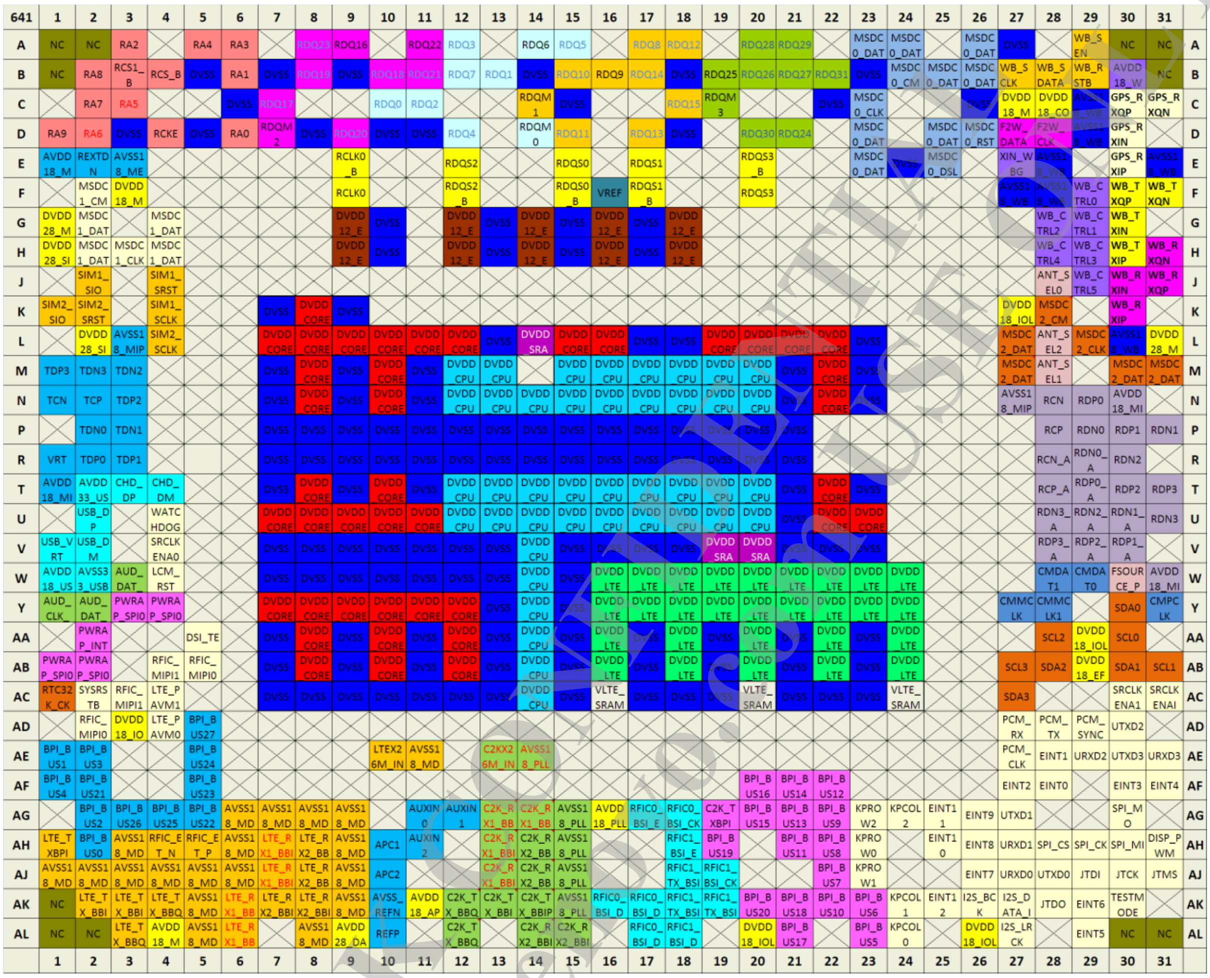


Figure 2-2. Ball map view for LPDDR2

2.1.2 Pin Coordinate

Table 2-1. Pin coordinate (using LPDDR3)

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
A1	NC	M23	DVSS	AA28	SCL2
A2	NC	M27	NC	AA29	DVDD18_IOLB
A3	RA2	M28	ANT_SEL1	AA30	SCL0
A5	RA4	M30	NC	AB1	PWRAP_SPI0_MI
A6	RA3	M31	NC	AB2	PWRAP_SPI0_MO
A8	RDQ17	N1	TCN	AB4	RFIC_MIPI1_SDATA
A9	RDQ16	N2	TCP	AB5	RFIC_MIPI0_SDATA
A11	RDQ22	N3	TDP2	AB7	DVSS
A12	RDQ0	N7	DVSS	AB8	DVDD_CORE
A14	RDQ6	N8	DVDD_CORE	AB9	DVSS
A15	RDQ7	N9	DVSS	AB10	DVDD_CORE
A17	RDQ14	N10	DVDD_CORE	AB11	DVSS
A18	RDQ15	N11	DVSS	AB12	DVDD_CORE

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
A20	RDQ27	N12	DVDD_CPU	AB13	DVSS
A21	RDQ31	N13	DVDD_CPU	AB14	DVDD_CPU
A23	MSDC0_DAT4	N14	DVDD_CPU	AB15	DVSS
A24	MSDC0_DAT5	N15	DVDD_CPU	AB16	DVDD_LTE
A26	MSDC0_DAT0	N16	DVDD_CPU	AB17	DVSS
A27	DVSS	N17	DVDD_CPU	AB18	DVDD_LTE
A29	WB_SEN	N18	DVDD_CPU	AB19	DVSS
A30	NC	N19	DVDD_CPU	AB20	DVDD_LTE
A31	NC	N20	DVDD_CPU	AB21	DVSS
B1	NC	N21	DVSS	AB22	DVDD_LTE
B2	RA8	N22	DVDD_CORE	AB23	DVSS
B3	RCS1_B	N23	DVSS	AB24	DVDD_LTE
B4	RCS_B	N27	AVSS18_MIPIRX0	AB27	SCL3
B5	DVSS	N28	RCN	AB28	SDA2
B6	RA1	N29	RDP0	AB29	DVDD18_EFUSE
B7	DVSS	N30	AVDD18_MIPIRX0	AB30	SDA1
B8	RDQ18	P2	TDN0	AB31	SCL1
B9	DVSS	P3	TDN1	AC1	RTC32K_CK
B10	RDQ20	P7	DVSS	AC2	SYSRSTB
B11	RDQ19	P8	DVSS	AC3	RFIC_MIPI1_SCLK
B12	RDQ2	P9	DVSS	AC4	LTE_PAVM1
B13	RDQ4	P10	DVSS	AC7	DVSS
B14	DVSS	P11	DVSS	AC8	DVSS
B15	RDQ8	P12	DVSS	AC9	DVSS
B16	RDQ9	P13	DVSS	AC10	DVSS
B17	RDQ11	P14	DVSS	AC11	DVSS
B18	DVSS	P15	DVSS	AC12	DVSS
B19	RDQ25	P16	DVSS	AC13	DVSS
B20	RDQ28	P17	DVSS	AC14	DVDD_CPU
B21	RDQ30	P18	DVSS	AC15	DVSS
B22	RDQ29	P19	DVSS	AC16	VLTE_SRAM
B23	DVSS	P20	DVSS	AC17	DVSS
B24	MSDC0_CMD	P21	DVSS	AC18	DVSS
B25	MSDC0_DAT2	P28	RCP	AC19	DVSS
B26	MSDC0_DAT1	P29	RDN0	AC20	VLTE_SRAM
B27	WB_SCLK	P30	RDP1	AC21	DVSS
B28	WB_SDATA	P31	RDN1	AC22	DVSS
B29	WB_RSTB	R1	VRT	AC23	DVSS
B30	AVDD18_WBG	R2	TDP0	AC24	VLTE_SRAM
B31	NC	R3	TDP1	AC27	SDA3
C2	RA7	R7	DVSS	AC30	SRCLKENA1
C3	RA6	R8	DVSS	AC31	SRCLKENAI
C6	DVSS	R9	DVSS	AD2	RFIC_MIPI0_SCLK
C7	RDQ21	R10	DVSS	AD3	DVDD18_IORB
C10	RDQ1	R11	DVSS	AD4	LTE_PAVM0
C11	RDQ3	R12	DVSS	AD5	BPI_BUS27
C14	RDQM1	R13	DVSS	AD27	PCM_RX
C15	DVSS	R14	DVSS	AD28	PCM_TX
C18	RDQ13	R15	DVSS	AD29	PCM_SYNC

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lizeliang@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
C19	RDQM3	R16	DVSS	AD30	UTXD2
C22	DVSS	R17	DVSS	AE1	BPI_BUS1
C23	MSDC0_CLK	R18	DVSS	AE2	BPI_BUS3
C26	DVSS	R19	DVSS	AE5	BPI_BUS24
C27	DVDD18_MC0	R20	DVSS	AE10	LTEX26M_IN
C28	DVDD18_CONN	R21	DVSS	AE11	AVSS18_MD
C29	AVSS18_WBG	R28	RCN_A	AE13	C2KX26M_IN
C30	GPS_RXQP	R29	RDN0_A	AE14	AVSS18_PLLGP
C31	GPS_RXQN	R30	RDN2	AE27	PCM_CLK
D1	RA9	T1	AVDD18_MIPITX	AE28	EINT1
D2	RA5	T2	AVDD33_USB	AE29	URXD2
D3	DVSS	T3	CHD_DP	AE30	UTXD3
D4	RCKE	T4	CHD_DM	AE31	URXD3
D5	DVSS	T7	DVSS	AF1	BPI_BUS4
D6	RA0	T8	DVDD_CORE	AF2	BPI_BUS21
D7	RDQM2	T9	DVSS	AF5	BPI_BUS23
D8	DVSS	T10	DVDD_CORE	AF20	BPI_BUS16
D9	RDQ23	T11	DVSS	AF21	BPI_BUS14
D10	DVSS	T12	DVDD_CPU	AF22	BPI_BUS12
D11	DVSS	T13	DVDD_CPU	AF27	EINT2
D12	RDQ5	T14	DVDD_CPU	AF28	EINT0
D14	RDQM0	T15	DVDD_CPU	AF30	EINT3
D15	RDQ10	T16	DVDD_CPU	AF31	EINT4
D17	RDQ12	T17	DVDD_CPU	AG2	BPI_BUS2
D18	DVSS	T18	DVDD_CPU	AG3	BPI_BUS26
D20	RDQ24	T19	DVDD_CPU	AG4	BPI_BUS25
D21	RDQ26	T20	DVDD_CPU	AG5	BPI_BUS22
D23	MSDC0_DAT6	T21	DVSS	AG6	AVSS18_MD
D25	MSDC0_DAT7	T22	DVDD_CORE	AG7	AVSS18_MD
D26	MSDC0_RSTB	T23	DVSS	AG8	AVSS18_MD
D27	F2W_DATA	T28	RCP_A	AG9	AVSS18_MD
D28	F2W_CLK	T29	RDP0_A	AG11	AUXIN0
D29	AVSS18_WBG	T30	RDP2	AG12	AUXIN1
D30	GPS_RXIN	T31	RDP3	AG13	C2K_RX1_BBQP
E1	AVDD18_MEMPLL	U2	USB_DP	AG14	C2K_RX1_BBQN
E2	REXTDN	U4	WATCHDOG	AG15	AVSS18_PLLGP
E3	AVSS18_MEMPLL	U7	DVDD_CORE	AG16	AVDD18_PLLGP
E9	RCLK0_B	U8	DVDD_CORE	AG17	RFIC0_BSI_EN
E12	RDQS2	U9	DVDD_CORE	AG18	RFIC0_BSI_CK
E15	RDQS0	U10	DVDD_CORE	AG19	C2K_TXBPI
E17	RDQS1	U11	DVDD_CORE	AG20	BPI_BUS15
E20	RDQS3_B	U12	DVDD_CPU	AG21	BPI_BUS13
E23	MSDC0_DAT3	U13	DVDD_CPU	AG22	BPI_BUS9
E24	DVSS	U14	DVDD_CPU	AG23	KPROW2
E25	MSDC0_DSL	U15	DVDD_CPU	AG24	KPCOL2
E27	XIN_WBG	U16	DVDD_CPU	AG25	EINT11
E28	AVSS18_WBG	U17	DVDD_CPU	AG26	EINT9
E30	GPS_RXIP	U18	DVDD_CPU	AG27	UTXD1
E31	AVSS18_WBG	U19	DVDD_CPU	AG30	SPI_MO

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR linweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
F2	MSDC1_CMD	U20	DVDD_CPU	AH1	LTE_TXBPI
F3	DVDD18_MC1	U21	DVSS	AH2	BPI_BUS0
F9	RCLK0	U22	DVDD_CORE	AH3	AVSS18_MD
F12	RDQS2_B	U23	DVDD_CORE	AH4	RFIC_ET_N
F15	RDQS0_B	U28	RDN3_A	AH5	RFIC_ET_P
F16	VREF	U29	RDN2_A	AH6	AVSS18_MD
F17	RDQS1_B	U30	RDN1_A	AH7	LTE_RX1_BBIP
F20	RDQS3	U31	RDN3	AH8	LTE_RX2_BBQN
F27	AVSS18_WBG	V1	USB_VRT	AH9	AVSS18_MD
F28	AVSS18_WBG	V2	USB_DM	AH10	APC1
F29	WB_CTRL0	V4	SRCLKENA0	AH11	AUXIN2
F30	WB_TXQP	V7	DVSS	AH13	C2K_RX1_BBIN
F31	WB_TXQN	V8	DVSS	AH14	C2K_RX2_BBQP
G1	DVDD28_MC1	V9	DVSS	AH15	AVSS18_PLLGP
G2	MSDC1_DAT3	V10	DVSS	AH18	RFIC1_BSI_EN
G4	MSDC1_DAT0	V11	DVSS	AH19	BPI_BUS19
G9	DVDD12_EMI	V12	DVSS	AH21	BPI_BUS11
G10	DVSS	V13	DVSS	AH22	BPI_BUS8
G12	DVDD12_EMI	V14	DVDD_CPU	AH23	KPROW0
G13	DVSS	V15	DVSS	AH25	EINT10
G14	DVDD12_EMI	V16	DVSS	AH26	EINT8
G15	DVSS	V17	DVSS	AH27	URXD1
G16	DVDD12_EMI	V18	DVSS	AH28	SPI_CS
G17	DVSS	V19	DVDD_SRAM	AH29	SPI_CK
G18	DVDD12_EMI	V20	DVDD_SRAM	AH30	SPI_MI
G28	WB_CTRL2	V21	DVSS	AH31	DISP_PWM
G29	WB_CTRL1	V22	DVSS	AJ1	AVSS18_MD
G30	WB_TXIN	V23	DVSS	AJ2	AVSS18_MD
H1	DVDD28_SIM1	V28	RDP3_A	AJ3	AVSS18_MD
H2	MSDC1_DAT2	V29	RDP2_A	AJ4	AVSS18_MD
H3	MSDC1_CLK	V30	RDP1_A	AJ5	AVSS18_MD
H4	MSDC1_DAT1	W1	AVDD18_USB	AJ6	AVSS18_MD
H9	DVDD12_EMI	W2	AVSS33_USB	AJ7	LTE_RX1_BBIN
H10	DVSS	W3	AUD_DAT_MISO	AJ8	LTE_RX2_BBQP
H12	DVDD12_EMI	W4	LCM_RST	AJ9	AVSS18_MD
H13	DVSS	W7	DVSS	AJ10	APC2
H14	DVDD12_EMI	W8	DVSS	AJ13	C2K_RX1_BBIP
H15	DVSS	W9	DVSS	AJ14	C2K_RX2_BBQN
H16	DVDD12_EMI	W10	DVSS	AJ15	AVSS18_PLLGP
H17	DVSS	W11	DVSS	AJ18	RFIC1_TX_BSI_D0
H18	DVDD12_EMI	W12	DVSS	AJ19	RFIC1_BSI_CK
H28	WB_CTRL4	W13	DVSS	AJ22	BPI_BUS7
H29	WB_CTRL3	W14	DVDD_CPU	AJ23	KPROW1
H30	WB_TXIP	W15	DVSS	AJ26	EINT7
H31	WB_RXQN	W16	DVDD_LTE	AJ27	URXD0
J2	SIM1_SIO	W17	DVDD_LTE	AJ28	UTXD0
J4	SIM1_SRST	W18	DVDD_LTE	AJ29	JTDI
J28	ANT_SEL0	W19	DVDD_LTE	AJ30	JTCK
J29	WB_CTRL5	W20	DVDD_LTE	AJ31	JTMS

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
J30	WB_RXIN	W21	DVDD_LTE	AK1	NC
J31	WB_RXQP	W22	DVDD_LTE	AK2	LTE_TX_BBIP
K1	SIM2_SIO	W23	DVDD_LTE	AK3	LTE_TX_BBIN
K2	SIM2_SRST	W24	DVDD_LTE	AK4	LTE_TX_BBQN
K4	SIM1_SCLK	W28	CMDAT1	AK5	AVSS18_MD
K7	DVSS	W29	CMDAT0	AK6	LTE_RX1_BBQP
K8	DVDD_CORE	W30	FSOURCE_P	AK7	LTE_RX2_BBIP
K9	DVSS	W31	AVDD18_MIPIRX1	AK8	LTE_RX2_BBIN
K27	DVDD18_IOLT	Y1	AUD_CLK_MOSI	AK9	AVSS18_MD
K28	NC	Y2	AUD_DAT_MOSI	AK10	AVSS_REFN
K30	WB_RXIP	Y3	PWRAP_SPI0_CK	AK11	AVDD18_AP
L2	DVDD28_SIM2	Y4	PWRAP_SPI0_CSN	AK12	C2K_TX_BBQN
L3	AVSS18_MIPITX	Y7	DVDD_CORE	AK13	C2K_TX_BBIN
L4	SIM2_SCLK	Y8	DVDD_CORE	AK14	C2K_TX_BBIP
L7	DVDD_CORE	Y9	DVDD_CORE	AK15	AVSS18_PLLGP
L8	DVDD_CORE	Y10	DVDD_CORE	AK16	RFIC0_BSI_D2
L9	DVDD_CORE	Y11	DVDD_CORE	AK17	RFIC0_BSI_D0
L10	DVDD_CORE	Y12	DVDD_CORE	AK18	RFIC1_TX_BSI_CK
L11	DVDD_CORE	Y13	DVSS	AK19	RFIC1_TX_BSI_EN
L12	DVDD_CORE	Y14	DVDD_CPU	AK20	BPI_BUS20
L13	DVSS	Y15	DVSS	AK21	BPI_BUS18
L14	DVDD_SRAM	Y16	DVDD_LTE	AK22	BPI_BUS10
L15	DVDD_CORE	Y17	DVDD_LTE	AK23	BPI_BUS6
L16	DVDD_CORE	Y18	DVDD_LTE	AK24	KPCOL1
L17	DVSS	Y19	DVDD_LTE	AK25	EINT12
L18	DVSS	Y20	DVDD_LTE	AK26	I2S_BCK
L19	DVDD_CORE	Y21	DVDD_LTE	AK27	I2S_DATA_IN
L20	DVDD_CORE	Y22	DVDD_LTE	AK28	JTDO
L21	DVDD_CORE	Y23	DVDD_LTE	AK29	EINT6
L22	DVDD_CORE	Y24	DVDD_LTE	AK30	TESTMODE
L23	DVSS	Y27	CMMCLK	AL1	NC
L27	NC	Y28	CMMCLK1	AL2	NC
L28	ANT_SEL2	Y30	SDA0	AL3	LTE_TX_BBQP
L29	NC	Y31	CMPCLK	AL4	AVDD18_MD
L30	AVSS18_WBG	AA2	PWRAP_INT	AL5	AVSS18_MD
L31	DVDD28_MC2	AA5	DSI_TE	AL6	LTE_RX1_BBQN
M1	TDP3	AA7	DVSS	AL8	AVSS18_MD
M2	TDN3	AA8	DVDD_CORE	AL9	AVDD28_DAC
M3	TDN2	AA9	DVSS	AL10	REFP
M7	DVSS	AA10	DVDD_CORE	AL12	C2K_TX_BBQP
M8	DVDD_CORE	AA11	DVSS	AL14	C2K_RX2_BBIN
M9	DVSS	AA12	DVDD_CORE	AL15	C2K_RX2_BBIP
M10	DVDD_CORE	AA13	DVSS	AL17	RFIC0_BSI_D1
M11	DVSS	AA14	DVDD_CPU	AL18	RFIC1_BSI_D0
M12	DVDD_CPU	AA15	DVSS	AL20	DVDD18_IOLB
M13	DVDD_CPU	AA16	DVDD_LTE	AL21	BPI_BUS17
M15	DVDD_CPU	AA17	DVSS	AL23	BPI_BUS5
M16	DVDD_CPU	AA18	DVDD_LTE	AL24	KPCOL0

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name	Ball Loc.	Ball name
M17	DVDD_CPU	AA19	DVSS	AL26	DVDD18_IOLB
M18	DVDD_CPU	AA20	DVDD_LTE	AL27	I2S_LRCK
M19	DVDD_CPU	AA21	DVSS	AL29	EINT5
M20	DVDD_CPU	AA22	DVDD_LTE	AL30	NC
M21	DVSS	AA23	DVSS	AL31	NC
M22	DVDD_CORE	AA24	DVDD_LTE		

2.1.3 Detailed Pin Description

Table 2-2. Acronym for pin type

Abbreviation	Description
AI	Analog input
AO	Analog output
AIO	Analog bi-direction
DI	Digital input
DO	Digital output
DIO	Digital bi-direction
P	Power
G	Ground

Table 2-3. Detailed pin description (using LPDDR3)

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
System			
SYSRSTB	DI	System reset input	DVDD18_IORB
WATCHDOG	DO	Watchdog reset output	DVDD18_IORB
TESTMODE	DIO	Test mode	DVDD18_IOLB
RTC32K_CK	DIO	32K clock input	DVDD18_IORB
SRCLKENAI	DIO	26MHz co-clock enable input	DVDD18_IOLB
SRCLKENA0	DIO	26MHz co-clock enable output	DVDD18_IORB
SRCLKENA1	DIO	26MHz co-clock enable output	DVDD18_IOLB
PMIC			
PWRAP_SPI0_MO	DIO	PMIC SPI control interface	DVDD18_IORB
PWRAP_SPI0_MI	DIO	PMIC SPI control interface	DVDD18_IORB
PWRAP_SPI0_CSN	DIO	PMIC SPI control interface	DVDD18_IORB
PWRAP_SPI0_CK	DIO	PMIC SPI control interface	DVDD18_IORB
PWRAP_INT	DIO	PMIC SPI control interface	DVDD18_IORB
AUD_CLK_MOSI	DIO	PMIC audio input interface	DVDD18_IORB
AUD_DAT_MOSI	DIO	PMIC audio input interface	DVDD18_IORB
AUD_DAT_MISO	DIO	PMIC audio input interface	DVDD18_IORB
SIM			
SIM1_SIO	DIO	SIM1 data, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
SIM1_SRST	DIO	SIM1 reset, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1
SIM1_SCLK	DIO	SIM1 clock, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1
SIM2_SIO	DIO	SIM2 data, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1
SIM2_SRST	DIO	SIM2 reset, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1
SIM2_SCLK	DIO	SIM2 clock, PMIC interface	DVDD18_MC1
JTAG			
JTCK	DIO	JTCK	DVDD18_IOLB
JTDO	DIO	JTDO	DVDD18_IOLB
JTDI	DIO	JTDI	DVDD18_IOLB
JTMS	DIO	JTMS	DVDD18_IOLB
LCD			
DISP_PWM	DIO	Display PWM output	DVDD18_IOLB
DSI_TE	DIO	Parallel display interface tearing effect	DVDD18_IORB
LCM_RST	DIO	Parallel display interface reset signal	DVDD18_IORB
I2S			
I2S_DATA_IN	DIO	I2S data input pin	DVDD18_IOLB
I2S_BCK	DIO	I2S clock	DVDD18_IOLB
I2S_LRCK	DIO	I2S word select	DVDD18_IOLB
PCM/I2S merge interface			
PCM_TX	DIO	PCM audio interface	DVDD18_IOLB
PCM_CLK	DIO	PCM audio interface	DVDD18_IOLB
PCM_RX	DIO	PCM audio interface	DVDD18_IOLB
PCM_SYNC	DIO	PCM audio interface	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT			
EINT0	DIO	External interrupt 0	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT1	DIO	External interrupt 1	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT2	DIO	External interrupt 2	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT3	DIO	External interrupt 3	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT4	DIO	External interrupt 4	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT5	DIO	External interrupt 5	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT6	DIO	External interrupt 6	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT7	DIO	External interrupt 7	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT8	DIO	External interrupt 8	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT9	DIO	External interrupt 9	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT10	DIO	External interrupt 10	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT11	DIO	External interrupt 11	DVDD18_IOLB
EINT12	DIO	External interrupt 12	DVDD18_IOLB
UART			
URXD0	DIO	UART0 RX	DVDD18_IOLB
UTXD0	DIO	UART0 TX	DVDD18_IOLB
URXD1	DIO	UART1 RX	DVDD18_IOLB
UTXD1	DIO	UART1 TX	DVDD18_IOLB

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
URXD2	DIO	UART2 RX	DVDD18_IOLB
UTXD2	DIO	UART2 TX	DVDD18_IOLB
URXD3	DIO	UART3 RX	DVDD18_IOLB
UTXD3	DIO	UART3 TX	DVDD18_IOLB
SPI			
SPI_CS	DIO	SPI chip select	DVDD18_IOLB
SPI_MI	DIO	SPI data in	DVDD18_IOLB
SPI_MO	DIO	SPI data out	DVDD18_IOLB
SPI_CK	DIO	SPI clock	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI			
BPI_BUS0	DIO	BPI1 BUS0	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS1	DIO	BPI1 BUS1	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS2	DIO	BPI1 BUS2	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS3	DIO	BPI1 BUS3	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS4	DIO	BPI1 BUS4	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS5	DIO	BPI1 BUS5	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS6	DIO	BPI1 BUS6	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS7	DIO	BPI1 BUS7	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS8	DIO	BPI1 BUS8	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS9	DIO	BPI1 BUS9	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS10	DIO	BPI1 BUS10	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS11	DIO	BPI1 BUS11	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS12	DIO	BPI1 BUS12	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS13	DIO	BPI1 BUS13	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS14	DIO	BPI1 BUS14	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS15	DIO	BPI1 BUS15	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS16	DIO	BPI1 BUS16	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS17	DIO	BPI1 BUS17	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS18	DIO	BPI1 BUS18	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS19	DIO	BPI1 BUS19	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS20	DIO	BPI1 BUS20	DVDD18_IOLB
BPI_BUS21	DIO	BPI1 BUS21	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS22	DIO	BPI1 BUS22	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS23	DIO	BPI1 BUS23	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS24	DIO	BPI1 BUS24	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS25	DIO	BPI1 BUS25	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS26	DIO	BPI1 BUS26	DVDD18_IORB
BPI_BUS27	DIO	BPI1 BUS27	DVDD18_IORB
ANT_SEL0	DIO	Antenna select 0	DVDD18_IOLT
ANT_SEL1	DIO	Antenna select 1	DVDD18_IOLT
ANT_SEL2	DIO	Antenna select 2	DVDD18_IOLT
VM			
LTE_PAVM1	DIO	PA mode selection	DVDD18_IORB

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiao@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
LTE_PAVM0	DIO	PA mode selection	DVDD18_IORB
BSI			
RFIC1_BSI_EN	DIO	RFIC1 BSI enable	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC1_BSI_CK	DIO	RFIC1 BSI clock	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC1_BSI_D0	DIO	RFIC1 BSI Data0	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC1_TX_BSI_EN	DIO	RFIC1 TX BSI enable	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC1_TX_BSI_CK	DIO	RFIC1 TX BSI clock	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC1_TX_BSI_D0	DIO	RFIC1 TX BSI Data0	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC0_BSI_EN	DIO	RFIC0 BSI enable	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC0_BSI_CK	DIO	RFIC0 BSI clock	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC0_BSI_D2	DIO	RFIC0 BSI Data2	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC0_BSI_D1	DIO	RFIC0 BSI Data1	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC0_BSI_D0	DIO	RFIC0 BSI Data0	DVDD18_IOLB
RFIC_MIPI1_SCLK	DIO	RFIC MIPI1 SCLK	DVDD18_IORB
RFIC_MIPI1_SDATA	DIO	RFIC MIPI1 SDATA	DVDD18_IORB
RFIC_MIPI0_SCLK	DIO	RFIC MIPI0 SCLK	DVDD18_IORB
RFIC_MIPI0_SDATA	DIO	RFIC MIPI0 SDATA	DVDD18_IORB
C2K_TXBPI	DIO	C2K TXBPI	DVDD18_IOLB
LTE_TXBPI	DIO	LTE TXBPI	DVDD18_IORB
MSDC0			
MSDC0_DAT7	DIO	MSDC0 data7 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT6	DIO	MSDC0 data6 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT5	DIO	MSDC0 data5 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_RSTB	DIO	MSDC0 reset output	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT4	DIO	MSDC0 data4 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT2	DIO	MSDC0 data2 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT3	DIO	MSDC0 data3 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_CMD	DIO	MSDC0 command pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_CLK	DIO	MSDC0 clock output	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT1	DIO	MSDC0 data1 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC0_DAT0	DIO	MSDC0 data0 pin	DVDD18_MC0
MSDC1			
MSDC1_CLK	DIO	MSDC1 clock output	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
MSDC1_CMD	DIO	MSDC1 command pin	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
MSDC1_DAT0	DIO	MSDC1 data0 pin	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
MSDC1_DAT1	DIO	MSDC1 data1 pin	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
MSDC1_DAT2	DIO	MSDC1 data2 pin	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
MSDC1_DAT3	DIO	MSDC1 data3 pin	DVDD28_MC1/DVDD18_MC1
WiFi/BT/GPS			
WB_SDATA	DIO	WiFi/BT SPI control data	DVDD18_CONN
WB_SCLK	DIO	WiFi/BT SPI control clock	DVDD18_CONN
WB_SEN	DIO	WiFi/BT SPI control enable	DVDD18_CONN

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
WB_RSTB	DIO	WiFi/BT SPI control reset	DVDD18_CONN
F2W_CLK	DIO	FM clock	DVDD18_CONN
F2W_DATA	DIO	FM data	DVDD18_CONN
WB_CTRL0	DIO	Data bus 0	DVDD18_IOLT
WB_CTRL1	DIO	Data bus 1	DVDD18_IOLT
WB_CTRL2	DIO	Data bus 2	DVDD18_IOLT
WB_CTRL3	DIO	Data bus 3	DVDD18_IOLT
WB_CTRL4	DIO	Data bus 4	DVDD18_IOLT
WB_CTRL5	DIO	Data bus 5	DVDD18_IOLT
EFUSE			
FSOURCE_P	DIO	E-FUSE blowing power control	FSOURCE_P
EMI			
RCLK0	DIO	DRAM clock 0 output	DVDD12_EMI
RCLK0_B	DIO	DRAM clock 0 output #	DVDD12_EMI
RCKE	DIO	DRAM command output CKE	DVDD12_EMI
RCS_B	DIO	DRAM chip select 0 #	DVDD12_EMI
RCS1_B	DIO	DRAM chip select 1 #	DVDD12_EMI
RA0	DIO	DRAM address output 0	DVDD12_EMI
RA1	DIO	DRAM address output 1	DVDD12_EMI
RA2	DIO	DRAM address output 2	DVDD12_EMI
RA3	DIO	DRAM address output 3	DVDD12_EMI
RA4	DIO	DRAM address output 4	DVDD12_EMI
RA5	DIO	DRAM address output 5	DVDD12_EMI
RA6	DIO	DRAM address output 6	DVDD12_EMI
RA7	DIO	DRAM address output 7	DVDD12_EMI
RA8	DIO	DRAM address output 8	DVDD12_EMI
RA9	DIO	DRAM address output 9	DVDD12_EMI
RDQM0	DIO	DRAM DQM 0	DVDD12_EMI
RDQM1	DIO	DRAM DQM 1	DVDD12_EMI
RDQM2	DIO	DRAM DQM 2	DVDD12_EMI
RDQM3	DIO	DRAM DQM 3	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS0	DIO	DRAM DQS 0	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS0_B	DIO	DRAM DQS 0 #	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS1	DIO	DRAM DQS 1	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS1_B	DIO	DRAM DQS 1 #	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS2	DIO	DRAM DQS 2	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS2_B	DIO	DRAM DQS 2 #	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS3	DIO	DRAM DQS 3	DVDD12_EMI
RDQS3_B	DIO	DRAM DQS 3 #	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ0	DIO	DRAM data pin 0	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ1	DIO	DRAM data pin 1	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ2	DIO	DRAM data pin 2	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ3	DIO	DRAM data pin 3	DVDD12_EMI

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
RDQ4	DIO	DRAM data pin 4	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ5	DIO	DRAM data pin 5	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ6	DIO	DRAM data pin 6	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ7	DIO	DRAM data pin 7	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ8	DIO	DRAM data pin 8	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ9	DIO	DRAM data pin 9	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ10	DIO	DRAM data pin 10	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ11	DIO	DRAM data pin 11	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ12	DIO	DRAM data pin 12	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ13	DIO	DRAM data pin 13	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ14	DIO	DRAM data pin 14	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ15	DIO	DRAM data pin 15	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ16	DIO	DRAM data pin 16	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ17	DIO	DRAM data pin 17	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ18	DIO	DRAM data pin 18	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ19	DIO	DRAM data pin 19	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ20	DIO	DRAM data pin 20	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ21	DIO	DRAM data pin 21	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ22	DIO	DRAM data pin 22	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ23	DIO	DRAM data pin 23	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ24	DIO	DRAM data pin 24	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ25	DIO	DRAM data pin 25	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ26	DIO	DRAM data pin 26	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ27	DIO	DRAM data pin 27	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ28	DIO	DRAM data pin 28	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ29	DIO	DRAM data pin 29	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ30	DIO	DRAM data pin 30	DVDD12_EMI
RDQ31	DIO	DRAM data pin 31	DVDD12_EMI
REXTDN	DIO	DRAM REXTDN pin	DVDD12_EMI
VREF	DIO		DVDD12_EMI
CAM			
CMPCLK	DIO	Pixel clock from sensor	DVDD18_IOLB
CMMCLK	DIO	Master clock to sensor	DVDD18_IOLB
CMMCLK1	DIO	Master clock1 to sensor	DVDD18_IOLB
CMDAT0	DIO	CAM sensor Data0	DVDD18_IOLB
CMDAT1	DIO	CAM sensor Data1	DVDD18_IOLB
I2C0			
SCL0	DIO	I2C0 clock	DVDD18_IOLB
SDA0	DIO	I2C0 data	DVDD18_IOLB
I2C1			
SCL1	DIO	I2C1 clock	DVDD18_IOLB
SDA1	DIO	I2C1 data	DVDD18_IOLB
I2C2			

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
SCL2	DIO	I2C2 clock	DVDD18_IOLB
SDA2	DIO	I2C2 data	DVDD18_IOLB
I2C3			
SCL3	DIO	I2C3 clock	DVDD18_IOLB
SDA3	DIO	I2C3 data	DVDD18_IOLB
ABB			
C2K_RX2_BBQP	AIO	C2K downlink QP for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX2_BBQN	AIO	C2K downlink QN for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX2_BBIN	AIO	C2K downlink IN for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX2_BBIP	AIO	C2K downlink IPP for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX1_BBQP	AIO	C2K downlink QP for main path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX1_BBQN	AIO	C2K downlink QN for main path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX1_BBIN	AIO	C2K downlink IN for main path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_RX1_BBIP	AIO	C2K downlink IPP for main path	AVDD18_MD
C2K_TX_BBQP	AIO	C2K uplink QP	AVDD18_MD
C2K_TX_BBQN	AIO	C2K uplink QN	AVDD18_MD
C2K_TX_BBIN	AIO	C2K uplink IN	AVDD18_MD
C2K_TX_BBIP	AIO	C2K uplink IP	AVDD18_MD
C2KX26M_IN	AIO	26MHz clock input for 2nd modem	AVDD18_MD
AUXIN0	AIO	AuxADC external input channel 0	AVDD18_AP
AUXIN1	AIO	AuxADC external input channel 1	AVDD18_AP
AUXIN2	AIO	AuxADC external input channel 2	AVDD18_AP
REFP	AIO	Positive reference port for internal circuit	AVDD18_AP
APC1	AIO	Automatic power control for MD1	AVDD28_DAC
APC2	AIO	Automatic power control for MD2	AVDD28_DAC
LTEX26M_IN	AIO	26MHz clock input for AP & 1st modem	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX2_BBQP	AIO	LTE downlink QP for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX2_BBQN	AIO	LTE downlink QN for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX2_BBIN	AIO	LTE downlink IN for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX2_BBIP	AIO	LTE downlink IPP for diversity path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX1_BBQP	AIO	LTE downlink QP for main path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX1_BBQN	AIO	LTE downlink QN for main path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX1_BBIN	AIO	LTE downlink IN for main path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_RX1_BBIP	AIO	LTE downlink IP for main path	AVDD18_MD
LTE_TX_BBQP	AIO	LTE uplink QP	AVDD18_MD
LTE_TX_BBQN	AIO	LTE uplink QN	AVDD18_MD
LTE_TX_BBIN	AIO	LTE uplink IN	AVDD18_MD
LTE_TX_BBIP	AIO	LTE uplink IP	AVDD18_MD
RFIC_ET_N	AIO	Envelop Tracking DAC output N	AVDD18_MD
RFIC_ET_P	AIO	Envelop Tracking DAC output P	AVDD18_MD
WBG			

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei26@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
XIN_WBG	AIO	WIFI/BT clock source	AVDD18_WBG
GPS_RXQN	AIO	RXQN for GPS RX	AVDD18_WBG
GPS_RXQP	AIO	RXQP for GPS RX	AVDD18_WBG
GPS_RXIN	AIO	RXIN for GPS RX	AVDD18_WBG
GPS_RXIP	AIO	RXIP for GPS RX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_TXQN	AIO	TXQN for WIFI/BT TX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_TXQP	AIO	TXQP for WIFI/BT TX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_TXIN	AIO	TXIN for WIFI/BT TX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_TXIP	AIO	TXIP for WIFI/BT TX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_RXQN	AIO	RXQN for WIFI/BT RX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_RXQP	AIO	RXQP for WIFI/BT RX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_RXIN	AIO	RXIN for WIFI/BT RX	AVDD18_WBG
WB_RXIP	AIO	RXIP for WIFI/BT RX	AVDD18_WBG
MIPI			
TDN3	AIO	DSI0 lane3 N	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDP3	AIO	DSI0 lane3 P	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDN2	AIO	DSI0 lane2 N	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDP2	AIO	DSI0 lane2 P	DVDD18_MIPITX
TCN	AIO	DSI0 CK lane N	DVDD18_MIPITX
TCP	AIO	DSI0 CK lane P	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDN1	AIO	DSI0 lane1 N	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDP1	AIO	DSI0 lane1 P	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDN0	AIO	DSI0 lane0 N	DVDD18_MIPITX
TDP0	AIO	DSI0 lane0 P	DVDD18_MIPITX
VRT	AO	External resistor for DSI bias Connect 1.5K ohm 1% resistor to ground	DVDD18_MIPITX
RDN3	AIO	CSI0 lane3 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDP3	AIO	CSI0 lane3 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDN2	AIO	CSI0 lane2 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDP2	AIO	CSI0 lane2 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RCN	AIO	CSI0 CK lane N	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RCP	AIO	CSI0 CK lane P	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDN1	AIO	CSI0 lane1 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDP1	AIO	CSI0 lane1 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDN0	AIO	CSI0 lane0 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDP0	AIO	CSI0 lane0 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX0
RDN1_A	AIO	CSI1 lane1 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDP1_A	AIO	CSI1 lane1 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RCN_A	AIO	CSI1 CK lane N	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RCP_A	AIO	CSI1 CK lane P	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDN0_A	AIO	CSI1 lane0 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDP0_A	AIO	CSI1 lane0 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
RDN2_A	AIO	CSI1 lane 2 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDP2_A	AIO	CSI1 lane 2 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDN3_A	AIO	CSI1 lane 3 N	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
RDP3_A	AIO	CSI1 lane 3 P	DVDD18_MIPIRX1
USB			
USB_DP	AIO	USB port0 D+ differential data line	AVDD33_USB
USB_DM	AIO	USB port0 D- differential data line	AVDD33_USB
CHD_DP	AIO	BC1.1 Charger DP	AVDD33_USB
CHD_DM	AIO	BC1.1 Charger DM	AVDD33_USB
USB_VRT	AO	USB output for bias current; connect with 5.11K 1% Ohm to GND	AVDD18_USB
Keypad			
KPROW0	AIO	Keypad row 0	DVDD18_IOLB
KPROW1	AIO	Keypad row 1	DVDD18_IOLB
KPROW2	AIO	Keypad row 2	DVDD18_IOLB
KPCOL0	AIO	Keypad column 0	DVDD18_IOLB
KPCOL1	AIO	Keypad column 1	DVDD18_IOLB
KPCOL2	AIO	Keypad column 2	DVDD18_IOLB
Analog power			
DVDD18_PLLGP	P	Analog power input 1.8V for PLL	
AVDD18_AP	P	Analog power input 1.8V for AuxADC, TSENSE	
AVDD18_MD	P	Analog power input 1.8V for BBTX, BBRX, 2GBBTX	
AVDD18_MEMPLL	P	Analog power for MEMPLL	
AVDD18_USB	P	Analog power 1.8V for USB	
AVDD18_WBG	P	Analog power 1.8V for WiFi/BT/GPS	
DVDD18_MIPITX	P	Analog power for MIPI DSI	
DVDD18_MIPIRX0	P	Analog power for MIPI CSI	
DVDD18_MIPIRX1	P	Analog power for MIPI CSI	
AVDD28_DAC	P	Analog power input 2.8V for APC	
AVDD33_USB	P	Analog power 3.3V for USB port 1	
Digital power			
DVDD18_IOLT	P	Digital power input for IO	-
DVDD18_IOLB	P	Digital power input for IO	-
DVDD18_IORB	P	Digital power input for IO	-
DVDD18_CONN	P	Digital power input for IO	-
EVDD18_EFUSE	P	Digital power input for efuse IO	-
DVDD18_MC0	P	Digital power input for MSDC0 IO	-
DVDD18_MC1	P	Digital power input for MSDC1 IO	-
DVDD28_MC1	P	Digital power input for 1.8/3.3V MSDC IO	-
DVDD28_MC2	P	Digital power input for 1.8/3.3V MSDC IO	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Pin name	Type	Description	Power domain
DVDD12_EMI	P	Digital power input for 1.2V EMI	-
DVDD_TOP	P	Digital power input for core	-
DVDD_LTE	P	Digital power input for LTE	-
VLTE_SRAM	P	Digital power input for LTE SRAM	-
DVDD_CPU	P	Digital power input for processor	-
DVDD_SRAM	P	Digital power input for processor SRAM	-
Analog ground			
AVSS18_AP	G	analog ground	
AVSS18_MD	G	analog ground	
AVSS18_MEMPLL	G	analog ground	
AVSS18_WBG	G	analog ground	
AVSS_REFN	G	analog ground	
AVSS33_USB	G	analog ground	
DVSS18_MIPITX	G	analog ground	
DVSS18_MIPIRX0	G	analog ground	
DVSS18_MIPIRX1	G	analog ground	
AVSS33_USB	G	analog ground	
Digital ground			
DVSS	G	Digital ground	-

Table 2-4. Acronym for the table of state of pins

Abbreviation	Description
I	Input
LO	Low output
HO	High output
XO	Low or high output
PU	Pull-up
PD	Pull-dowm
-	No PU/PD
0~N	Aux. function number
X	Delicate function pin

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-5. State of pins

Name	Reset			Output drivability	Termination when not used	IO type
	State[1]	Aux[2]	PU/PD[3]			
eMMC interface						
MSDC0_CLK	LO	1	-	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_CMD	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT0	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT1	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT2	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT3	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT4	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT5	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT6	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DAT7	I	1	PU	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_RSTB	HO	1	-	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
MSDC0_DSL	I	1	PD	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
SD card interface						
MSDC1_CLK	LO	1	-	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
MSDC1_CMD	I	1	PU	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
MSDC1_DAT0	I	1	PU	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
MSDC1_DAT1	I	1	PU	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
MSDC1_DAT2	I	1	PU	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
MSDC1_DAT3	I	1	PU	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
SIM interface						
SIM1_SCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
SIM1_SRST	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
SIM1_SIO	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
SIM2_SCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
SIM2_SRST	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
SIM2_SIO	I	0	PD	DIOH7, DIOL7	No Need	IO Type 7
Audio interface						
AUD_CLK_MOSI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
AUD_DAT_MISO	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
AUD_DAT_MOSI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
LCD control						
DISP_PWM	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
LCM_RST	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
DSI_TE	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
CAM interface						
CMPCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
CMMCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
CMMCLK1	I	0	PD	DIOH4, DIOL4	No Need	IO Type 4
CMPDAT0	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
CMPDAT1	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1

[1] The column "State" of "Reset" shows the pin state during reset (Input, High Output, Low Output, etc).
[2] The column "Aux" for "Reset" means the default aux. funtion number shown in Table "Pin Multiplexing, Capability and Settings".
[3] The column "PU/PD" for "Reset" means if there is internal pull-up or pull-down when the pin is input in the reset state.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

Name	Reset			Output drivability	Termination when not used	IO type
	State[1]	Aux[2]	PU/PD[3]			
PMIC SPI interface						
PWRAP_SPI0_CK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
PWRAP_SPI0_CSN	I	0	PU	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
PWRAP_SPI0_MI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
PWRAP_SPI0_MO	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2C interface						
SCL0	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SCL1	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SCL2	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SCL3	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SDA0	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SDA1	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
SDA2	I	1	-	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SDA3	I	1	-	DIOH3, DIOL3	No Need	IO Type 3
RFIC interface						
RFIC0_BSI_EN	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC0_BSI_CK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC0_BSI_D0	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC0_BSI_D1	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC0_BSI_D2	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_BSI_EN	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_BSI_CK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_BSI_D0	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_TX_BSI_EN	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_TX_BSI_CK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC1_TX_BSI_D0	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC_MIPI1_SCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC_MIPI1_SDATA	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC_MIPI0_SCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
RFIC_MIPI0_SDATA	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI interface						
BPI_BUS0	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS1	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS2	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS3	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS4	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS5	I	0	PD	DIOH6, DIOL6	No Need	IO Type 6
BPI_BUS6	I	0	PD	DIOH5, DIOL5	No Need	IO Type 5
BPI_BUS7	I	0	PD	DIOH5, DIOL5	No Need	IO Type 5
BPI_BUS8	I	0	PD	DIOH5, DIOL5	No Need	IO Type 5
BPI_BUS9	I	0	PD	DIOH5, DIOL5	No Need	IO Type 5
BPI_BUS10	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS11	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS12	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS13	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS14	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS15	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS16	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS17	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

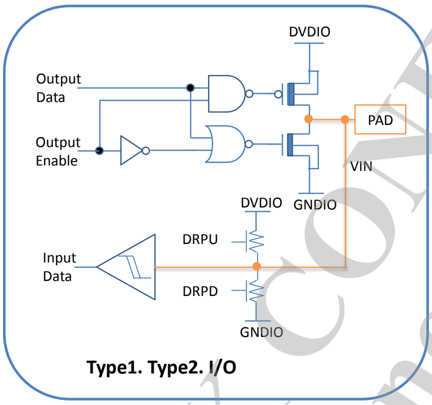
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

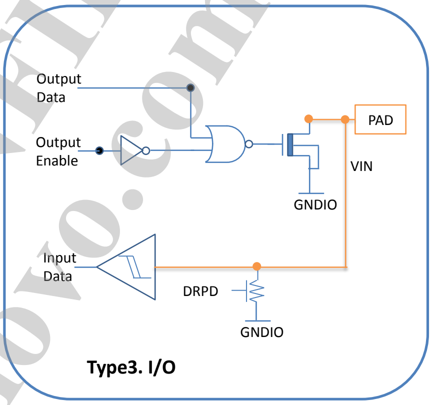
Name	Reset			Output drivability	Termination when not used	IO type
	State[1]	Aux[2]	PU/PD[3]			
BPI_BUS18	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS19	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS20	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS21	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS22	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS23	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS24	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS25	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS26	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
BPI_BUS27	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
LTE_TXBPI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
C2K_TXBPI	I	0	PD	DIOH2, DIOL2	No Need	IO Type 2
Connectivity RF interface						
WB_CTRL0	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_CTRL1	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_CTRL2	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_CTRL3	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_CTRL4	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_CTRL5	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
F2W_DATA	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
F2W_CLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_SCLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_SDATA	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_SEN	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
WB_RSTB	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
Keypad						
KPCOL0	I	1	PU	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
KPCOL1	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
KPCOL2	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
KPROW0	LO	1	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
KPROW1	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
KPROW2	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S interface						
I2S0_MCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S0_BCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S0_LRCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S0_DI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S1_MCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S1_BCK	I	0	PD	DIOH2, DIOL2	No Need	IO Type 2
I2S1_LRCK	I	0	PD	DIOH2, DIOL2	No Need	IO Type 2
I2S1_DO	I	0	PD	DIOH2, DIOL2	No Need	IO Type 2
I2S2_MCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S2_BCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S2_LRCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S2_DI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S3_MCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S3_BCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S3_LRCK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
I2S3_DO	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

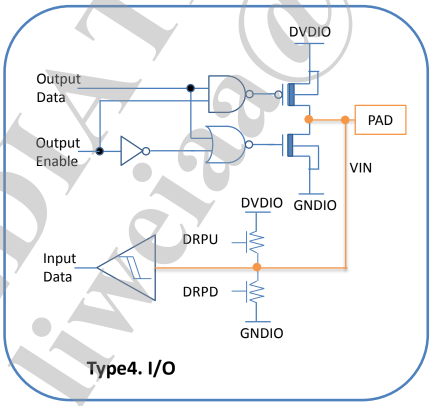
Name	Reset			Output drivability	Termination when not used	IO type
	State[1]	Aux[2]	PU/PD[3]			
SPI interface						
SPI_CSB	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SPI_CLK	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SPI_MO	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SPI_MI	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
System/reset clock enable						
WATCHDOG	HO	1	-	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SRCLKENA0	HO	1	-	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SRCLKENA1	LO	1	-	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
SRCLKENAI	I	1	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
IDDIG	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1
USB_DRVBUS	I	0	PD	DIOH1, DIOL1	No Need	IO Type 1

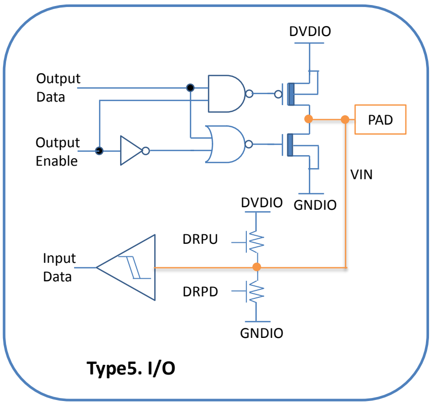




Type1. GPIO 28 type
(2mA, 4mA, 6mA, 8mA)
Type2. GPIO 4G type
(4mA, 8mA, 12mA, 16mA)

Type 3. Open-drain IO



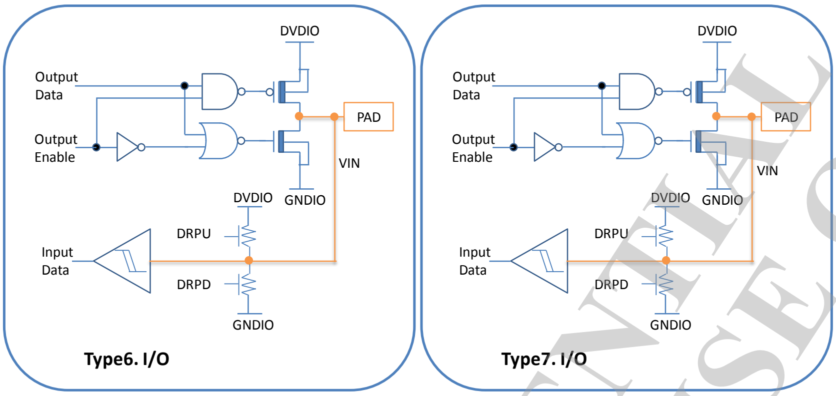


Type4. MSDC 1.8V I/O
(2mA, 4mA, 6mA, 8mA,
10mA, 12mA, 14mA, 16mA)

Type5. 3.3v GPIO
(4mA, 8mA, 12mA, 16mA)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.



Type6. MSDC 3.3V I/O (2mA, 4mA, 6mA, 8mA, 10mA, 12mA, 14mA, 16mA)

Type7. 3.3v SIM I/O (4mA, 8mA, 12mA, 16mA)

Figure 2-3. IO types in state of pins

2.1.4 Pin Multiplexing, Capability and Settings

Table 2-6. Acronym for pull-up and pull-down type

Abbreviation	Description
PU	Pull-up, not controllable
PD	Pull-down, not controllable
CU	Pull-up, controllable
CD	Pull-down, controllable
X	Cannot pull-up or pull-dowm

Table 2-7. Pin multiplexing, capability and settings

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
MSDC0_CLK	0	GPIO174	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_CMD	0	GPIO172	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_CMD	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT0	0	GPIO175	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT1	0	GPIO176	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT2	0	GPIO177	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT3	0	GPIO178	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
MSDC0_DAT4	0	GPIO179	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT4	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT5	0	GPIO180	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT5	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT6	0	GPIO181	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT6	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DAT7	0	GPIO182	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DAT7	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_RSTB	0	GPIO183	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_RSTB	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC0_DSL	0	GPIO173	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC0_DSL	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_CLK	0	GPIO167	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	2	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_TCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	4	TDD_TCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	5	CONN_DSP_JCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	JTCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	7	CONN_MCU_AICE_TCKC	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_CMD	0	GPIO166	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_CMD	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	2	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TMS	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_TMS	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	4	TDD_TMS	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	5	CONN_DSP_JMS	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	JTMS	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	7	CONN_MCU_AICE_TMSC	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_DAT0	0	GPIO168	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_DAT0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	2	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_TDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	4	TDD_TDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	5	CONN_DSP_JDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	JTDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_DAT1	0	GPIO169	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_DAT1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	2	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_TDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	4	TDD_TDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	5	CONN_DSP_JDO	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	JTDO	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_DAT2	0	GPIO170	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_DAT2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	2	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TRST	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_NTRST	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	4	TDD_TRSTN	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	5	CONN_DSP_JINTP	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	DM_JTINTP	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
MSDC1_DAT3	0	GPIO171	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	1	MSDC1_DAT3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	3	C2K_RTCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
	6	TDD_TXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8/10/12/14/16mA	0
SIM1_SCLK	0	GPIO18	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD1_SIM1_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD2_SIM1_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	MD1_SIM2_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	4	MD2_SIM2_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
SIM1_SRST	0	GPIO164	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD_SIM1_SRST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD_SIM2_SRST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	UIM1_RST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	4	UIM0_RST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
SIM1_SIO	0	GPIO165	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD_SIM1_SDAT	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD_SIM2_SDAT	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	UIM1_IO	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	4	UIM0_IO	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
SIM2_SCLK	0	GPIO160	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD_SIM2_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD_SIM1_SCLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	UIM0_CLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	4	UIM1_CLK	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
SIM2_SRST	0	GPIO161	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD_SIM2_SRST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD_SIM1_SRST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	UIM0_RST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	4	UIM1_RST	O	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
SIM2_SIO	0	GPIO162	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	1	MD_SIM2_SDAT	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	2	MD_SIM1_SDAT	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	3	UIM0_IO	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
	4	UIM1_IO	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	0
AUD_CLK_MOSI	0	GPIO143	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	AUD_CLK_MOSI	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
AUD_DAT_MISO	0	GPIO144	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	AUD_DAT_MISO	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	AUD_DAT_MOSI	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
AUD_DAT_MOSI	0	GPIO145	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	AUD_DAT_MOSI	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	AUD_DAT_MISO	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
DISP_PWM	0	GPIO69	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	DISP_PWM	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	PWM1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TRST	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	TDD_TRSTN	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	ANT_SEL7	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	DM_JTINTP	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
LCM_RST	0	GPIO146	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	LCM_RST	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
DSI_TE	0	GPIO147	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	DSI_TE	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
CMDAT0	0	GPIO42	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	CMDAT0	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	CMCSD0	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	CMMCLK1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	ANT_SEL5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	CLKM5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
CMDAT1	0	GPIO43	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	CMDAT1	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	CMCSD1	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	CMFLASH	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	MD_EINT0	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	CMMCLK1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	CLKM4	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	7	DBG_MON_A10	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
CMPCLK	0	GPIO44	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	CMPCLK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	CMCSK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	CMCSD2	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	KCOL3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	SRCLKENAI2	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	PWM0	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_A11	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
CMMCLK	0	GPIO45	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	CMMCLK0	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_A12	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
CMMCLK1	0	GPIO46	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	CMMCLK1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	IDDIG	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	LTE_MD32_JTAG_TRST	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	TDD_TRSTN	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	DM_JTINTP	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	KCOL6	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_A13	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PWRAP_SPI0_CK	0	GPIO141	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	PWRAP_SPICK_I	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PWRAP_SPI0_CSN	0	GPIO142	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	PWRAP_SPICS_B_I	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PWRAP_SPI0_MI	0	GPIO138	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	PWRAP_SPIDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	PWRAP_SPIDI	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PWRAP_SPI0_MO	0	GPIO139	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	PWRAP_SPIDI	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	PWRAP_SPIDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
WATCHDOG	0	GPIO149	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	WATCHDOG	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
SRCLKENA0	0	GPIO148	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	SRCLKENA0	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
SRCLKENA1	0	GPIO56	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	SRCLKENA1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
SCL0	0	GPIO48	IO	CD		0
	1	SCL0_0	IO	CD		0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
SCL1	0	GPIO50	IO	CD		0
	1	SCL1_0	IO	CD		0
SCL2	0	GPIO52	IO	CD		0
	1	SCL2_0	IO	CD		0
SCL3	0	GPIO54	IO	CD		0
	1	SCL3_0	IO	CD		0
	3	IDDIG	I	CD		0
SDA0	0	GPIO47	IO	CD		0
	1	SDA0_0	IO	CD		0
SDA1	0	GPIO49	IO	CD		0
	1	SDA1_0	IO	CD		0
SDA2	0	GPIO51	IO	CD		0
	1	SDA2_0	IO	CD		0
SDA3	0	GPIO53	IO	CD		0
	1	SDA3_0	IO	CD		0
	3	IDDIG	I	CD		0
RFIC0_BSI_EN	0	GPIO110	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC0_BSI_EN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	SPM_BSI_EN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC0_BSI_CK	0	GPIO111	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC0_BSI_CK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	SPM_BSI_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC0_BSI_D0	0	GPIO112	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC0_BSI_D0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	SPM_BSI_D2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC0_BSI_D1	0	GPIO113	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC0_BSI_D1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	SPM_BSI_D1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC0_BSI_D2	0	GPIO114	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC0_BSI_D2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	SPM_BSI_D0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC1_BSI_EN	0	GPIO104	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC1_BSI_EN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_RX_BSI_EN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC1_BSI_CK	0	GPIO105	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC1_BSI_CK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	PCM1_SYNC	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_RX_BSI_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC1_BSI_D0	0	GPIO106	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC1_BSI_D0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_RX_BSI_DATA	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
RFIC1_TX_BSI_EN	0	GPIO107	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC1_BSI_D1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_TX_BSI_EN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC1_TX_BSI_CK	0	GPIO108	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	RFIC1_BSI_D2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_TX_BSI_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
RFIC1_TX_BSI_D0	0	GPIO109	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_TX_BSI_DATA	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PAD_RFIC_MIPI1_SCLK	0	GPIO133	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	MIPI1_SCLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PAD_RFIC_MIPI1_SDATA	0	GPIO134	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	MIPI1_SDATA	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PAD_RFIC_MIPI0_SCLK	0	GPIO135	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	MIPI0_SCLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
PAD_RFIC_MIPI0_SDATA B	0	GPIO136	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	MIPI0_SDATA	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS0	0	GPIO119	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS0	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B28	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS1	0	GPIO120	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B29	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS2	0	GPIO121	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS2	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B30	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS3	0	GPIO122	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS3	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B31	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS4	0	GPIO123	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS4	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B32	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS5	0	GPIO87	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	7	DBG_MON_B0	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS6	0	GPIO88	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS6	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS6	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS6	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	7	DBG_MON_B1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
BPI_BUS7	0	GPIO89	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	1	BPI_BUS7	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS7	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	3	CLKM0	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	0
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS7	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS8	-	GPIO9-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS8	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS8	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CLKM1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS8	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS9	-	GPIO91	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS9	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS9	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CLKM2	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS9	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B4	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS1-	-	GPIO92	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS1-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS1 -	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CLKM3	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS1-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	7	DBG_MON_B5	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS11	-	GPIO93	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS11	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS11	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS11	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B6	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS12	-	GPIO94	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS12	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS12	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS12	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B7	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS13	-	GPIO95	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS13	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS13	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS13	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B8	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS14	-	GPIO96	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS14	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS14	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS14	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B9	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS15	-	GPIO97	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS15	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS15	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei1@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS15	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B1-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS16	-	GPIO98	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS16	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS16	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS16	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B11	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS17	-	GPIO99	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS17	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS17	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS17	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B12	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS18	-	GPIO1--	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS18	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS18	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS18	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B13	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS19	-	GPIO1-1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS19	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS19	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS19	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B14	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS2-	-	GPIO1-2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS2-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	2	LTE_C2K_BPI_BUS2-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_BPI_BUS2-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_B15	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS21	-	GPIO124	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS21	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	DPI_HSYNC1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	KCOL2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	TDD_TXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS22	-	GPIO125	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS22	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	DPI_VSYNC1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	KROW2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	MD_URXD	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS23	-	GPIO126	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS23	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	DPI_CK1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	I2S2_MCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	MD_UTXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS24	-	GPIO127	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS24	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CONN_MCU_DBGI_N	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	EXT_FRAME_SYNC	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	DPI_DE1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	SRCLKENAI1	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	URXD-	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS25	-	GPIO128	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS25	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL, FOR liwei3@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	GPS_FRAME_SYNC	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	I2S2_DI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	PTA_RXD	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	UTXD-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS26	-	GPIO129	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS26	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	DISP_PWM	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	I2S2_LRCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	PTA_TXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	LTE_URXD	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
BPI_BUS27	-	GPIO13-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	BPI_BUS27	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	I2S2_BCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	IRTX_OUT	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	LTE_UTXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
LTE_TXBPI	-	GPIO118	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	-
	1	TXBPI	I	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	-
C2K_TXBPI	-	GPIO1-3	IO	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	-
	1	C2K_TXBPI	I	CU, CD	4/8/12/16mA	-
WB_CTRL-	-	GPIO13	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_ARM_EINT-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_CTRL1	-	GPIO14	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_ARM_EINT1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_CTRL2	-	GPIO15	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_ARM_EINT2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_CTRL3	-	GPIO16	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_ARM_EINT3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

© 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	7	DBG_MON_A3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_CTRL4	-	GPIO17	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL4	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_DM_EINT-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	WATCHDOG	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A4	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_CTRL5	-	GPIO18	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_CTRL5	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	C2K_DM_EINT1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A5	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
F2W_DATA	-	GPIO184	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	F2W_DATA	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	MRG_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_DM_EINT2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PCM-_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
F2W_CLK	-	GPIO185	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	F2W_CK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	MRG_DI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	C2K_DM_EINT3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PCM-_DI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_SCLK	-	GPIO187	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_SCLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	MRG_DO	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PCM-_DO	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_SDATA	-	GPIO188	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_SDATA	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	MRG_SYNC	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PCM-_SYNC	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_SEN	-	GPIO189	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_SEN	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	UTXD3	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	URXD3	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
WB_RSTB	-	GPIO186	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	WB_RSTB	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	URXD3	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	UTXD3	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPCOL-	-	GPIO84	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KCOL-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	URTS-	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CONN_MCU_DBGACK_N	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei4@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	4	SCL2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_TDO	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	AUXIF_CLK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPCOL1	-	GPIO85	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KCOL1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	UCTS-	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	UCTS1	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	SDA2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_TMS	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	AUXIF_ST	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A31	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPCOL2	-	GPIO86	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KCOL2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	URTS1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_RTCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A32	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPROW-	-	GPIO81	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KROW-	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CONN_MCU_DBGI_N	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	CORESONIC_SWCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_TCK	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	C2K_DM_EINT1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPROW1	-	GPIO82	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KROW1	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CONN_MCU_TRST_B	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	CORESONIC_SWD	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_NTRST	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	USB_DRVVBUS	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	C2K_DM_EINT2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
KPROW2	-	GPIO83	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	KROW2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	USB_DRVVBUS	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	4	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	C2K_TDI	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	C2K_DM_EINT3	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
SRCLKENAI	-	GPIO55	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	SRCLKENAI-	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	PWM2	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	CLKM5	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	CORESONIC_SWD	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	ANT_SEL6	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	KROW5	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DISP_PWM	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
SPI_CSB	-	GPIO65	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	SPI_CSA	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	EXT_FRAME_SYNC	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	I2S3_MCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	KROW2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	GPS_FRAME_SYNC	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	PTA_RXD	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A22	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
SPI_CLK	-	GPIO66	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	SPI_CKA	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	USB_DRVVBUS	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	I2S3_BCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	KCOL2	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	Reserved	-	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	PTA_TXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A23	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
SPI_MO	-	GPIO68	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	SPI_MOA	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	SPI_MIA	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	I2S3_LRCK	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PTA_TXD	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	5	ANT_SEL4	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	URTS1	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A25	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
SPI_MI	-	GPIO67	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	1	SPI_MIA	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	2	SPI_MOA	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	3	I2S3_DO	O	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	4	PTA_RXD	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei3@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Name	Aux. function	Aux. name	Aux. type	PU/PD/CU/CD	Driving	SMT
	5	IDDIG	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	6	UCTS1	I	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-
	7	DBG_MON_A24	IO	CU, CD	2/4/6/8mA	-

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.2 Electrical Characteristic

2.2.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 2-8. Absolute maximum ratings for power supply

Symbol or pin name	Description	Min.	Max.	Unit
AVDD18_PLLGP AVDD18_MEMPLL AVDD18_MDPLLGP	Analog power input 1.8V for PLL	1.7	1.9	V
AVDD18_AP	Analog power input 1.8V for AuxADC, TSENSE	1.7	1.9	V
AVDD18_MD	Analog power input 1.8V for BBTX, BBRX	1.7	1.9	V
AVDD28_DAC	Analog power input 2.8V for APC	2.66	2.94	V
DVDD18_MIPITX1	Analog power for MIPI DSI	1.7	1.9	V
DVDD18_MIPIRX- DVDD18_MIPIRX1	Analog power for MIPI CSI- & CSI1	1.7	1.9	V
AVDD33_USB_P- AVDD33_USB_P1	Analog power 3.3V for USB	3.135	3.465	V
AVDD18_USB	Analog power 1.8V for USB	1.7	1.9	V
AVDD18_WBG	Analog power 1.8V for connectivity ABB	1.7	1.9	V
DVDD18_IO! DVDD18_IO2 DVDD18_IO3 DVDD18_BIAS1 DVDD18_BIAS2 DVDD18_BIAS3	Digital power input for 1.8V IO	1.62	1.98	V
DVDD28_BPI1 DVDD28_BPI2	Digital power input for BPI	1.7	3.6	V
DVDD18_MSDC-	Digital power input for MSDC-	1.62	1.98	V
DVDD28_MSDC1	Digital power input for MSDC1	1.7	3.6	V
DVDD28_SIM1	Digital power input for SIM1	1.7	3.3	V
DVDD28_SIM2	Digital power input for SIM2	1.7	3.3	V
DDRV DDRV_CLK DDRV_VREF	Digital power input for DRAM	1.14	1.3	V
DVDD_DVFS	Digital power input for DVFS	0.95	1.31	V
DVDD_LTE	Digital power input for LTE	0.95	1.155	V
DVDD_SRAM	Digital power input for SRAM	0.95	1.31	V
DVDD_TOP	Digital power input for TOP	0.95	1.31	V

Warning: *Stressing the device beyond the absolute maximum ratings may cause permanent damage. These are stress ratings only.*

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR riweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.2.2 Recommended Operating Conditions

Table 2-9. Recommended operating conditions for power supply

Symbol or pin name	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
AVDD18_PLLGP AVDD18_MEMPLL AVDD18_MDPLLGP	Analog power input 1.8V for PLL	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
AVDD18_AP	Analog power input 1.8V for AuxADC, TSENSE	1.71	1.8	1.9	V
AVDD18_MD	Analog power input 1.8V for BBTX, BBRX	1.71	1.8	1.9	V
AVDD28_DAC	Analog power input 2.8V for APC	2.66	2.8	2.94	V
DVDD18_MIPITX1	Analog power for MIPI DSI	1.71	1.8	1.89	V
AVDD33_USB_P- AVDD33_USB_P1	Analog power for MIPI CSI- & CSI1	1.71	1.8	1.89	V
AVDD33_USB	Analog power 3.3V for USB	3.135	3.3	3.465	V
AVDD18_USB	Analog power 1.8V for USB	1.71	1.8	1.89	V
AVDD18_WBG	Analog power 1.8V for connectivity ABB	1.71	1.8	1.89	V
DVDD28_BPI1 DVDD28_BPI2	Digital power input for BPI	1.7	1.8	1.95	V
		2.66	2.8	2.94	
DVDD18_IO! DVDD18_IO2 DVDD18_IO3 DVDD18_BIAS1 DVDD18_BIAS2 DVDD18_BIAS3	Digital power input for 1.8V IO	1.62	1.8	1.98	V
DVDD18_MSDC-	Digital power input for MSDC-	1.62	1.8	1.98	V
DVDD28_MSDC1	Digital power input for MSDC1	1.7	1.8	1.95	V
		2.7	3.3	3.6	
DVDD28_SIM1 DVDD28_SIM2	Digital power input for SIM1/SIM2	2.7	3.3	3.6	V
		1.7	1.8	1.9	
DDRV DDRV_CLK DDRV_VREF	Digital power input for EMI (LPDDR2/3)	1.14	1.2	1.3	V
DVDD_DVFS	Digital power input for DVFS	0.95	1.15	1.31	V
DVDD_LTE	Digital power input for LTE	0.95	1.05-	1.155	V
DVDD_SRAM	Digital power input for SRAM	0.95	1.15	1.31	V
DVDD_TOP	Digital power input for TOP	0.95	1.15	1.31	V

2.2.3 Storage Condition

1. Shelf life in sealed bag: 12 months at < 40°C and < 90% relative humidity (RH).
2. After the bag is opened, devices subjected to infrared reflow, vapor-phase reflow or equivalent processing must be:
   - Mounted within 168 hours in factory condition of 30°C/60% RH, or
   - Stored at 20% RH

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3. Devices require baking before being mounted, if they are placed
   - For 192 hours at 40°C +5°C/-0°C and < 5% RH in low temperature device containers, or
   - For 24 hours at 125°C +5°C/-0°C in high temperature device containers.

2.2.4 AC Electrical Characteristics and Timing Diagram

2.2.4.1 External Memory Interface for LPDDR3

The external memory interface, shown in Figure 2-4, Figure 2-5 and Figure 2-6, is used to connect LPDDR3 device for MT6737. It includes pins CLK_T, CLK_C, CKE[1:0], CS[1:0], DQS[3:0], DQS#[3:0], CA[9:0] and DQ[31:0]. Table 2-10 summarizes the symbol definition and the related timing specifications.

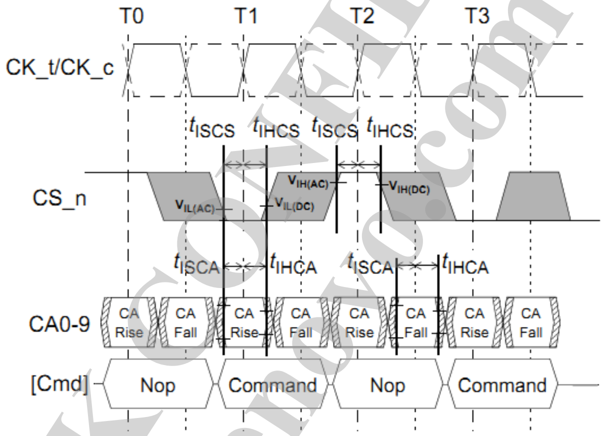


Figure 2-4. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR3 commands

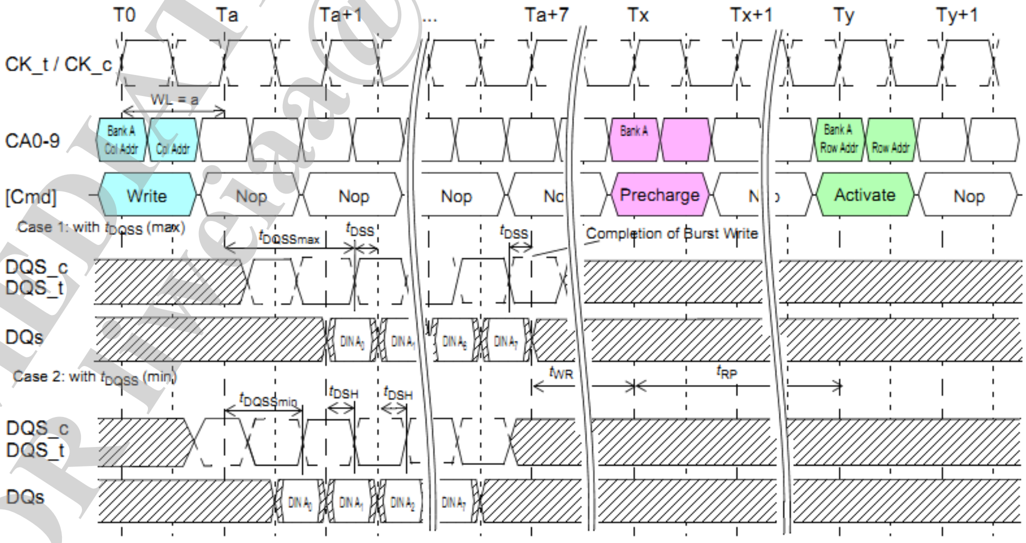


Figure 2-5. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR3 write

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

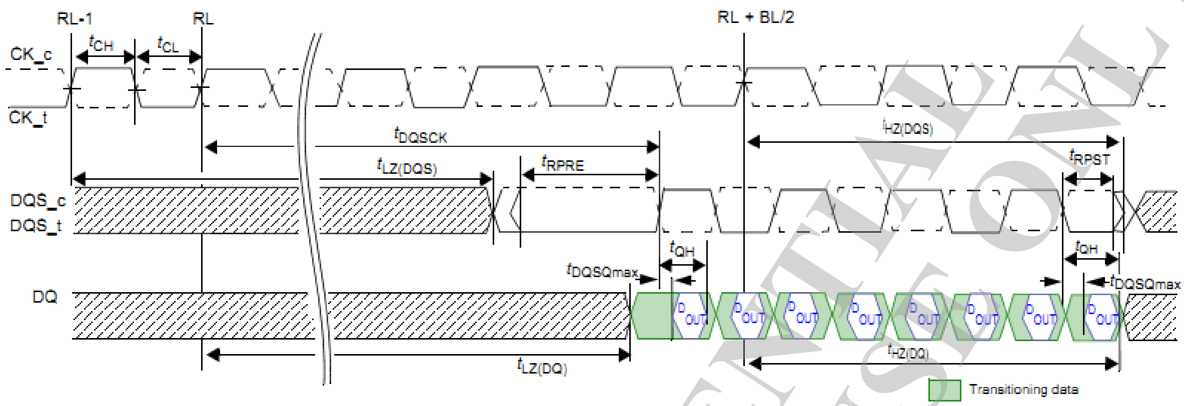


Figure 2-6. Basic LPDDR3 read timing parameter

Table 2-10. LPDDR3 AC timing parameter table of external memory interface

Symbol	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
tCK	Clock cycle time	1.071		100	ns
tDQSCK	DQS output access time from CK/CK'	2.5		5.5	ns
tCH	Clock high level width	0.45		0.55	tCK
tCL	Clock low level width	0.45		0.55	tCK
tDS	DQ & DM input setup time	0.13			ns
tDH	DQ & DM input hold time	0.13			ns
tDIPW	DQ and DM input pulse width	0.35			tCK
tDQSS	Write command to 1st DQS latching transition	0.75		1.25	tCK
tDSS	DQS falling edge to CK setup time	0.2			tCK
tDSH	DQS falling edge hold time from CK	0.2			tCK
tWPST	Write postamble	0.4			tCK
tWPRE	Write preamble	0.8			tCK
tISCA	Address & control input setup time	0.13			ns
tIHCA	Address & control input hold time	0.13			ns
tISCS	CS_ input setup time	0.23			ns
tIHCS	CS_ input hold time	0.23			ns
tIPWCA	Address and control input pulse width	0.35			tCK
tIPWCS	CS_ input pulse width	0.7			tCK
tCKE	CKE minimum pulse width (HIGH and LOW pulse width)	Max. (7.5ns, 3tCK)			ns
tISCKE	CKE input setup time	0.25			tCK
tIHCKE	CKE input hold time	0.25			tCK
tCPDED	Command path disable delay	2			tCK
tLZ(DQS)	DQS low-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (MIN) - 0.3			ns
tHZ(DQS)	DQS high-impedance time from CK/CK'			tDQSCK (MAX) – 0.1	ns

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
tLZ(DQ)	DQ low-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (MIN) - 0.3			ns
tHZ(DQ)	DQ high-impedance time from CK/CK'			tDQSCK (MAX) + [1.4*tDQSQ (MAX)]	ns
tDQSQ	DQS-DQ skew			0.115	ns
tDQSH	DQS input high-level width	0.4			tCK
tDQSL	DQS input low-level width	0.4			tCK
tQSH	DQS output high pulse width	tCH - 0.05			tCK
tQSL	DQS output low pulse width	tCL - 0.05			tCK
tQH	DQ/DQS output hold time from DQS	Min. (tQSH, tQSL)			ns
tMRW	MODE register Write command period	Max. (10tCK, 15)			ns
tMRR	MODE register Read command period	4			tCK
tMRD	Mode register set command delay	Max. (10tCK, 14)			ns
tRPRE	Read preamble	0.9			tCK
tRPST	Read postamble	0.3			tCK
tRAS	ACTIVE to PRECHARGE command period	Max. (42ns, 3tCK)		70000	ns
tRC	ACTIVE to ACTIVE command period	tRAS + tRPab (with all-bank pre-charge) tRAS + tRPpb (with per-bank pre-charge)			ns
tRFC	AUTO REFRESH to ACTIVE/AUTO REFRESH command period	56			ns
tRCD	ACTIVE to READ or WRITE delay	Max. (18ns, 3tCK)			ns
tRPpb	Row PRECHARGE Time (single bank)	Max. (18ns, 3tCK)			ns
tRPab	Row PRECHARGE Time (all banks)	Max. (21ns, 3tCK)			ns
tRRD	ACTIVE bank A to ACTIVE bank B delay	Max. (10ns, 2tCK)			ns
tWR	WRITE recovery time	Max. (15ns, 4tCK)			ns
tWTR	Internal write to READ command time	Max. (7.5ns, 4tCK)			ns
tXSR	SELF REFRESH exit to next valid command	Max. (tRFCab + 10ns, 2tCK)			ns
tXP	EXIT power down to next valid command delay	Max. (7.5ns, 3tCK)			ns
tREFW	Refresh period			32	ms

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweijia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
tRFCab	Refresh cycle time	130			ns
tRFCpb	Per bank refresh cycle time	60			ns
tRTP	Internal READ to PRECHARGE command delay	Max. (7.5ns, 4tCK)			ns
tCCD	CAS-to-CAS delay	4			tCK

2.2.4.2 External Memory Interface for LPDDR2

The external memory interface, shown in Figure 2-7, Figure 2-8 and Figure 2-9, is used to connect LPDDR2 device for MT6737. It includes pins ED_CLK, ED_CLK_B, ECKE, ECS#, EBA[2:0], EDQS[3:0], EDQS#[3:0], EA[9:0] and ED[31:0]. Table 2-11 summarizes the symbol definition and the related timing specifications.

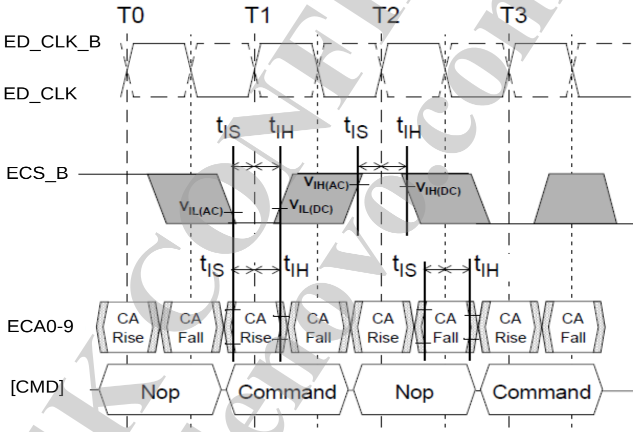


Figure 2-7. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 commands

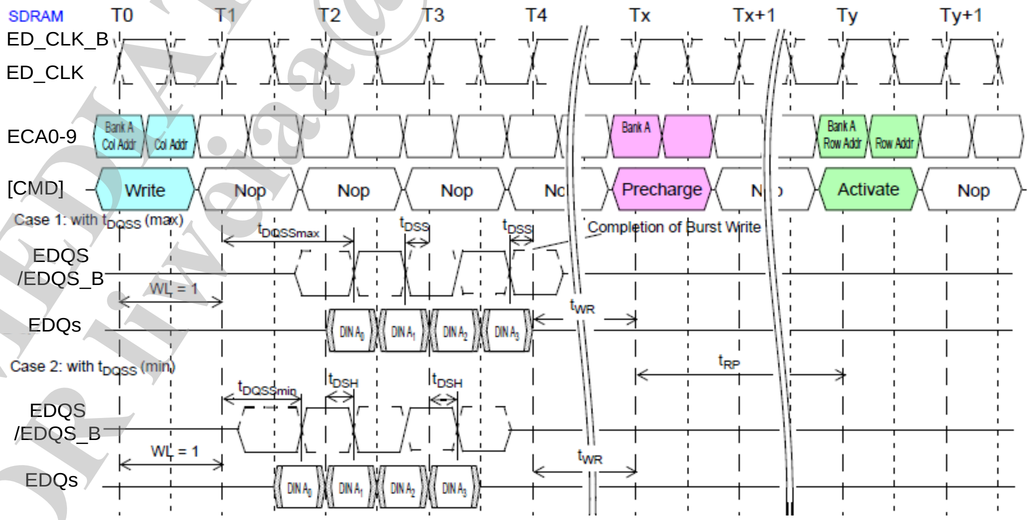


Figure 2-8. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 write

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lilwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

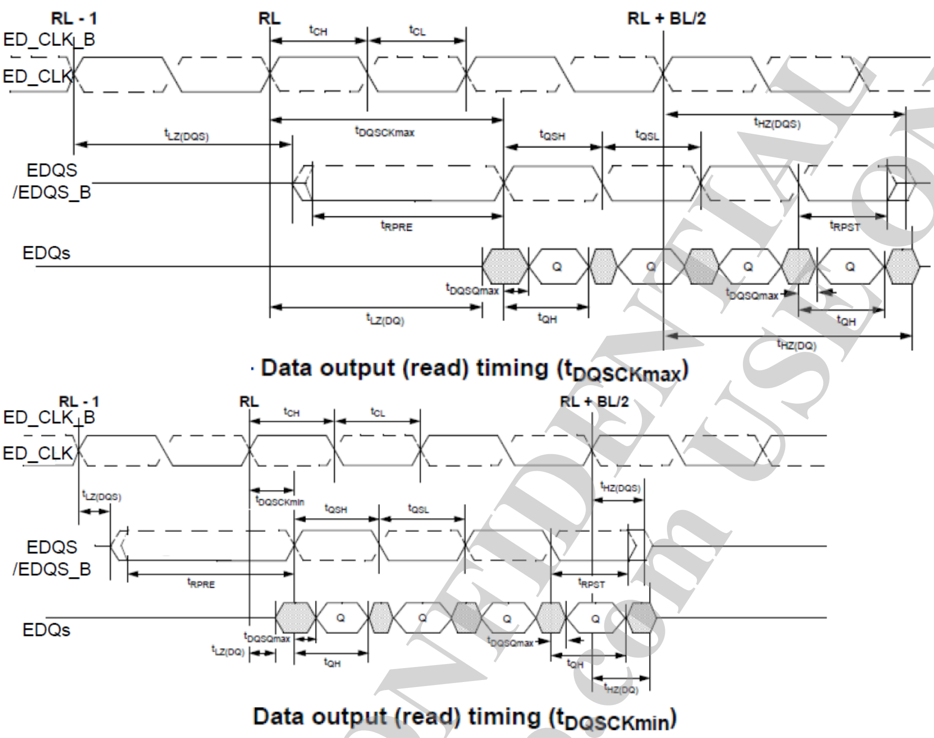


Figure 2-9. Basic timing parameter for LPDDR2 read

Table 2-11. LPDDR2 AC timing parameter table of external memory interface

Symbol	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
tCK	Clock cycle time	3.75		8	ns
tDQSCK	DQS output access time from CK/CK'	2.5		5.5	ns
tCH	Clock high level width	0.45		0.55	tCK
tCL	Clock low level width	0.45		0.55	tCK
tHP	Clock half period	0.45		0.55	tCK
tDS	DQ & DM input setup time	0.43			ns
tDH	DQ & DM input hold time	0.43			ns
tDQSS	Write command to 1st DQS latching transition	0.75		1.25	tCK
tDSS	DQS falling edge to CK setup time	0.2			tCK
tDSH	DQS falling edge hold time from CK	0.2			tCK
tIS	Address & control input setup time	0.46			ns
tIH	Address & control input hold time	0.46			ns
tLZ(DQS)	DQS low-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (Min.) – 300			ns
tHZ(DQS)	DQS high-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (Max.) – 100			ns
tLZ(DQ)	DQ low-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (Min.) – [1.4*tQHS (Max.)]			ns

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
tHZ(DQ)	DQ high-impedance time from CK/CK'	tDQSCK (Max.) + [1.4*tDQSQ (Max.)]			ns
tDQSQ	DQS-DQ skew	0.34			ns
tQHP	Data half period	Min. (tQSH, tQSL)			tCK
tQHS	Data hold skew factor	0.4			ns
tQH	DQ/DQS output hold time from DQS	tQHP – tQHS			ns
tDQSH	DQS input high-level width	0.4			tCK
tDQSL	DQS input low-level width	0.4			tCK
tQSH	DQS output high pulse width	tCH – 0.05			tCK
tQSL	DQS output low pulse width	tCL – 0.05			tCK
tMRW	MODE register Write command period	5			tCK
tMRR	MODE register Read command period	2			tCK
tRPRE	Read preamble	0.9		1.1	tCK
tRPST	Read postamble	tCL – 0.05			tCK
tRAS	ACTIVE to PRECHARGE command period	3			tCK
tRC	ACTIVE to ACTIVE command period	6			tCK
tRFC	AUTO REFRESH to ACTIVE/AUTO REFRESH command period	56			tCK
tRCD	ACTIVE to READ or WRITE delay	3			tCK
tRP	PRECHARGE command period	3			tCK
tRRD	ACTIVE bank A to ACTIVE bank B delay	2			tCK
tWR	WRITE recovery time	3			tCK
tWTR	Internal write to READ command time	2			tCK
tXSR	SELF REFRESH exit to the next valid command	40			tCK
tXP	EXIT power-down to the next valid command delay	2			tCK
tCKE	CKE min. pulse width (high & low pulse width)	2			tCK

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.3 System Configuration

2.3.1 Mode Selection

Table 2-12. Mode selection

Pin name	Description
KCOL0	0: Force USB download mode in bootrom 1: NA (default)

2.3.2 Constant Tie Pins

Table 2-13. Constant tied pins

Pin name	Description
TESTMODE	Test mode (tied to GND)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.4 Power-on Sequence

The power-on/off sequence with XTAL is shown in the following figure:

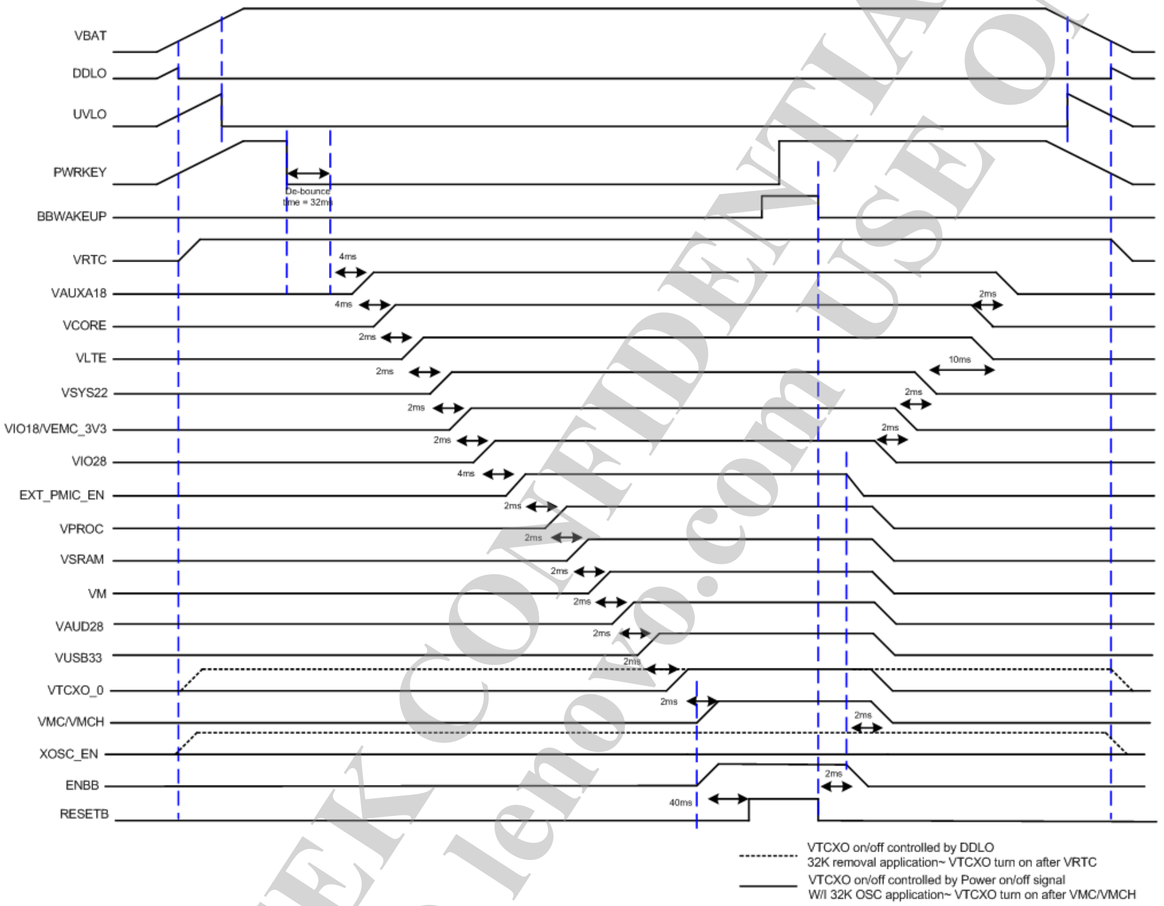


Figure 2-10 Power on/off Sequence by pressing PWRKEY

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.5 Analog Baseband

2.5.1 Introduction

To communicate with analog blocks, a common control interface for all analog blocks is implemented. In addition, there are some dedicated interfaces for data transfer. The common control interface translates the APB bus write and read cycle for specific addresses related to analog front-end control. In the write or read of any of these control registers, there is a latency associated with the transfer of data to or from the analog front-end. Dedicated data interface of each analog block is implemented in the corresponding digital block. An analog block includes the following analog functions for the complete GSM/GPRS/WCDMA/LTE/C2K base-band signal processing:

- Base-band Rx: For I/Q channels base-band A/D conversion
- Base-band Tx: For I/Q channels base-band D/A conversion and smoothing filtering
- ETDAC: A DAC output to control buck-converter for envelop tracking technique.
- RF control: Two DACs for automatic power control (APC) is included.The outputs are provided to external RF power amplifiers respectively.
- Auxiliary ADC: Provides an ADC for the battery and other auxiliary analog functions monitoring.
- Clock generation: One clock-squarer for shaping the input sinwave clock and 20 PLLs providing clock signals to base-band TRx, DSP, MCU, USB, MSDC units.

2.5.2 Features

The analog blocks include the following analog functions for complete GSM/GPRS/WCDMA/LTE/C2K base-band signal processing:

- LTE_BBRX
- C2K_BBRX
- LTE_BBTX
- C2K_BBTX
- ETDAC
- APC-DAC
- AUXADC
- Phase locked loop
- Temperature sensor

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.5.3 Block Diagram

2.5.3.1 LTE_BBRX

2.5.3.1.1 Block Descriptions

The receiver (Rx) performs baseband I/Q channels downlink analog-to-digital conversion:

1. Analog input multiplexer: For each channel, a 2-input multiplexer is included.
2. A/D converter: 4 high performance sigma-delta ADCs perform I/Q digitization for further digital signal processing.

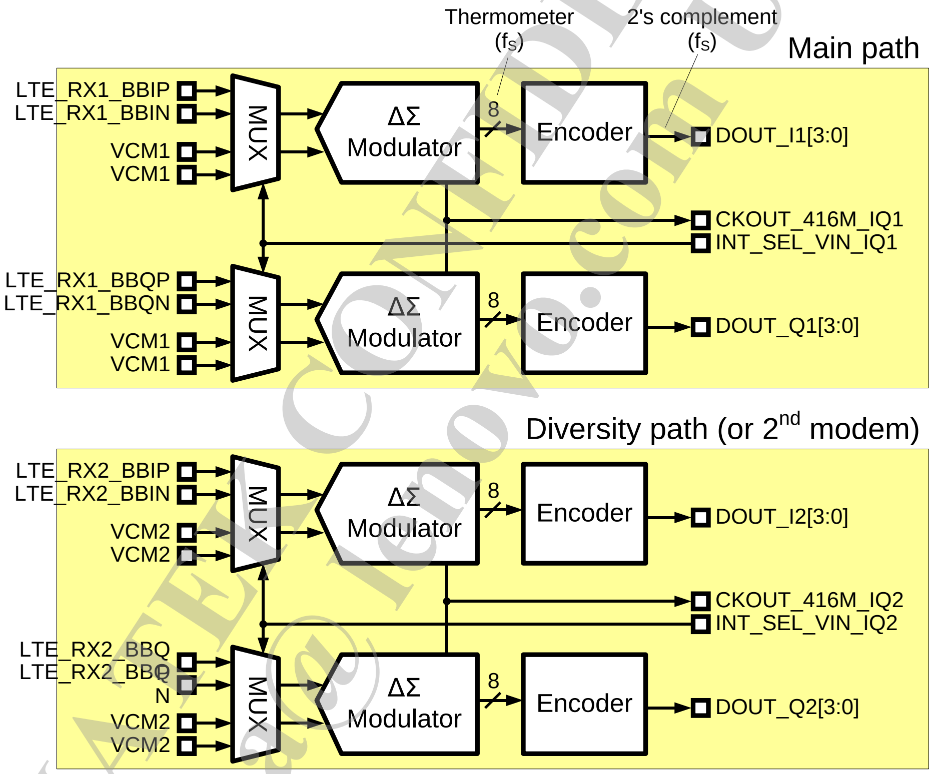


Figure 2-11. Block diagram of LTE_BBRX-ADC

2.5.3.1.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of the base-band downlink receiver.

Table 2-14. Baseband downlink specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
VIN	Differential analog input voltage (peak-to-peak)			2.4	V
ICM	Common mode input current magnitude			1	uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR riveiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
VCM	Common mode input voltage	0.65	0.7	0.75	V
FC	Input clock frequency – Clock rate (LTE HB mode) – Clock rate (LTE LB mode) – Clock rate (DC mode) – Clock rate (SC mode & GSM mode)		416 208 416 208		MHz
	Input clock duty cycle	49.5	50	50.5	%
	Input clock period jitter, DC mode			0.14	% (rms)
	Input clock period jitter, SC mode & GSM mode			0.61	% (rms)
RIN	Differential input resistance – LTE HB mode – LTE LB mode – DC mode – SC mode & GSM mode	2.8 5.6 5.6 11.2	4 8 8 16	5.2 10.4 10.4 20.8	kΩ
FS	Output sampling rate		416/208		MSPS
VOS	Differential input referred offset			10	mV
SIN	Signal to in-band noise – LTE HB mode, 2.4Vpp (10.2MHz) sinewave, 1kHz ~ 9MHz band – LTE LB mode, 2.4Vpp (5.2MHz) sinewave, 1kHz ~ 4.5MHz band – DC mode, 2.4Vpp (5.2MHz) sinewave, 400kHz ~ 4.6MHz band – SC mode, 2.4Vpp (2.7MHz) sinewave, 1kHz ~ 2.1MHz band – GSM mode: 2.4Vpp(570kHz) sinewave, 70kHz ~ 270kHz band	70 70 72 72 83	73 73 75 75 86		dB dB dB
DVDD18	Digital power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
AVDD18	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption (per channel, 1 ADC) – Power-up – Power-down			4.5 1	mA uA

2.5.3.2 C2K_BBRX

2.5.3.2.1 Block Descriptions

The receiver (Rx) performs baseband I/Q channels downlink analog-to-digital conversion:

1. Analog input multiplexer: For each channel, a 2-input multiplexer is included.
2. A/D converter: 4 high performance sigma-delta ADCs perform I/Q digitization for further digital signal processing.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

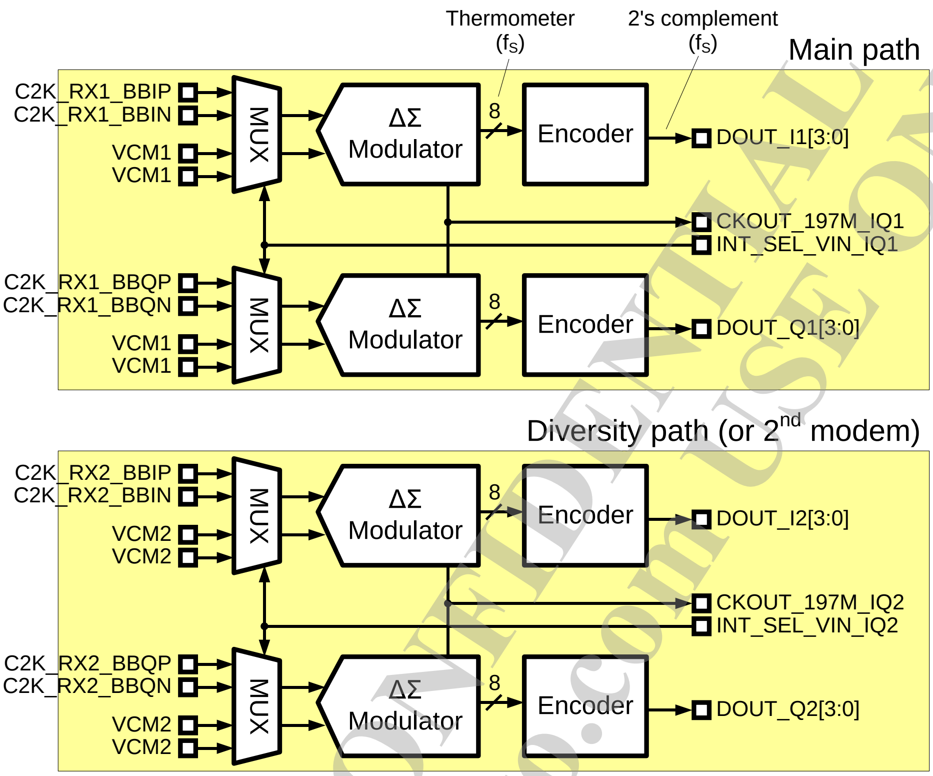


Figure 2-12. Block diagram of C2K_BBRX-ADC

2.5.3.3 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of the base-band downlink receiver.

Table 2-15. Baseband downlink specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
VIN	Differential analog input voltage (peak-to-peak)			2.4	V
ICM	Common mode input current magnitude			1	uA
VCM	Common mode input voltage	0.65	0.70	0.75	V
FC	Clock rate		196.608		MHz
	Input clock duty cycle	49.5	50	50.5	%
	Input clock period jitter			0.61	% (rms)
RIN	Differential input resistance	11.2	16	20.8	kΩ
FS	Output sampling rate		196.608		MSPS
VOS	Differential input referred offset			10	mV
SIN	Signal to in-band noise – 2.4Vpp (1.6MHz) sinewave, 1kKHz ~ 640kHz band	79	82		dB
DVDD18	Digital power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
AVDD18	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
T	Operating temperature	−20		80	°C
	Current consumption (per channel, 1 ADC) – Power-up – Power-down			 2 1	 mA uA

2.5.3.4 LTE_BBTX

2.5.3.4.1 Block Descriptions

BBTX includes two channel DACs with the 1st order low pass filter. The DACs are PMOS current-steering topology with NMOS constant sinking current and the active RC filter performs current to voltage buffer.

The bitwidth of DACs is 11-bit which is encoded into 7 bits of thermometer code and 8 binary code by digital hard macro inside BBTX layout. The encoded bits are timing synchronized by D-type flip-flop which is toggled by the analog local clock. The MD-PLL delivers 832MHz differential clock to BBTX. A clock divider translates the 832MHz to 416MHz for DACs and AFIFO inside mixedsys.

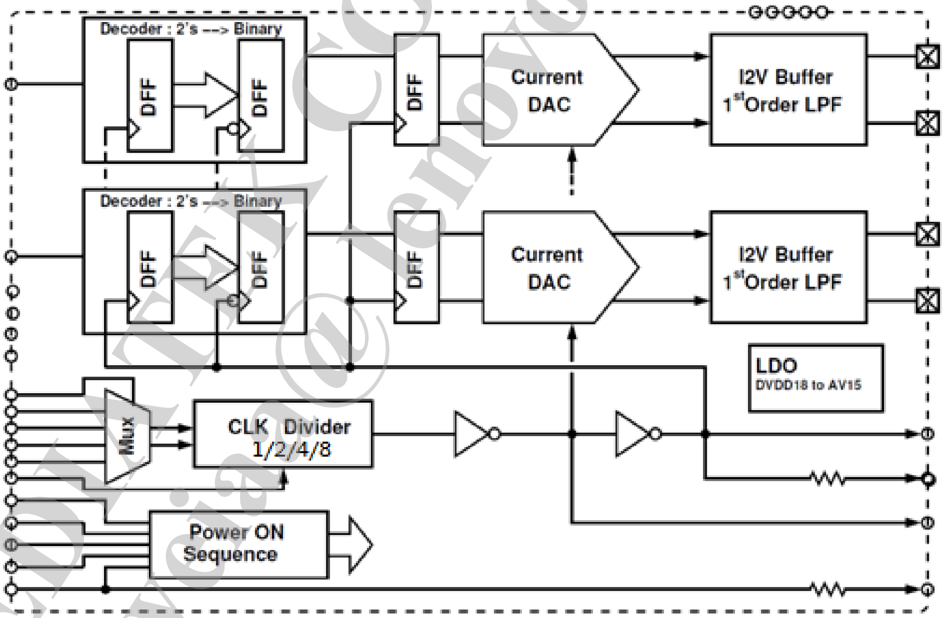


Figure 2-13. Block diagram of LTE_BBTX

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.5.3.4.2 Functional Specifications

Table 2-16. LTE_BBTX specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
V_{ocm}	DC output common mode voltage	0.615	0.65	0.685	V
I_K	HF leakage current @ supply, Irms @416*2 = 832MHz			3.5	uA
V_{fs}	DAC output swing		2100		mV
N	DAC resolution		11.0		bit
F_s	Sampling clock		416		MHz
I_{mis}	1-sgma DAC unit cell mismatch			1	%
G_{mis}	3-sigma I/Q gain mismatch	-0.2		0.2	dB
V_{os}	3-sigma output differential DC offset			20	mV
F_{3dB}	3dB corner freq.		20/40		MHz
N_{OOB}	Output noise level @25MHz		40		nVrms/sqrt(Hz)
Dinb	Inband Droop		0.1		dB
DNL			1		LSB
INL			2		LSB
IM3	In-band two-tone test swing V1=V2=290/sqrt(2)mV		-58	-55	dBc
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption – Power-up – Power-down		 6.5 10		 mA uA

2.5.3.5 C2K_BBTX

2.5.3.5.1 Block Descriptions

BBTX includes two channels of DACs with the first order low pass filter. The DACs are PMOS current-steering topology with NMOS constant sinking current, and the active RC filter performs current to the voltage buffer.

The bitwidth of DACs is 10-bit which is encoded into 7 bits of thermometer code and 7 binary code by mixedsys hardware. The encoded bits are timing synchronized by D-type flip-flop which is toggled by the analog local clock. MD-PLL2 deliver 393.216MHz differential clock to BBTX. A clock divider buffered the 393.216MHz to AFIFO inside the mixedsys.

The IO power, DVDD18_MD, is regulated to a voltage around 1.55V to supply analog component, and the required bias currents are generated by BBRX.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

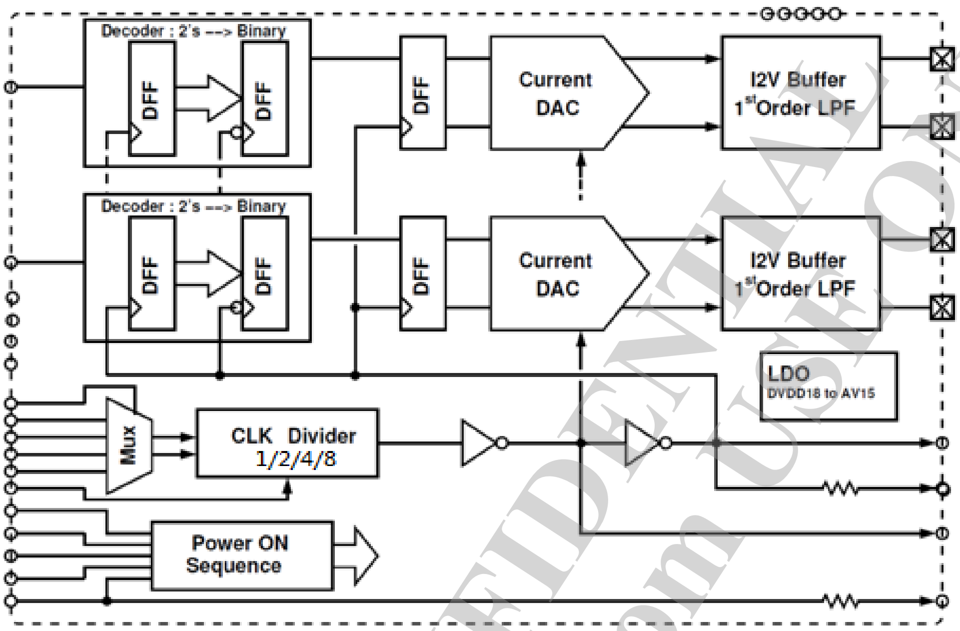


Figure 2-14. Block diagram of C2K_BBTX

2.5.3.5.2 Functional Specifications

Table 2-17. C2K_BBTX specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit.
V_{ocm}	DC output common mode voltage	0.615	0.65	0.685	V
I_K	HF Leakage current @ supply, Irms @416*2=832MHz			3.5	uA
V_{fs}	DAC output swing		2100		mV
N	DAC resolution		10.0		bit
F_s	Sampling clock		393.216		MHz
I_{mis}	1-sgma DAC unit cell mismatch			1	%
G_{mis}	3-sigma I/Q gain mismatch	-0.2		0.2	dB
V_{os_T}	3-sigma output differential DC offset over temp.			4	mV
V_{os}	3-sigma output differential DC offset			10	mV
F_{3dB}	3dB corner freq.	20	25	30	MHz
S_{LPF}	LPF selectivity @832MHz	28			dB
N_{OOB}	Output noise level @45MHz		15.1	30.1.	nVrms/sqrt(Hz)
CN	Signal to noise ratio@45MHz		-146	-140	dBc/Hz
IM3	In-band two-tone test swing V1=V2=290/sqrt(2) mV		-60	-56	dBc
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption – Power-up		6.5		mA

FOR lianyera@lenovo.com USE ONLY
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit.
	– Power-down		10		uA

2.5.3.6 ETDAC

2.5.3.6.1 Block Descriptions

The ETDAC (Envelope Tracking DAC) provides analog envelope signal to external ET modulator. It includes:

1. 11-bit D/A converter: Converts digital modulated signals to analog domain. The input to the DAC is sampled at 416MHz rate with the 11-bit resolution.
2. Smoothing filter: The low-pass filter performs smoothing function for DAC output signals with a 20/40MHz 1st-order Butterworth frequency response.

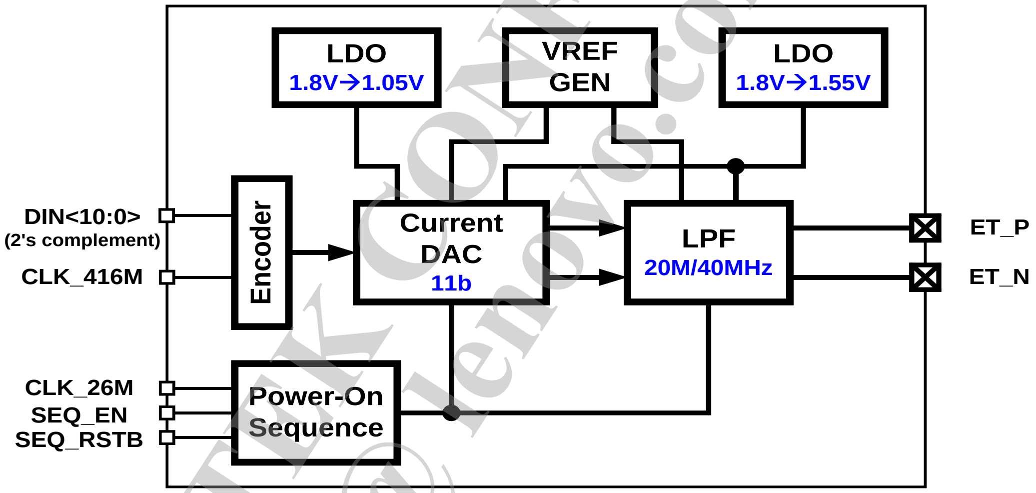


Figure 2-15. Block diagram of ETDAC

2.5.3.6.2 Functional Specfications

Table 2-18. ETDAC specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
N	Resolution		11		Bit
FS	Sampling rate		416		MSPS
IM3	3rd order Intermodulation distortion		-60	-50	dB
	Output swing (full swing)		2		Vppd
VOCM	Output CM voltage	0.6		0.85	V
	Output capacitance (single-ended)			10	PF
	Output resistance (differential)		100		KΩ

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
DNL	Differential nonlinearity	-1		+1	LSB
INL	Integral nonlinearity	-2		+2	LSB
FCUT	Filter -3dB cutoff frequency (calibrated)		20/40		MHz
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.95	1.05	1.15	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption – Power-up – Power-down		 4.5 10		 mA uA

2.5.3.7 APC-DAC

2.5.3.7.1 Block Descriptions

See the figure below. APC-DAC is designed to produce a single-ended output signal at APC pin. Two APC-DACs provide two separate output signals (APC1 and APC2).

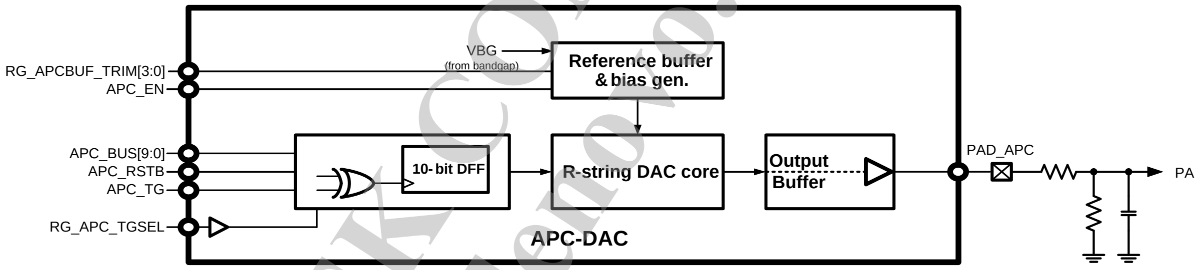


Figure 2-16. Block diagram of APC-DAC (same architecture for two APC-DACs)

2.5.3.7.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of the APC-DAC (apply to both APC-DACs).

Table 2-19. APC-DAC specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
N	Resolution		10		Bit
F_S	Clock rate	1.0833		2.1666	MS/s
SNDR	Signal-to-noise-and-distortion ratio (10kHz sine wave with 1.0V swing)		50		dB
T_S	Settling time (99% full-swing settling)			5	us
$V_{O,max}$	Maximum output			AVDD – 0.2	V
C_L	Output loading capacitance		220	2200	pF

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
DNL	Differential nonlinearity (code 30 ~ 970)		±1.0		LSB
INL	Integral nonlinearity (code 30 ~ 970)		±2.0		LSB
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.81	1.0	1.1	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	2.6	2.8	3.0	V
T	Operating temperature	−20		85	°C
I_{ON}	Current consumption (power-on state)		450		uA
I_{OFF}	Current consumption (power-down state)			20	uA

2.5.3.8 AUXADC

2.5.3.8.1 Block Descriptions

The auxiliary ADC includes the following functional blocks:

1. Analog multiplexer: Selects signal from one of the auxiliary input channels. There are 16 input channels of AUXADC. Some are for internal voltage measurement and some for external voltage measurement. Environmental messages to be monitored, e.g. temperature, should be transferred to the voltage domain.
2. 12-bit A/D converter: Converts the multiplexed input signal to 12-bit digital data.

See Table 2-20 for brief descriptions of AUXADC input channels.

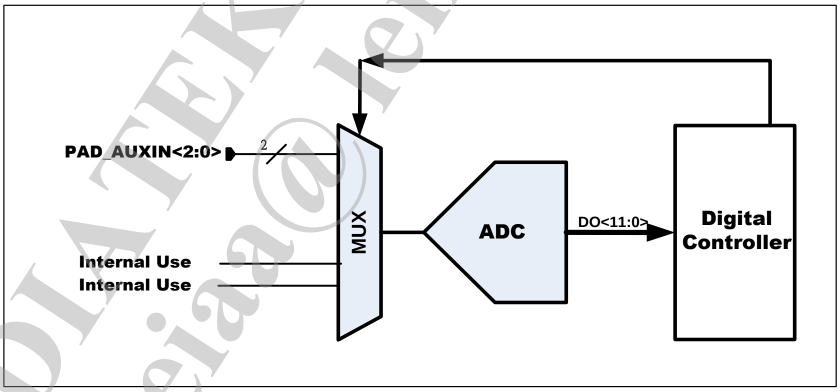


Figure 2-17. Block diagram of AUXADC

Table 2-20. Definitions of AUXADC channels

AUXADC channel ID	Description
Channel 0	External use (AUX_IN0)
Channel 1	External use (AUX_IN1)
Channel 2	NA

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

AUXADC channel ID	Description
Channel 3	NA
Channel 4	NA
Channel 5	NA
Channel 6	NA
Channel 7	NA
Channel 8	NA
Channel 9	NA
Channel 10	Internal use
Channel 11	Internal use
Channel 12	External use (AUX_IN2)
Channel 13	NA
Channel 14	NA
Channel 15	NA

2.5.3.8.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of auxiliary ADC.

Table 2-21. AUXADC specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
N	Resolution		12		Bit
FC	Clock rate		3.25		MHz
FS	Sampling rate @ N-Bit		3.25/(N+8)		MSPS
	Input swing	0.05		1.45	V
CIN	Input capacitance Unselected channel Selected channel		 50 4		 fF pF
RIN	Input resistance Unselected channel	 20			 MΩ
	Clock latency		N+8		1/FC
DNL	Differential nonlinearity		+1.0/-1.0		LSB
INL	Integral nonlinearity		+2.0/-2.0		LSB
SINAD	Signal to noise and distortion ratio (1kHz full swing input & 1.0833MHz clock rate)	56	64		dB
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.81	1.0	1.1	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption Power-up Power-down		 600 1		 uA uA
	Accuracy- before trim			+-75	mV
	Accuracy- after trim			+-10	mV

FOR meiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.5.3.9 Clock Squarer

2.5.3.9.1 Block Descriptions

For most VCXO, the output clock waveform is sinusoidal with too small amplitude (about several hundred mV) to make digital circuits function well. The clock squarer is designed to convert such a small signal to a rail-to-rail clock signal with excellent duty-cycle.

2.5.3.9.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of clock squarer.

Table 2-22. Clock squarer specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency	13	26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency	13	26		MHz
Vin	Input signal amplitude	350	500	1,000	mVpp
DcycIN	Input signal duty cycle		50		%
DcycOUT	Output signal duty cycle	DcycIN-5		DcycIN+5	%
TR	Rise time on pin CLKSQOUT			5	ns/pF
TF	Fall time on pin CLKSQOUT			5	ns/pF
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.81	1.0	1.1	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		500		uA

2.5.3.10 Phase Locked Loop

2.5.3.10.1 Block Descriptions

There are total 17 PLLs in PLL macro separated into 2 groups, providing several clocks for CPU, BUS, modem, analog modem, MSDC and image-sensor.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

MTK Confidential A

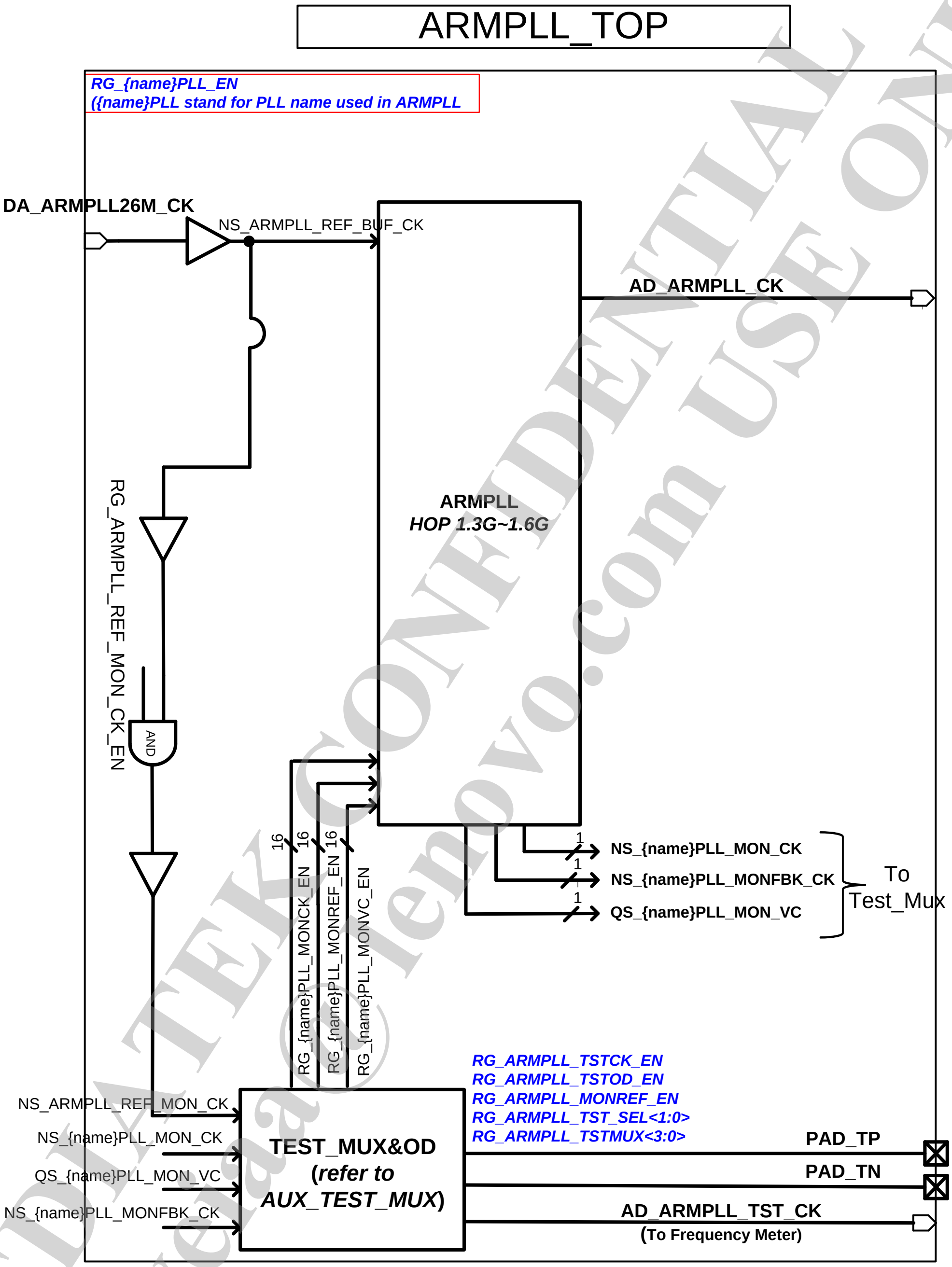


Figure 2-18. Block diagram of ARMPLL

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

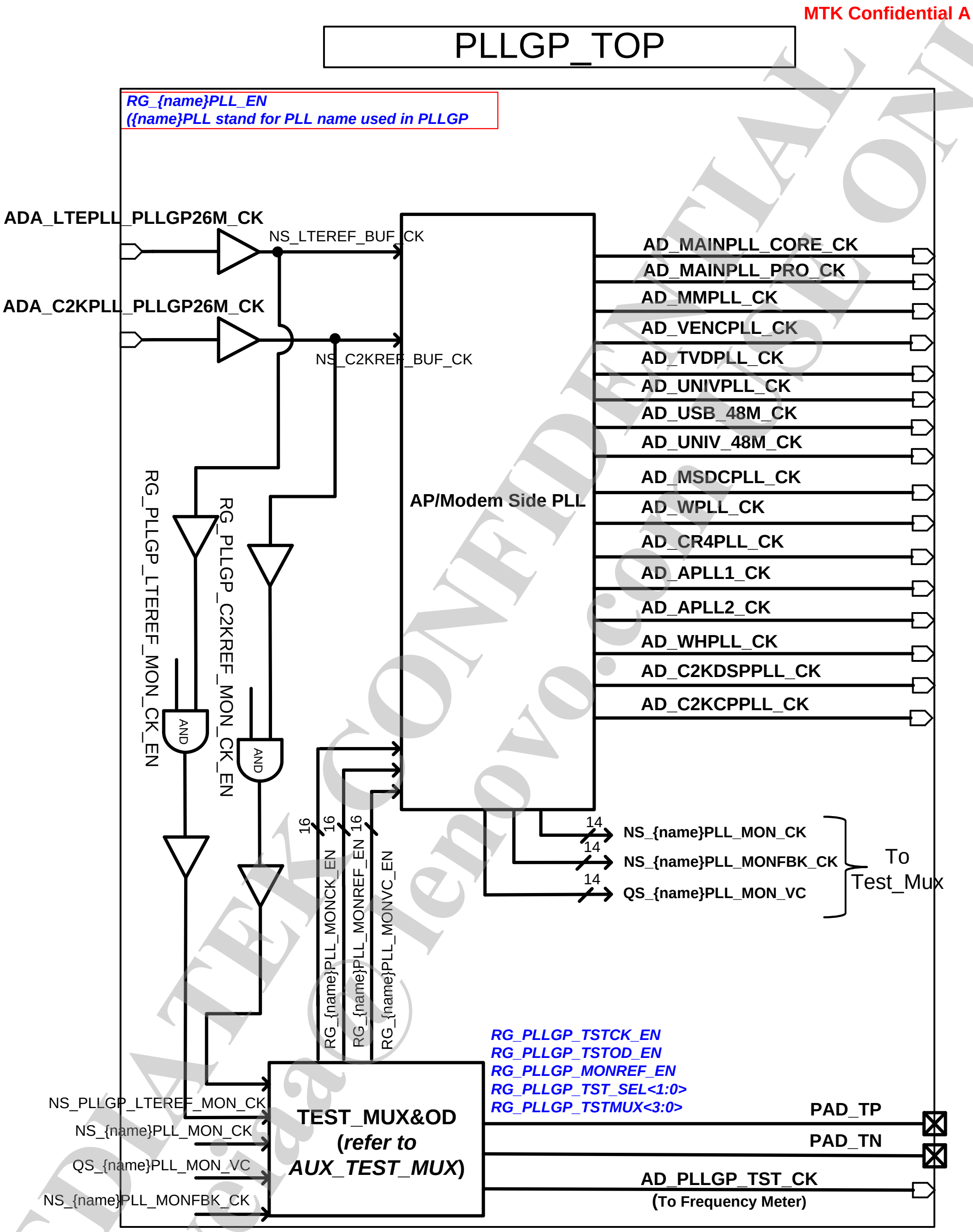


Figure 2-19. Block diagram of PLLGP

2.5.3.10.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of PLL.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-23. ARMPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		1300		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	45	50	55	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		30		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		1		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-24. MAINPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		1092		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	45	50	55	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		30		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		1		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-25. MMPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		450		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR huweia@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-26. UNIVPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency	N/A	1248	N/A	MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	45	50	55	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		30		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-27. MSDCPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		800		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	45	50	55	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-28. WPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency	N/A	491.52	N/A	MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (rms period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-29. WHPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency	N/A	500.5	N/A	MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (rms period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-30. C2KCPPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency	N/A	780	N/A	MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-31. C2KDSPPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		340		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR weiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-32. CR4PLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		1196		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		30		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-33. VENCPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		295.75		MHz
	Settling time		20		us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-34. TVDPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		148.5		MHz
	Settling time		20		Us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		Ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-35. LTEDSPPLL specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		320		MHz
	Settling time		20		Us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		Ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

Table 2-36. APLL1 specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Fin	Input clock frequency		26		MHz
Fout	Output clock frequency		98.304		MHz
	Settling time		20		Us
	Output clock duty cycle	47	50	53	%
	Output clock jitter (period jitter)		60		Ps
DVDD	Digital power supply	0.945	1.05	1.155	V
AVDD	Analog power supply	1.7	1.8	1.9	V
T	Operating temperature	-20		80	°C
	Current consumption		0.8		mA
	Power-down current consumption			1	uA

2.5.3.11 Temperature Sensor

2.5.3.11.1 Block Descriptions

In order to monitor the temperature of CPUs, several temperature sensors are provided. The temperature sensor is made of substrate BJT in the CMOS process. The voltage output of temperature sensor is measured by AUXADC.

2.5.3.11.2 Functional Specifications

See the table below for the functional specifications of temperature sensor.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 2-37. Temperature sensor specifications

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
	Resolution		0.15		°C
	Temperature range	0		85	°C
	Accuracy	-5		5	°C
	Active current		60		uA
	Quiescent current		12		uA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.6 Package Information

2.6.1 Package Outlines

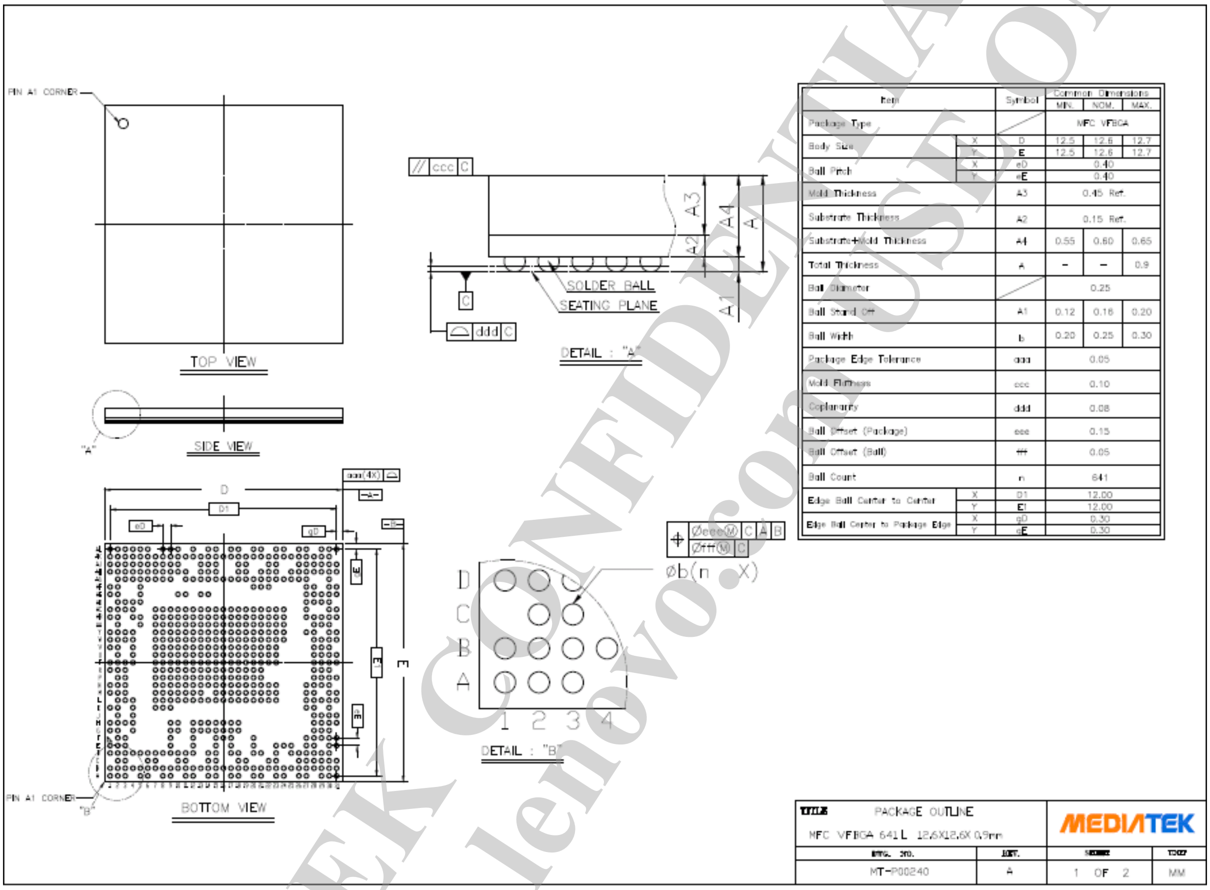


Figure 2-20. Outlines and dimensions of VFBGA 12.6mm*12.6mm, 641 balls, 0.4mm pitch package

2.6.2 Thermal Operating Specifications

Table 2-38. Thermal operating specifications

Symbol	Description	Value	Unit	Note
	Max. operating junction temperature	125	°C	
	Package thermal resistances in nature convection	37.65	°C/Watt	

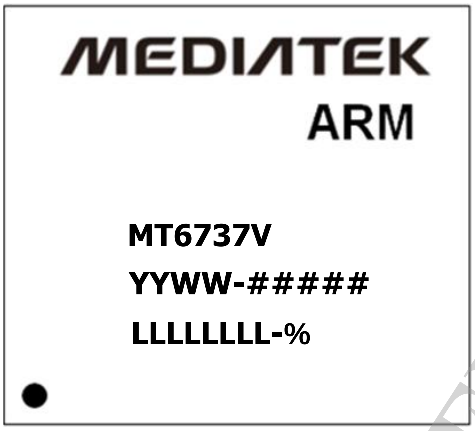
2.6.3 Lead-free Packaging

The chip is provided in a lead-free package and meets RoHS requirements.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

2.7 Ordering Information

2.7.1 Top Marking Definition



- YYWW: Date code
- %: Functional code
- #####: Subcontractor code
- LLLLLLLL: Die lot No.

Figure 2-21. Top marking of MT6737

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3 MCU and BUS Fabric

3.1 MCU System

3.1.1 Introduction

MCUSYS is a subsystem responsible for running operating system and application programs in MT6737. It comprises four Cortex-A53 cores into 1 cluster and Generic Interrupt Controller (GIC). A 333MHz 128-bit AXI bus is directly connected to External Memory Interface (EMI) to minimize the access latency to DRAM and provide sufficient memory bandwidth. The peripheral system and on-chip storage are bridged through a 273MHz/64-bit AXI bus, and the outstanding capability of AXI protocol allows the system to exploit its maximum throughput from eight CPU cores.

MCUSYS supports DVFS technology which allows CPU to run at different frequency/voltage configurations for different application requirements. When in standby mode, MCUSYS can be completely shut down to further save power consumption and optimize the battery usage on mobile devices.

3.1.2 Features

3.1.2.1 Cluster 0, Cortex-A53 Specifications

– Four-core ARM® Cortex-A53 MPCore™ operating at 1.25GHz
– Supports ARMv8-A architecture for both 32 and 64-bit execution state
– Supports NEON multimedia processing engine with SIMDv2/VFPv4 ISA
– Optional support ARMv8 Cryptographic extension
– 32KB L1 I-cache and 32KB L1 D-cache
– 256KB unified L2 cache for CPU cluster
– DVFS technology with adaptive operating voltage from 0.95V to 1.25V
– Supports ARM Jazelle technology

3.1.2.2 Clock Modes between Clusters and AXI Bus Fabric

The CPU and AXI bus fabric is synchronous and with integer clock ratio for example 1:1/1:2/1:4 for the best system performance. CPU and AXI bus fabric also support Dynamic Clock Management (DCM) mechanism to dynamically turn off the clock when no transactions are on the bus interface. CPU, cluster and AXI bus fabric can also support DVFS technology to lower power consumption.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
huweiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.1.3 Interrupt Controller

MT6737 uses ARM GIC400 interrupt controller for interrupt management. GIC400 is embedded inside MCUSYS alongside CCI to minimize the interrupt handling latency. For the interrupt connected to GIC400, see the table below for details. The GIC interrupts are separated into 2 categories, the Private Peripheral Interrupts (PPI) and Shared Peripheral Interrupts (SPI). PPI occupies the first 32 interrupt slots in GIC and are banked for each CPU core. SPI begins from the 33rd interrupt and is shared by all CPU cores.

Table 3-1. Interrupt request list for Cortex-A53

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
0	Software generated interrupt 0	H	Edge
1	Software generated interrupt 1	H	Edge
2	Software generated interrupt 2	H	Edge
3	Software generated interrupt 3	H	Edge
4	Software generated interrupt 4	H	Edge
5	Software generated interrupt 5	H	Edge
6	Software generated interrupt 6	H	Edge
7	Software generated interrupt 7	H	Edge
8	Software generated interrupt 8	H	Edge
9	Software generated interrupt 9	H	Edge
10	Software generated interrupt 10	H	Edge
11	Software generated interrupt 11	H	Edge
12	Software generated interrupt 12	H	Edge
13	Software generated interrupt 13	H	Edge
14	Software generated interrupt 14	H	Edge
15	Software generated interrupt 15	H	Edge
16	(Reserved)	-	-
17	(Reserved)	-	-
18	(Reserved)	-	-
19	(Reserved)	-	-
20	(Reserved)	-	-
21	(Reserved)	-	-
22	(Reserved)	-	-
23	(Reserved)	-	-
24	(Reserved)	-	-
25	Virtual maintenance interrupt	L	Level
26	Hypervisor timer event	L	Level
27	Virtual timer event	L	Level
28	Legacy nFIQ	L	Level
29	Secure physical timer event	L	Level
30	Non-secure physical timer event	L	Level
31	Legacy nIRQ	L	Level
32	nIRQOUT[0]	L	Level

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR huweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

 © 2016 MediaTek Inc.
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
33	nIRQOUT[1]	L	Level
34	nIRQOUT[2]	L	Level
35	nIRQOUT[3]	L	Level
40	nPMUIRQ[0]	L	Level
41	nPMUIRQ[1]	L	Level
42	nPMUIRQ[2]	L	Level
43	nPMUIRQ[3]	L	Level
48	nCNTHPIRQ[0]	L	Level
49	nCNTHPIRQ[1]	L	Level
50	nCNTHPIRQ[2]	L	Level
51	nCNTHPIRQ[3]	L	Level
56	nCNTVIRQ[0]	L	Level
57	nCNTVIRQ[1]	L	Level
58	nCNTVIRQ[2]	L	Level
59	nCNTVIRQ[3]	L	Level
64	CNTPSIRQ[0]	H	Level
65	CNTPSIRQ[1]	H	Level
66	CNTPSIRQ[2]	H	Level
67	CNTPSIRQ[3]	H	Level
72	CNTPNSIRQ[0]	H	Level
73	CNTPNSIRQ[1]	H	Level
74	CNTPNSIRQ[2]	H	Level
75	CNTPNSIRQ[3]	H	Level
80	EXTERRIRQ	H	Level
82	mpo_CTIIRQ_sync[0]	H	Level
83	mpo_CTIIRQ_sync[1]	H	Level
84	mpo_CTIIRQ_sync[2]	H	Level
85	mpo_CTIIRQ_sync[3]	H	Level
90	CCI_EVNTCNTOVFL[0]	H	Level
91	CCI_EVNTCNTOVFL[1]	H	Level
92	CCI_EVNTCNTOVFL[2]	H	Level
93	CCI_EVNTCNTOVFL[3]	H	Level
94	CCI_EVNTCNTOVFL[4]	H	Level
95	CCI_ERRORIRQ	H	Level
96	mcu_xgpt_irq[0]	H	Level
97	mcu_xgpt_irq[1]	H	Level
98	mcu_xgpt_irq[2]	H	Level
99	mcu_xgpt_irq[3]	H	Level
100	mcu_xgpt_irq[4]	H	Level
101	mcu_xgpt_irq[5]	H	Level
102	mcu_xgpt_irq[6]	H	Level
103	mcu_xgpt_irq[7]	H	Level
104	usb_mcu_irq_b[0]	L	Level

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR liwei@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
105	usb_mcu_irq_b[1]	L	Level
106	ts_irq_b	L	Edge
107	ts_batch_irq_b	L	Edge
108	lowbattery_irq_b	L	Edge
109	pwm_irq_b	L	Level
110	therm_ctrl_irq_b	L	Level
111	msdc0_irq_b	L	Level
112	msdc1_irq_b	L	Level
113	(Reserved)	-	-
114	(Reserved)	-	-
115	ap_hif_irq_b	L	Level
116	i2c0_irqb	L	Level
117	i2c1_irqb	L	Level
118	i2c2_irqb	L	Level
119	i2c3_irqb	L	Level
120	(Reserved)	-	-
121	(Reserved)	-	-
122	btif_irq_b	L	Edge
123	uart0_irq_b	L	Level
124	uart1_irq_b	L	Level
125	uart2_irq_b	L	Level
126	uart3_irq_b	L	Level
127	nfiecc_irq_b	L	Level
128	nfi_irq_b	L	Level
129	dma_irq[0] (HIF0)	L	Level
130	dma_irq[1] (IRDA)	L	Level
131	dma_irq[2] (I2C0)	L	Level
132	dma_irq[3] (I2C1)	L	Level
133	dma_irq[4] (I2C2)	L	Level
134	dma_irq[5] (I2C3)	L	Level
135	dma_irq[6] (uart0_tx)	L	Level
136	dma_irq[7] (uart0_rx)	L	Level
137	dma_irq[8] (uart1_tx)	L	Level
138	dma_irq[9] (uart1_rx)	L	Level
139	dma_irq[10] (uart2_tx)	L	Level
140	dma_irq[11] (uart2_rx)	L	Level
141	dma_irq[12] (uart3_tx)	L	Level
142	dma_irq[13] (uart3_rx)	L	Level
143	dma_irq[14] (uart4_tx)	L	Level
144	dma_irq[15] (uart4_rx)	L	Level
145	(Reserved)	-	-
146	(Reserved)	-	-
147	(Reserved)	-	-

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR weiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
148	(Reserved)	-	-
149	(Reserved)	-	-
150	spi0_irq_b	L	Level
151	msdc0_wakeup_ps_irq	H	Edge
152	msdc1_wakeup_ps_irq	H	Edge
153	(Reserved)	-	-
154	(Reserved)	-	-
155	irda_irq	H	Level
156	irtx_irq	H	Level
157	ptp_fsm_irq_b	L	Level
158	conn2ap_btif_wakeup_out_b	L	Edge
159	(Reserved)	-	-
160	wdt_irq_b	L	Edge
161	(Reserved)	-	-
162	(Reserved)	-	-
163	(Reserved)	-	-
164	dcc_aparm_irq	L	Level
165	(Reserved)	-	-
166	aparm_domain_irq_b	L	Level
167	aparm_decerr_irq_b	L	Level
168	domain_abort_irq	H	Level
169	bus_dbg_tracker_irq_b	L	Level
170	cq_dma_gdma_irq_b	L	Level
171	(Reserved)	-	-
172	ccifo_ap_irq_b	L	Level
173	trng_irq_b	L	Level
174	cq_dma_gdma2_irq_b	L	Level
175	cq_dam_audio_irq_b	L	Level
176	afe_mcu_irq_b	L	Level
177	cldma_ap_irq	H	Level
178	mmu_irq_b	L	Level
179	mmu_sec_irq_b	L	Level
180	gce_secure_irq_b	L	Level
181	refresh_rate_int_pulse_b	L	Edge
182	gcpu_irq_b	L	Level
183	gce_irq_b	L	Level
184	apxgpt_irq_b	L	Level
185	eint_irq[0](arm_eint_irq)	H	Level
186	eint_event_irq_b	L	Level
187	eint_direct_irq[0]	H	Level
188	eint_direct_irq[1]	H	Level
189	eint_direct_irq[2]	H	Level
190	eint_direct_irq[3]	H	Level

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
191	dnl3_xpgt64_irq_b[0]	L	Level
192	dnl3_xpgt64_irq_b[1]	L	Level
193	dnl3_xpgt64_irq_b[2]	L	Level
194	dnl3_xpgt64_irq_b[3]	L	Level
195	pmic_wrap_err	H	Level
196	kp_irq_b	L	Edge
197	spm_irq_b[0]	L	Level
198	spm_irq_b[1]	L	Level
199	spm_irq_b[2]	L	Level
200	spm_irq_b[3]	L	Level
201	spm_irq_b[4]	L	Level
202	spm_irq_b[5]	L	Level
203	spm_irq_b[6]	L	Level
204	spm_irq_b[7]	L	Level
205	sej_apxgpt_irq_b	L	Level
206	sej_wdt_irq_b	L	Level
207	(Reserved)	-	-
208	smi_larb0_irq_b	L	Level
209	smi_larb1_irq_b	L	Level
210	smi_larb2_irq_b	L	Level
211	vdec_irq_b	L	Level
212	venc_irq_b	L	Level
213	jpgenc_irq_b	L	Level
214	seninf_irq_b	L	Level
215	cam0_irq_b	L	Level
216	cam1_irq_b	L	Level
217	cam2_irq_b	L	Level
218	disp_mutex_irq_b	L	Level
219	mdp_rdma_irq_b	L	Level
220	mdp_rsz0_irq_b	L	Level
221	mdp_rsz1_irq_b	L	Level
222	mdp_tdshp_irq_b	L	Level
223	mdp_wdma_irq_b	L	Level
224	mdp_wrot_irq_b	L	Level
225	disp_ovl0_irq_b	L	Level
226	disp_ovl1_irq_b	L	Level
227	disp_rdma0_irq_b	L	Level
228	disp_rdma1_irq_b	L	Level
229	disp_wdma0_irq_b	L	Level
230	disp_color_irq_b	L	Level
231	disp_ccorr_irq_b	L	Level
232	disp_aal_irq_b	L	Level
233	disp_gamma_irq_b	L	Level

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

GIC ID	Interrupt source/name	Polarity	Trigger type
234	disp_dither_irq_b	L	Level
235	disp_ufoe_irq_b	L	Level
236	dsio_irq_b	L	Level
237	dpio_irq_b	L	Level
238	mmsys_top_irq_b	L	Level
239	(Reserved)	-	-
240	(Reserved)	-	-
241	(Reserved)	-	-
242	mfg_irq_b[0]	L	Level
243	mfg_irq_b[1]	L	Level
244	mfg_irq_b[2]	L	Level
245	(Reserved)	-	-
246	(Reserved)	-	-
247	(Reserved)	-	-
248	(Reserved)	-	-
249	(Reserved)	-	-
250	(Reserved)	-	-
251	(Reserved)	-	-
252	(Reserved)	-	-
253	md_wdt_irq_b	L	Edge
254	(Reserved)	-	-
255	(Reserved)	-	-
256	(Reserved)	-	-
257	conn_wdt_irq_b	L	Edge
258	wf_hif_int_b	L	Level
259	conn2ap_btif_wakeup_out_b	L	Level
260	bt_cvsd_int_b	L	Level
261	(Reserved)	-	-
262	(Reserved)	-	-
263	cirq_event_irq_b	L	Level
264	(Reserved)	-	-
265	(Reserved)	-	-
266	(Reserved)	-	-
267	(Reserved)	-	-
268	(Reserved)	-	-
269	(Reserved)	-	-
270	(Reserved)	-	-
271	(Reserved)	-	-
272	(Reserved)	-	-
273	sec_vio_abort_n	L	Level

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.1.4 Register Definition

This section describes the registers defined in the MCUCFG_REG block in the MCU system.

See chapater 1.1 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.2 On-chip Memory Controller

3.2.1 Introduction

The on-chip memory controller provides the boot ROM and SRAM resources.

3.2.2 Features

The memory controller has the following features

- 64KB on-chip ROM, with memory access protection and detection
- 64 KB on-chip SRAM, with memory access protection and detection
- 128 KB L2 share SRAM
- Chip ID

The following table is the memory map of on-chip ROM and SRAM.

Table 3-2. Memory map of on-chip memory controller

Bank	Start address	End address	Size	Device
0	0x0000_0000	0x0000_FFFF	64KB	ROM
	0x0010_0000	0x0010_FFFF	64KB	SRAM
	0x0020_0000	0x0021_FFFF	128KB	L2 Share SRAM

3.2.3 Block Diagram

The on-chip memory controller consists of a SRAM controller, a ROM controller, an AXI-FPC bus bridge, a bus interface unit, setting register and chip ID unit (see Figure 3-1). Detailed functionality is described in the following sections.

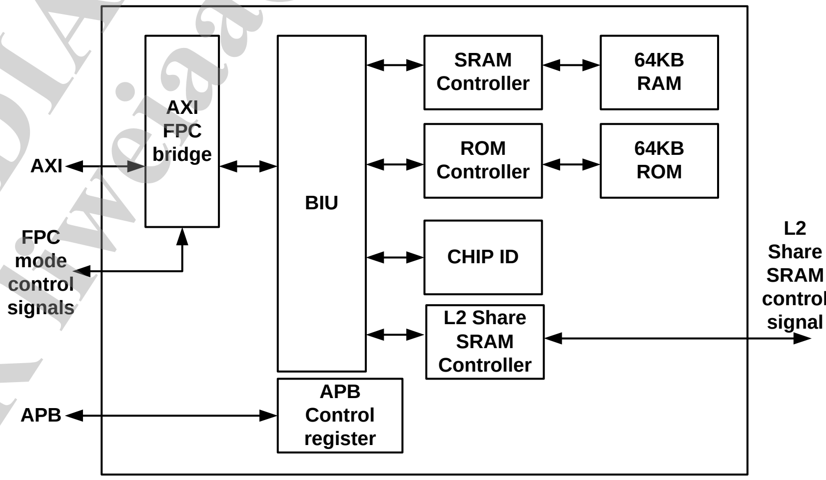


Figure 3-1. Block diagram of on-chip memory controller

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.2.3.1 BOOT ROM Power Down Mode

Boot rom power down mode is used in the following scenarios:

1. After system boot, boot ROM will be powered down and prevented from any probe of ROM content
2. In MCDI (multi-core-deep-idle), it is the bootstrap for suspend/resume CPU.

The power down mode can be entered by setting *SRAMROM_SEC_CTRL.sramrom_sw_rom_pd* = 1. The bus interface unit will return a far jump instruction when receiving the read transactions. The jump address can be configurable by *SRAMROM_BOOT_ADDR* register.

3.2.3.2 BOOT ROM FPC Mode

Boot ROM FPC mode is mainly used in Function Pattern mode. When the chip is trapped into FPC mode, the AXI-FPC bridge will block all the transactions to ROM address by returning a far jump instruction, with jump address specified in SRAMROM_FPC_BOOT_ADDR. The default value of SRAMROM_FPC_BOOT_ADDR is 0. The AXI-FPC bridge will automatically unblock the transaction when the FPC program is downloaded to SRAM memory address space.

3.2.3.3 On-Chip SRAM Security Protection

The on-chip SRAM can be partitioned into 2 regions with different security protection configurations. The bus interface unit performs permission check based on the settings, records the first violated address in the *SEC_VIO_ADDR* register and issues interrupts to the host processor. The violation interrupt can be cleared by a write to *SEC_VIO_ACK*.

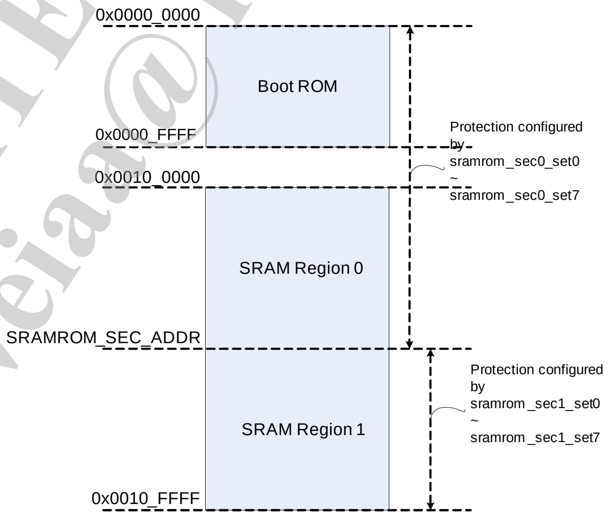


Figure 3-2. Security memory protection scheme

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

3.2.4 Register Definition

See chapater 1.2 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.3 External Interrupt Controller

3.3.1 Introduction

The external interrupt controller (EINTC) processes all off-chip interrupt sources and forwards interrupt request signals to AP MCU.

3.3.2 Features

EINTC supports up to 213 external interrupt signals and performs the following processes to the interrupt signals coming from external sources:

- Polarity inversion
- Edge/level trigger selection
- De-bounce with a configurable 32kHz clock (optional)

According to the register configuration, the external interrupt source will be forwarded to the Cortex-A7 built-in interrupt controller with different IRQ signals, eint_irq or eint_direct_irq. EINTC generates wakeup events to AP MCU.

3.3.3 Block Diagram

Figure 3-3 is the block diagram of the external interrupt controller in MT6737. Every functional block is controlled by the corresponding control registers defined in next section.

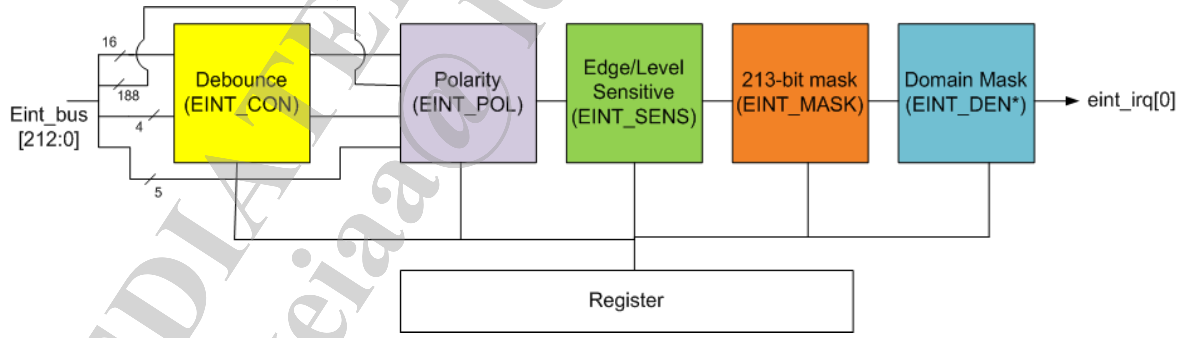


Figure 3-3. Block diagram of external interrupt controller

Normally the external interrupt source goes through the de-bounce unit which is driven by 32kHz clock and triggers the corresponding CPU with eint_irq. Therefore, the minimum latency from eint_bus to eint_irq is 30.52µs.

The following tables list the signal connections to the interrupt controller of CPU.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 3-3. External interrupt request signal connection

IRQ name	AP MCU INTC
eint_irq[0]	IRQ[185]
eint_event_b	IRQ[186]
deint_irq[0]	IRQ[187]
deint_irq[1]	IRQ[188]
deint_irq[2]	IRQ[189]
deint_irq[3]	IRQ[190]

Table 3-4. Definitions of domains

Domain number	Target CPU/DSP
0	Application CPU

Table 3-5. EINT table

EINT Name	EINT number	Support HW debounce
GPIO[197:0]	197~0 (137,143 cannot use)	Only 15~0 support debounce.
6'd0 (unused)	203~198	N/A
USB_iddig	204	Yes
USB_vbusvalid	205	Yes
PMIC[1:0]	207~206	Yes
5'd0 (unused)	212~208	N/A

3.3.4 Register Definition

See chapater 1.3 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

3.3.5 Programming Guide

3.3.5.1 Register Bit Set/Clear

For efficient bit set up/clear operation, the following registers have specific bit set/clear registers:

- EINT_MASK
- EINT_SOFT
- EINT_DBNC
- EINT_POL

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Write 1 to the specified bit of the set/clear register to set up or clear the corresponding bit in the status register.

3.3.5.2 Domain Control

For instance, if you would like int_bus[3] to trigger eint_irq[0], bit 3 in the EINT_D0EN register should be set.

3.3.5.3 EINT De-bounce Control Sequence

1. Set up EINT_CON (PRESCALER, POL, CNT) and enable de-bounce (EN).
2. Wait for 3*32K (~100us).
3. Write RSTDBC (self-clear).
4. Wait for 3*32K (~100us).
5. Write EINT_INTACK to ack/clear all statuses.
6. Unmask EINT_MASK.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.4 System Interrupt Controller

3.4.1 Introduction

For processors which have embedded interrupt controllers (GIC), the part of the MCUSYS will need to keep feeding clock and power to make interrupt functional. However, due to power/leakage overhead introduced by higher clock ratio and deep submicron processes, reserving an always on (or frequently turned on) domain in MCUSYS has became power ineffective. The system interrupt controller (SYS_CIRQ) is a low power interrupt controller designed to work outside MCUSYS as a second level interrupt controller. With SYS_CIRQ, the MCUSYS can be completely turned off to improve system power consumption without losing interrupts.

3.4.2 Features

SYS_CIRQ supports up to 159 interrupts which can configure following attributes individually.

- Polarity inversion
- Edge/level trigger selection

The 159 interrupts will feed through SYS_CIRQ and connect to GIC in MCUSYS. When SYS_CIRQ is enabled, it will record the edge-sensitive interrupts and generate a pulse signal to CPU GIC when the flush command is executed.

3.4.3 Block Diagram

Figure 3-4 is the system level block diagram of the system interrupt controller.

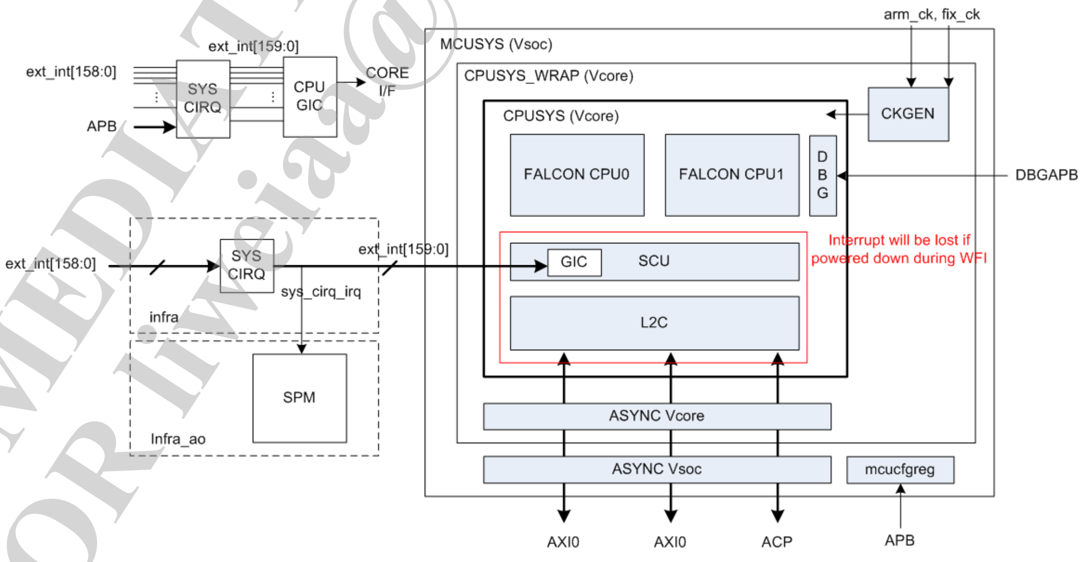


Figure 3-4. System level block diagram of system interrupt controller

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

The SYS_CIRQ controller is integrated in between MCUSYS and other interrupt sources as the second level interrupt controller. All interrupts are fed through SYS_CIRQ controller then bypassed to MCUSYS. In normal mode (where MCUSYS GIC is active), SYS_CIRQ is disabled and interrupts will be directly issued to MCUSYS. When MCUSYS enters the sleep mode, where GIC is power downed, the SYS_CIRQ controller will be enabled and monitor all edge-trigger interrupts (only edge-triggered interrupt will be lost in this scenario). When an edge-trigger interrupt is triggered, it will be recorded in SYS_CIRQ_STA register and can be restored to GIC by SW context restore or the SYS_CIRQ flush function.

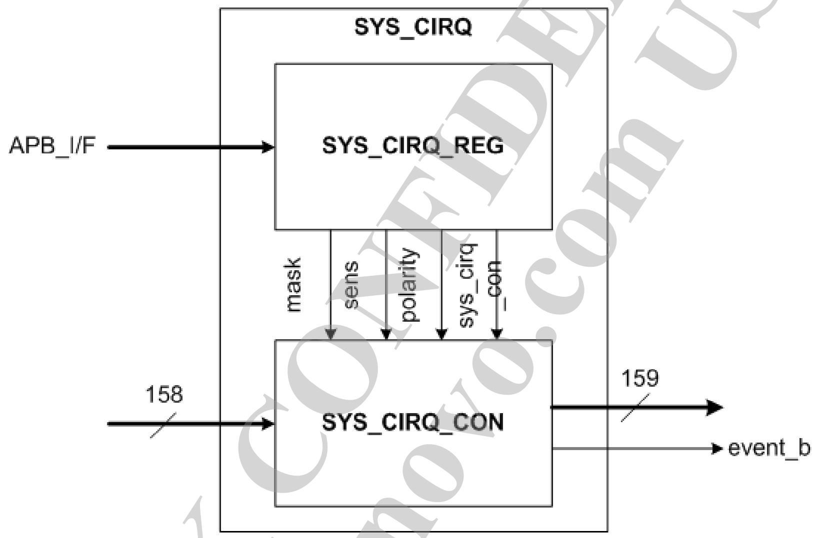


Figure 3-5. Block diagram of system interrupt controller

Figure 3-5 is the architecture of SYS_CIRQ. SYS_CIRQ_REG stores the mask/sensitivity/polarity attributes of each interrupt signal, and SYS_CIRQ_CON is used to mask and detect edge-triggered interrupts.

3.4.4 Register Definition

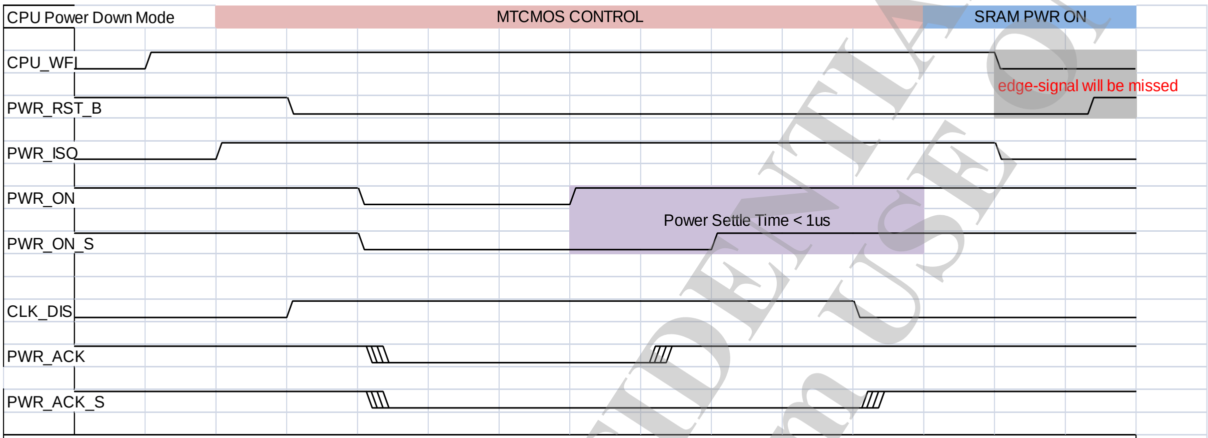
See chapater 1.4 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.4.5 Programming Guide

3.4.5.1 MCUSYS MTCMOS Sequence

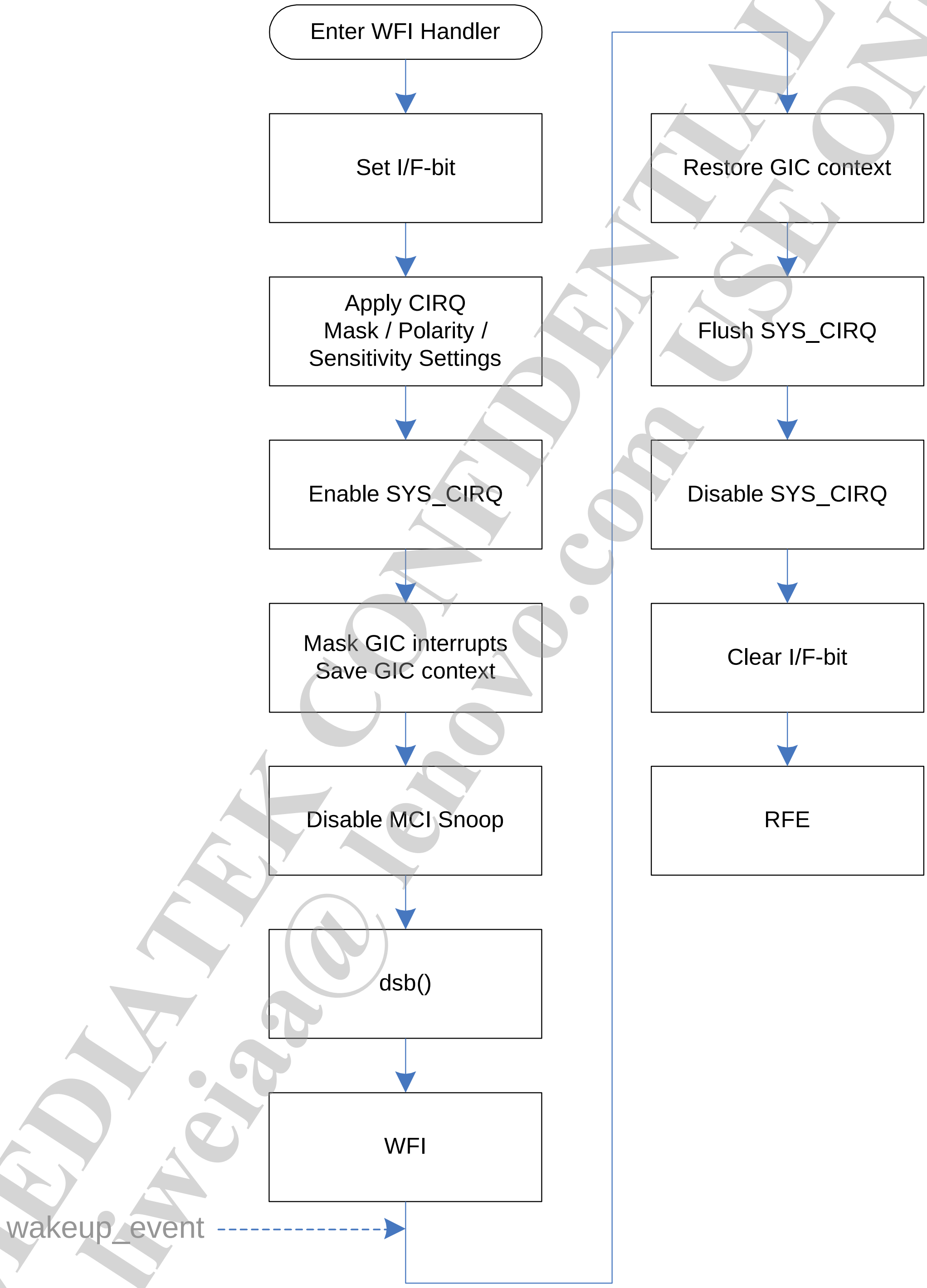


Note:
1. MEM_CKISO should connect to PISO cell to isolate the CLOCK and CHIP SEL input ports of SRAM to LOW
2. All the MEM_PDN and MEM_SLEEP_B signals come from the SPM in always power on domain.
3. MEM_SLEEP_B should always keep HIGH when SRAM power down
4. All the signals are controled by CPU(Software) or SPM

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.4.5.2 SW Flow



MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.5 Infrastructure System Configuration Module

3.5.1 Introduction

The infrastructure system configuration module (INFRACFG) provides reset, clock and miscellaneous control signals in the infrastructure system.

3.5.2 Features

INFRACFG provides the following control signals to the functional blocks inside the infrastructure system:

- Software reset signals
- Clock gating control signals
- Dynamic clock management control signals
- Top AXI bus fabric control signals
- Dynamic clock management function

3.5.3 DCM in Details

The dynamic clock management function is used to slow down the clock frequency for power saving when the system is in idle state automatically.

Figure 3-6 gives a sample clock waveform when DCM is activated. In this example, the clock frequency in DCM mode is set to quarter of the original clock. The ratio of clock frequency slow-down is controlled by the INFRA_DCMFSEL register.

After the bus idle signal is low, it will take several cycles of latency to make the slow-down clock return to the normal frequency. The cycle number varies with the runtime status of the clock gating logic and will somehow cause minor performance impact. In order to minimize the impact when the system is in heavy load status, the INFRA_DCMDBC register controls the cycle count once the bus idle signal is asserted. Setting the de-bounce cycle to be longer and enabling the function will reduce the probability of the system entering the DCM mode.

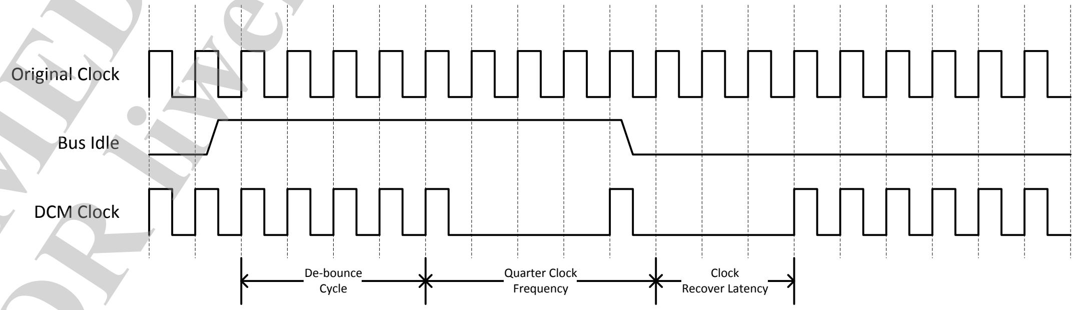


Figure 3-6. DCM in action

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.5.4 AXI Fabric Control

The AXI fabric control registers help prevent the system bus from hanging up caused by improper access while some parts of the system are in the power-down state. See the figure below for the location of SI node 0 to SI node 4 and the sleep protector and find the corresponding control registers in section 3.5.5.

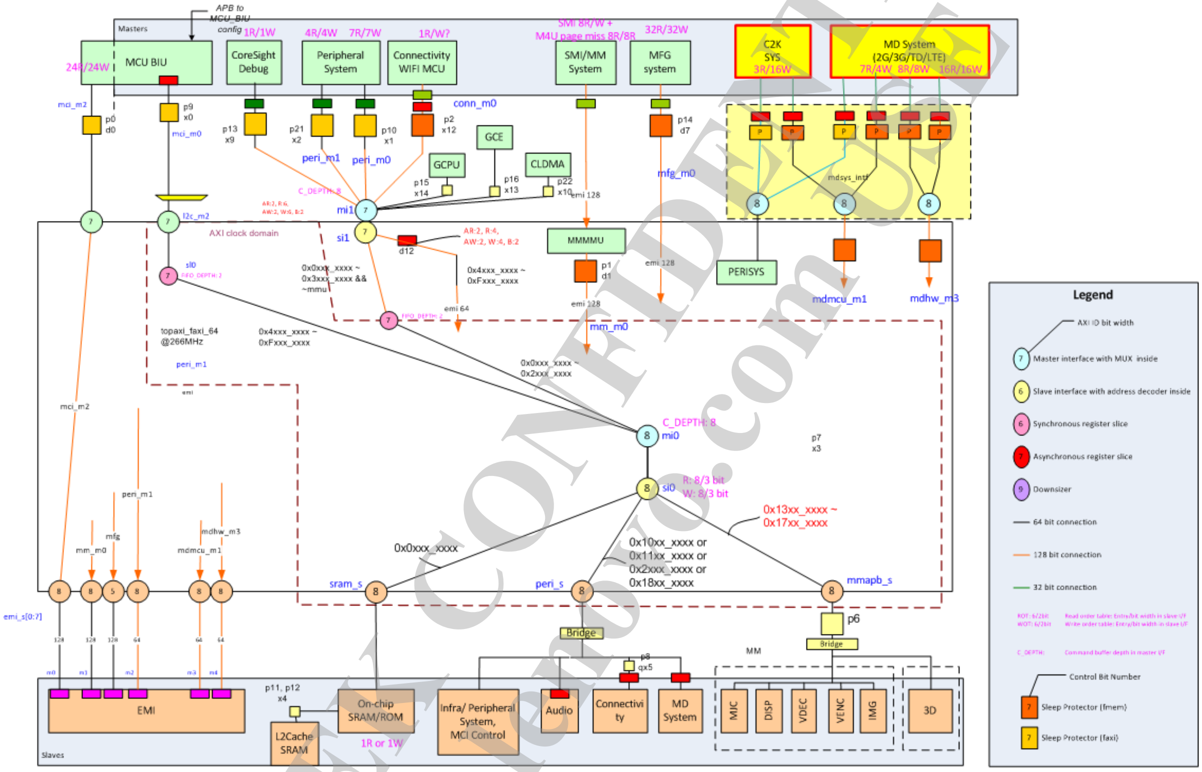


Figure 3-7. Top AXI fabric and control blocks

3.5.5 Register Definition

See chapater 1.5 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.6 External Memory Interface

3.6.1 Introduction

The EMI controller schedules requests from the masters and issues commands to DRAMC in an efficiency way. The block conducts flow control for DRAMC and masters to avoid DRAM stall or data overflow or underflow. It also minimizes the latency of processor path to enhance the performance and tries to increase the DRAM efficiency. The block also informs clock control to gate the clock when it does not find any transaction right now. This block is designed to supply 320MHz bus clock frequency and can be scaled down to 234MHz.

3.6.2 Features

The EMI controller receives AXI master commands and issues them to the DRAM controller. It supports all AXI transaction type commands except for the fixed and cache commands. There are plenty of schedule options to schedule the command, which are:

- Starvation control
- Bandwidth limiter
- High priority
- Page hit control
- Read/write turn around prevent control

3.6.3 Block Diagram

In MT6737, the DRAM controller connects three systems via six AXI ports and supports connecting two rank DRAM devices at the same time. For cortex APMCU system, we provide a 128-bit AXI port for the connection. For the multimedia system, we provide a 128-bit AXI port for the connection. Besides, we provide three 64-bit AXI ports for connecting to modem MCU, modem 2G/3G/4G HW and peripheral system. In the DRAM controller, the APB interface is for programming registers to initialize DRAM or other parameter settings.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

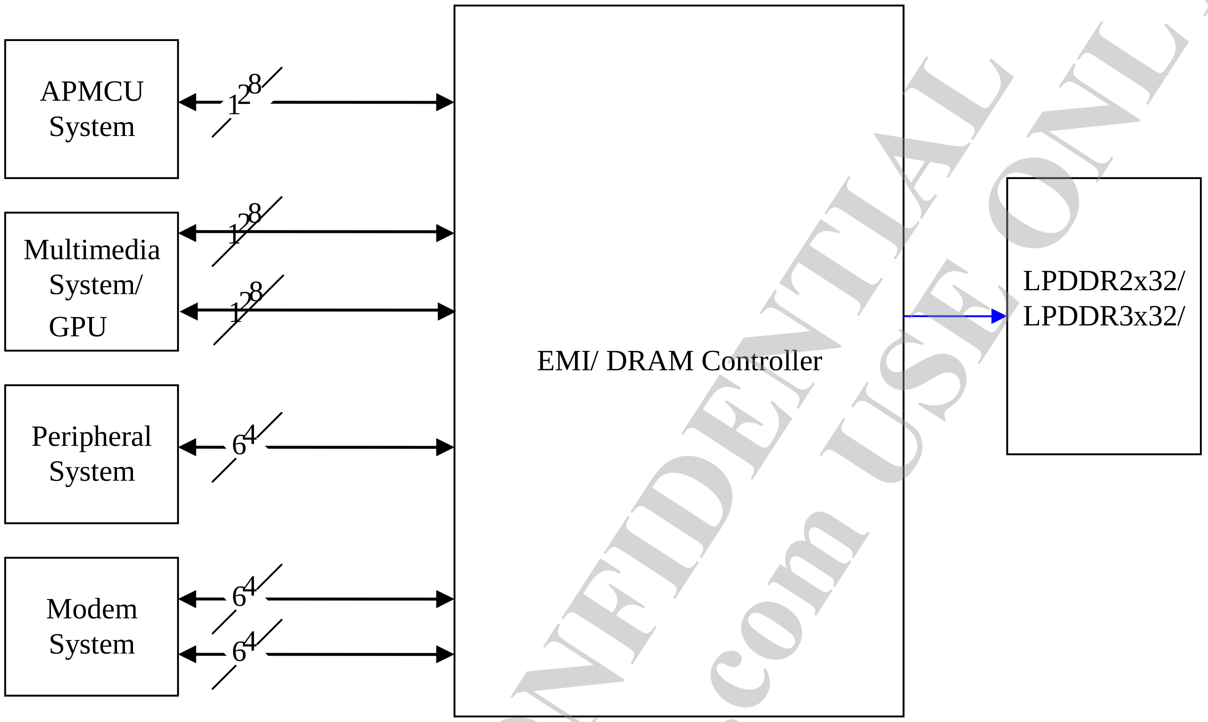


Figure 3-8. EMI/DRAM controller top connection

3.6.4 Register Definition

See chapater 1.6 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

3.6.5 Programming Guide

To start the EMI function, program the settings following the steps below:

1. Program to supporting one channel DRAM.
2. Program DRAM address mapping type, e.g. column bit number, row bit number and bank bit number. Set the address map to "row, ban, chn, col" or "ban[2], row, ban[1:0], chn, col" or "row, ban, col".
3. Set the DRAM bit number to 16 bits or 32 bits data bus.
4. Program the latency for each AXI interface for you to set the request to high priority when the age counter expires. (In the beginning, we treat all requests from one AXI port as the same ID.)
5. Allocate the bandwidth requirement for each AXI port and set up the bandwidth limiter value. Guarantee the total bandwidth that you do not set it to exceeding 100%.
6. Set the bandwidth limiter for each AXI ports to soft limit or hard limit.
7. Program the security region addresses and numbers.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenove.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.7 DRAM Controller

3.7.1 Overview

DRAM controller supports the following DRAM bus configuration:
1. LPDDR2 32-bit @ 533MHz (1,066M bps/per bit channel)
2. LPDDR3 32-bit @ 640MHz (1,280M bps/per bit channel)

See the table below for the DRAM bus signals:

Table 3-6. DRAM bus signal list (refer to DRAMC side)

Signal name	Type	Description
CK0/CK1	Input	DRAM clock signal
CK0#/CK1#	Input	DRAM clock invert signal
MA[9:0]	Input	Address for all memories/CA bus for LPDDR2/3
CKE	Input	Clock enable signal for DRAM
CS# [1:0]	Input	RANK1~RANK0 selection signal
DQ[31:0]	I/O	Data bus for LPDDR2/LPDDR3
DQM[1:0]	Input	Data mask
DQS[3:0]	I/O	Data strobe
DQS#[3:0]	I/O	Differential data strobe in LPDDR2/3
REXTDN	I/O	Output driving calibration

See below for the DRAM bus command truth table:

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 3-7. DRAM bus command truth table (LPDDR2/3)

SDRAM Command	NVM Command	SDR Command Pins: CKE CK_t(n-1)	SDR Command Pins: CKE CK_t(n)	SDR Command Pins: CS_N	DDR CA pins (10): CA0	CA1	CA2	CA3	CA4	CA5	CA6	CA7	CA8	CA9	CK_t EDGE
MRW	MRW	H	H	L	L	L	L	L	MA0	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MA5	↑
				X	MA6	MA7	OP0	OP1	OP2	OP3	OP4	OP5	OP6	OP7	↓
MRR	MRR	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	MA0	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MA5	↑
				X	MA6	MA7	X								↓
Refresh (per bank)[11]	-	H	H	L	L	L	H	L	X						↑
				X	X										↓
Refresh (all bank)	-	H	H	L	L	L	H	H	X						↑
				X	X										↓
Enter Self Refresh	Enter Power Down	H	L	L	L	L	H	X							↑
		X		X	X										↓
Activate (bank)	Activate (row buffer)	H	H	L	L	H	R8/a15	R9/a16	R10/a17	R11/a18	R12/a19	BA0	BA1	BA2	↑
				X	R0/a5	R1/a6	R2/a7	R3/a8	R4/a9	R5/a10	R6/a11	R7/a12	R13/a13	R14/a14	↓
Write (bank)	Write (RDB)	H	H	L	H	L	L	RFU	RFU	C1	C2	BA0	BA1	BA2	↑
				X	AP[3,4]	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9	C10	C11	↓
Read (bank)	Read (RDB)	H	H	L	H	L	H	RFU	RFU	C1	C2	BA0	BA1	BA2	↑
				X	AP[3,4]	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9	C10	C11	↓
Precharge (pre bank, all bank)	Preactive (RAB)	H	H	L	H	H	L	H	AB/a30	X/a31	X/a32	BA0	BA1	BA2	↑
				X	X/a20	X/a21	X/a22	X/a23	X/a24	X/a25	X/a26	X/a27	X/a28	X/a29	↓
BST	BST	H	H	L	H	H	L	L	X						↑
				X	X										↓
Enter Deep Power Down	Enter Power Down	H	L	L	H	H	L	X							↑
		X		X	X										↓
NOP	NOP	H	H	L	H	H	H	X							↑
				X	X										↓
Maintain PD, SREF, DPD (NOP)	Maintain Power Down (NOP)	L	L	L	H	H	H	X							↑
				X	X										↓
NOP	NOP	H	H	H	X										↑
				X	X										↓
Maintain PD, SREF, DPD (NOP)	Maintain Power Down (NOP)	L	L	H	X										↑
				X	X										↓
Enter Power Down	Enter Power Down	H	L	H	X										↑
		X		X	X										↓
Exit PD, SREF, DPD	Exit Power Down	L	H	H	X										↑
		X		X	X										↓

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

These tables are applied when CKE is asserted at the clock cycle before CS# is asserted. Read and write accesses to the DDR SDRAM are burst oriented. The accesses start at a selected location and continue for a programmed number of locations in a programmed sequence. The accesses begin with the registration of an ACTIVE command, followed by a READ or WRITE command. The address bits registered coincident with the ACTIVE command are used to select the bank and row to be accessed. The address bits registered coincident with the READ or WRITE command are used to select the bank and the starting column location for the burst access.

As with standard SDRAMs, the pipelined, multi-bank architecture of DDR SDRAMs allows for concurrent operation, thereby providing high effective bandwidth by hiding row precharge and activation time.

The DDR SDRAM operates from a differential clock (CK and CK#). Commands (address and control signals) are registered at every positive and negative edges of CK for LPDDR2/3. The input data are registered on both edges of DQS, and the output data are referenced to both edges of DQS, as well as to both edges of CK. DQS is center-aligned with data for WRITEs. Without DLL inside mobile DRAM's (LPDDR2/3), DQS is not edge-aligned with data for READs.

The commands for LPDDR2/3 SDRAM are encoded in MA0 ~ MA9 and transfer at double rate of clock frequency such as DQ.

Other key points of MT6737 DRAM controller:

- Supports column address bit number from 8 to 11
- Supports DRAM burst length 4 and 8
- Supports maximum LPDDR2/3 8G-bit device

3.7.2 Features

- 128-bit data bus interface with BE[15:0] for write data mask
- LEN has 4-bit, 0 ~ 15 DLE's/WDLE's
- Supports END_SIZE for optimize utilization rate
- Supports WDLE for split transaction
- Supports HDLE (DLE64) side band signal for early responses
- Supports high-priority side band signal for reducing request latency
- A request cannot cross page boundary
- Supports 2X frequency mode (frequency ratio of DRAMC:DRAM = 1:2) for timing optimization
- Supports dual-scheduler function for 1T command rate under 2X frequency mode for performance optimization
- Supports power-down and self-refresh for power saving
- Supports clock stop for power saving
- Supports input DQS/DQ timing calibration for PVT variation
- Supports read/write command out of order control

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

 © 2016 MediaTek Inc.
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.7.2.1 Reference

- LPDDR2 spec: http://www.jedec.org/download/search/JESD209-2.pdf

3.7.3 Block Diagram

The major blocks of DRAM controller are command decoder, command pool, bus scheduler, timing controller DDR PHY and response generator.

The requests from Arbiter are pushed to command pool to wait for execution in order. The bus scheduler inspects the precharge/active pool and command FIFO and decides which DRAM bus command, e.g. PRECHARGE, ACTIVE, READ or WRITE, is issued to the DRAM bus. The goals of bus scheduler are to raise the bus utilization rate and lower the response latency. The timing control unit is responsible for the integrity of DRAM bus timing such as pre-charge to active delay (tRP), active to command delay (tRCD) and bus turnaround time. The bus scheduler refers to the information and choose the next DRAM bus command. The DRAM interface unit is responsible for generating DRAM bus commands, transmitting data and DQS to DDR DRAM and receiving data and DQS from DDR DRAM. The response generator produces the response signals for all DRAM agents such as DLE and RDAT.

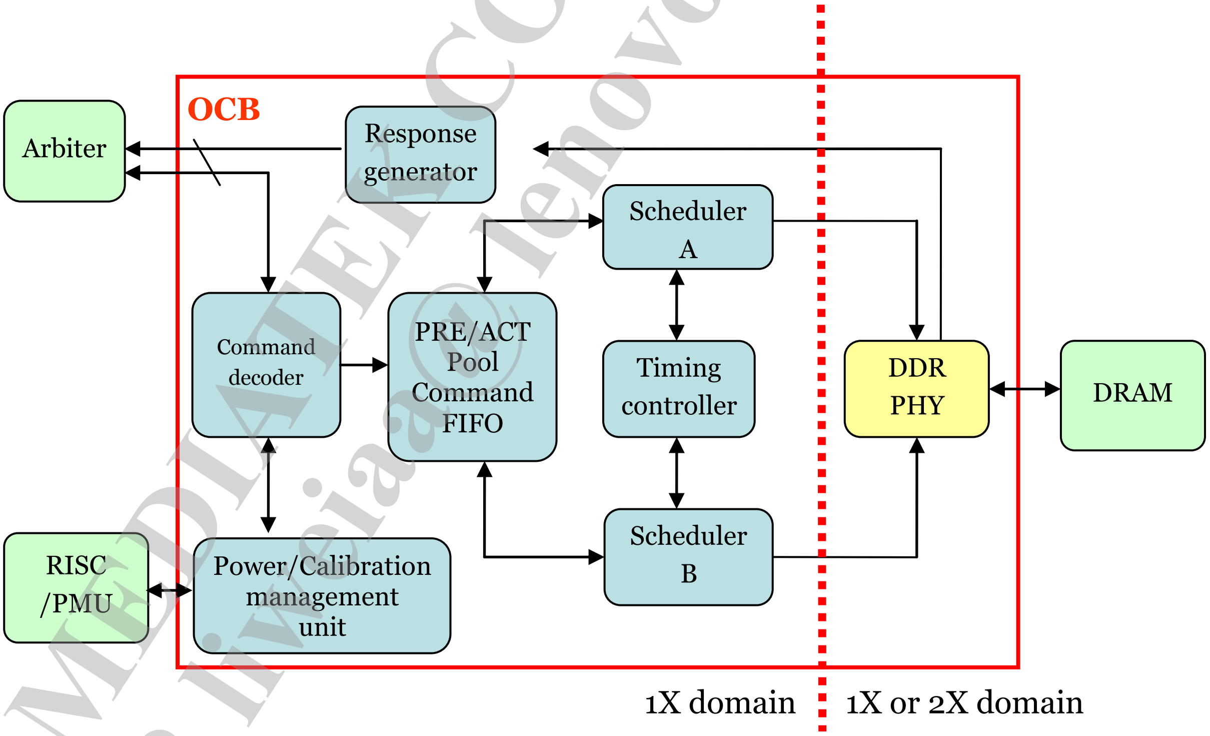


Figure 3-9. Block diagram of DRAM controller

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiad@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.7.4 Register Definition

See chapater 1.7 of *“MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table”*.

3.7.5 Programming Guide

Steps of DRAM initialization

1. Set up DRAM AC timing parameter.
2. Follow DRAM spec to complete DRAM initialization including mode register programming.
3. Enable calibration for DQ/DQS window.
4. Set up refresh rate counter.
5. Normal operation.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

3.8 AP_DMA

3.8.1 Introduction

There is always a DMA in a platform. The purpose of DMA is performing data transfer between different slaves. There are several slaves in a platform, and the major one is external memory, e.g. DRAM. There are also internal SRAM and some slave ports for the peripheral to transfer data. For saving software efforts, DMA delivers a virtual FIFO concept to help the software maintain read and write pointer when the software accesses data from a ring buffer. As the bus goes more and more efficient, the old DMA still utilizes the AHB bus protocol and may decrease its performance. Another problem is that when the old DMA meets byte alignment addresses or byte alignment sizes, it will need some software efforts to help solve head and tail non word alignment problems or let DMA to simply issues single-1-byte requests to conquer the byte-alignment problem. This will harm the overall system because the single-1-byte transaction is quite inefficient. The DMA efficiency is now improved by increasing its bus efficiency, including data buffering and overcoming byte alignment problems.

3.8.2 Features

APDMA has the following DMA engines.

- HIF DMA engine*1
- IRDA DMA engine*1
- I2C DMA engine*4
- UART0 TX DMA engine*1
- UART0 RX DMA engine*1
- UART1 TX DMA engine*1
- UART1 RX DMA engine*1
- UART2 TX DMA engine*1
- UART2 RX DMA engine*1
- UART3 TX DMA engine*1
- UART3 RX DMA engine*1
- UART4 TX DMA engine*1
- UART4 RX DMA engine*1
- UART4 TX DMA engine*1
- UART4 RX DMA engine*1

The DMA engines and corresponding peripheral devices are listed below.

Table 3-8. Relationship between engines and devices

Engine	Peripheral device
HIF_0	Connsys (sdctl)
IRDA_0	IRDA
I2C_0 ~ I2C_3	I2C_0 ~ I2C_3

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Engine	Peripheral device
UART0 ~ UART3	UART0 ~ UART3
UART4	BTIF

3.8.3 Block Diagram

Figure 3-10 is the basic block diagram of AP_DMA. There are total 15 channels in DMA. The external AXI interface is connected to the peripheral AXI bus fabric to provide external memory access ability. The internal AXI interface is also connected to the peripheral AXI bus fabric and is re-directed to related peripherals, e.g. HIF, I2C and UART. A memory block is used as a buffer which makes the transfer on the AXI bus interface more efficient. An APB interface is used to program registers for both global registers and local registers existing in every individual DMA channel.

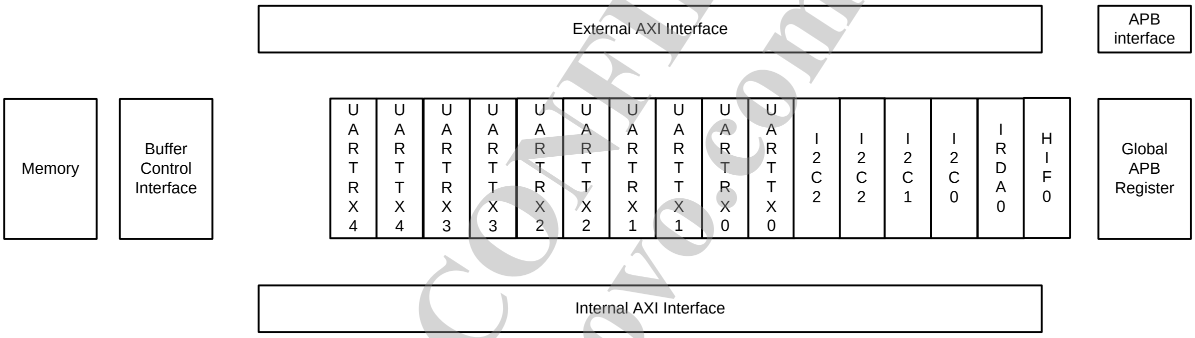


Figure 3-10. APDMA block diagram

3.8.4 Register Definition

3.8.4.1 Global Control Registers

There are several registers put together for the software to monitor. However, if the software is to change them, they can only be written through individual DMA registers. The global register is only for the software to watch all DMA running statuses and interrupt flags together. Note that the security ability of all global registers belongs to the GSEC_EN bit. When this bit is set to 1, only the security transaction can write the global register (global reset and global slow-down). If a non-security read transaction is issued to read the interrupt flag or running status, only statuses of non-security engines can be reported, and others will always be 0.

See chapater 1.8 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.9 CQDMA

3.9.1 Introduction

There is always a DMA in a platform. The purpose of general DMA is performing data transfer between different slaves and purpose of audio DMA is performing data transfer to audio system from DRAM. There are several slaves in a platform, and the major one is external memory, e.g. DRAM. There are also internal SRAM and some slave ports for the peripheral to transfer data. For saving software efforts, DMA delivers a virtual FIFO concept to help the software maintain read and write pointer when the software accesses data from a ring buffer. As the bus goes more and more efficient, the old DMA still utilizes the AHB bus protocol and may decrease its performance. Another problem is that when the old DMA meets byte alignment addresses or byte alignment sizes, it will need some software efforts to help solve head and tail non word alignment problems or let DMA to simply issues single-1-byte requests to conquer the byte-alignment problem. This will harm the overall system because the single-1-byte transaction is quite inefficient. The DMA efficiency is now improved by increasing its bus efficiency, including data buffering and overcoming byte alignment problems.

3.9.2 Features

CQDMA has the following DMA engines.

- GDMA engine
- Audio DMA engine

3.9.3 Block Diagram

Figure 3-11 is the basic block diagram of CQ_DMA. There is one channel for general DMA and one channel for audio DMA. The external AXI interface is connected to DRAM to provide external memory access ability. A memory block is used as a buffer which makes the transfer on the AXI bus interface more efficient. An APB interface is used to program registers for both global registers and local registers existing in every individual DMA channel.

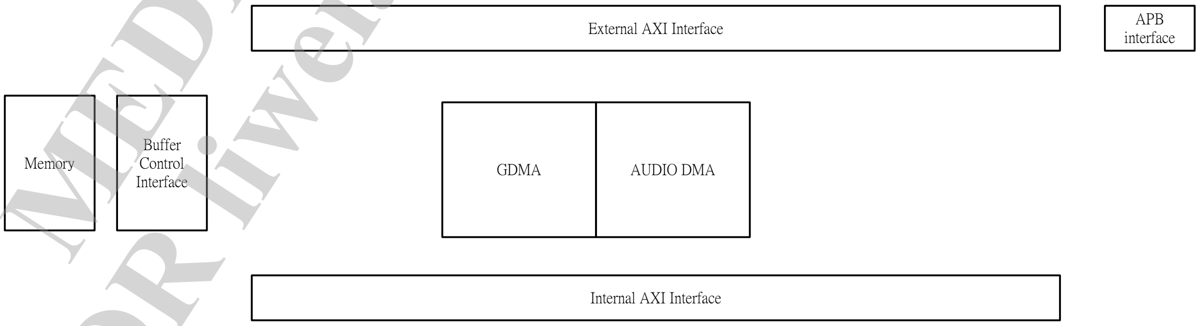


Figure 3-11. CQDMA block diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

3.9.4 Register Definition

See chapater 1.9 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

4 Clock and Power Control

4.1 Top Clock Generator

4.1.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces the top clock generator (TOPCKGEN) and the clock architecture.

4.1.2 Features

TOPCKGEN is responsible for generating the following clock signals:

- Free clock generation for whole chip
- Infrastructure and peripheral system clock, including the top level AXI fabric clock
- Multimedia system clock
- Pad macro clocks to be synchronized with one of the above system

The module TOPCKGEN provides clock source selection. Each clock has several clock source selection and can be turned off as well. When switching certain clock from frequency A to frequency B, make sure frequency A and B are available.

It comprises glitch-free clock MUX and digital clock divider to generate various clock frequencies.

4.1.3 Block Diagram

4.1.3.1 Clock Architecture

There are clock generators not only in the top level hierarchy but also in every partition/system. Figure 4-1 shows the location of the top level clock generator.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

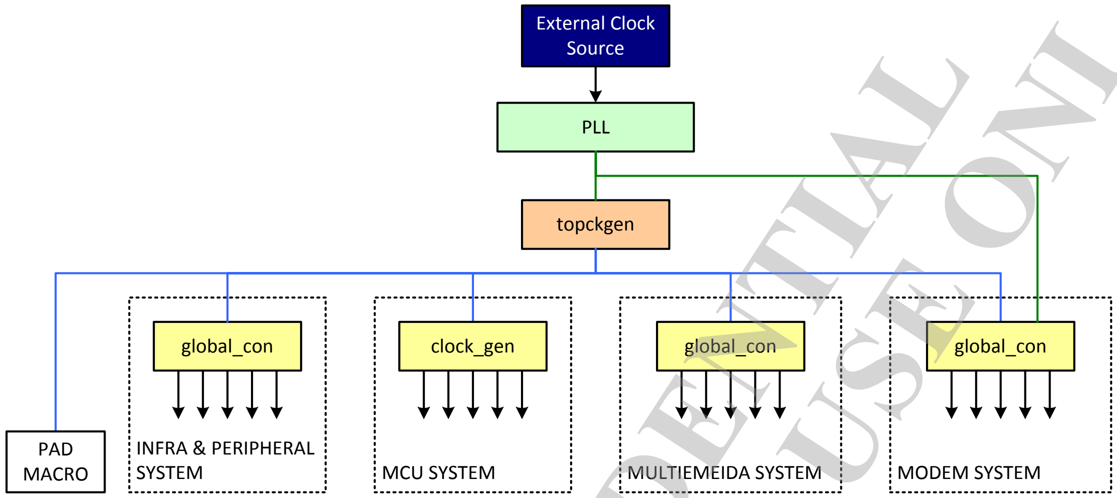


Figure 4-1. Block diagram of clock architecture

4.1.3.2 Clock Multiplixer

Clock selection and generation have similar structure (see Figure 4-2). Several clock sources are provided. Choose one by specified register setting. The turn-off bit is provided as well to stop the clock output.

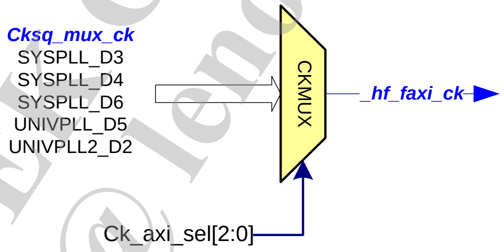


Figure 4-2. Example of clock multiplixer

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

4.1.4 Clock PLL

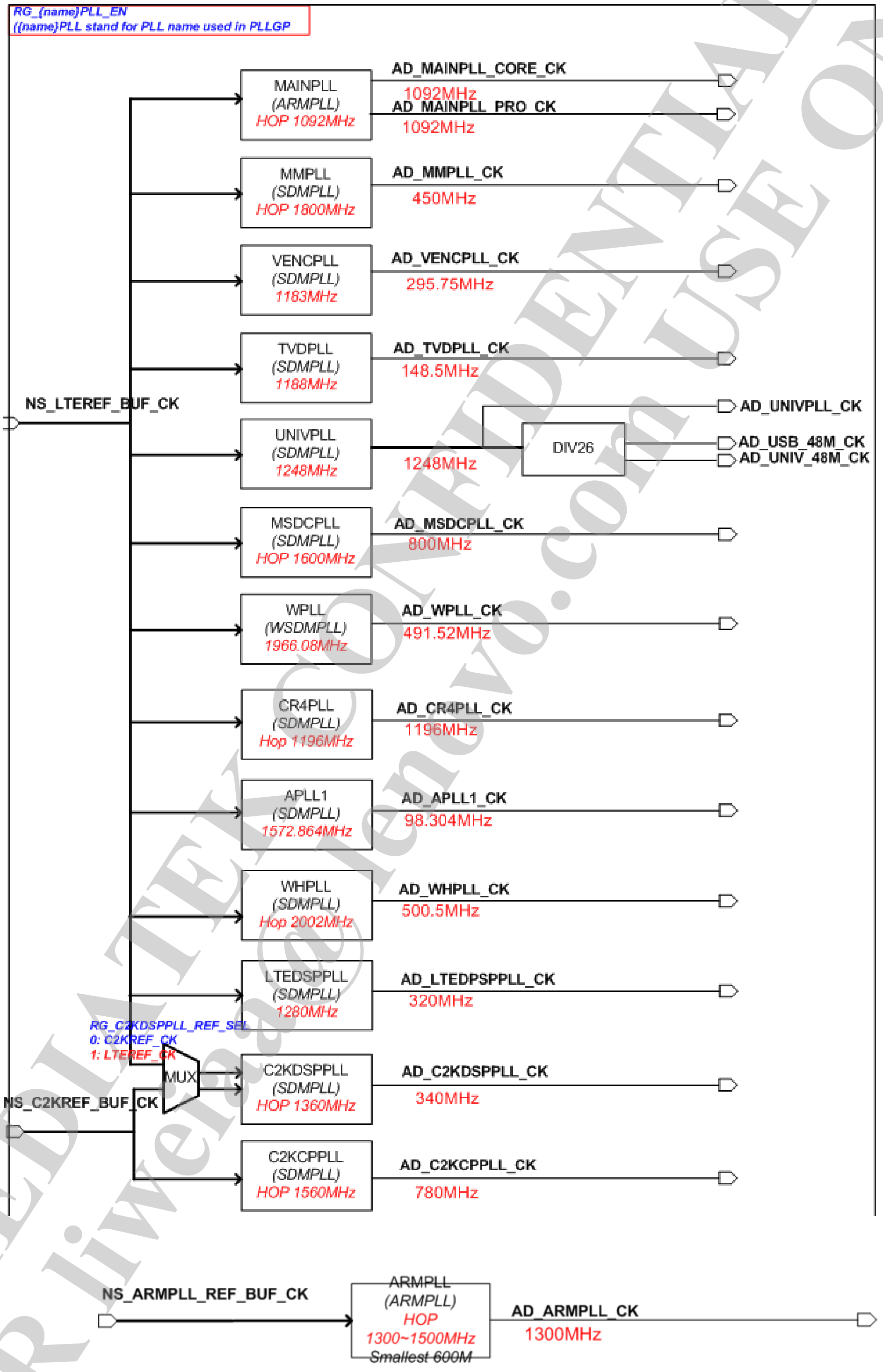


Figure 4-3. PLL block diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

4.1.5 PLL Related Control

The following table lists all PLLs inside the application system.

The enabling of PLL can be switched between software control and hardware control. The hardware control is from SCPSYS.

The hopping and SSC features can be switched between software control and hardware control. The hardware control is from FHCTL.

Table 4-1. PLL related control

PLL	Capability	Control by FHCTL	Control by SPM
ARMPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	Y
MAINPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	Y
UNIVPLL	Fix	N	Y
MSDCPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	N
MMPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	N
TVDPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	N
VENCPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	N
MEMPLL	Hopping, SSC	Y	Y
MIPIPLL	SSC	N	N
USB20_PHYA	Fix	N	N
APLL1	Hopping, SSC	N	N
WPLL	Fix	By MD	By MD
WHPLL	Hopping, SSC	By MD	By MD
CR4PLL	Hopping, SSC	By MD	By MD
MDPLL	Fix	By MD	By MD
C2KCPPLL	Hopping, SSC	By MD	By MD
C2KDSPPLL	Hopping, SSC	By MD	By MD
MDPLL2_SUB1 (ABB)	Fix	By MD	By MD
MDPLL2_SUB2 (ABB)	Fix	By MD	By MD
LTEDSPPLL	Hopping, SSC	By MD	By MD

4.1.6 Clock Gating

The clock gating for module TOPCKGEN is listed in the table below where DCM and turn-off settings are provided.

Table 4-2. Clock gating settings

Register name	Bit	Default	Function name	Description
CLK_MODE	8	1'b0	pdn_md_32k	Turns off 32K clock source to MD
DCM_CFG	[7]	1'b0	dcm_enable	Enables hf_faxi_ck DCM

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Register name	Bit	Default	Function name	Description
CLK_SCP_CFG_0	[0]	1'b0	sc_26ck_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate 26MHz
	[1]	1'b0	sc_mem_ck_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate DDRPHY
	[2]	1'b0	sc_axick_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate hf_faxi_ck
	[4]	1'b0	sc_armck_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate CA7 hf_farm_ck
	[5]	1'b0	sc_md_32k_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate MD 32KHz
	[9]	1'b0	sc_mac_26m_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate MIPI 26MHz
	[10]	1'b0	sc_armca15ck_off_en	Turns on scpsys control path to gate CA15 hf_farm_ck
CLK_SCP_CFG_1	[0]	1'b0	sc_axi_26m_sel_en	Turns on scpsys control path to switch hf_faxi_ck to 26MHz
	[4]	1'b0	sc_axick_dcm_dis_en	Turns on scpsys control path to disable DCM of hf_faxi_ck

4.1.7 Frequency Meter

There are two frequency meters inside TOPCKGEN. One is for PLLs and TEST clock, called abist_fmeter. The other is for clocks generated from TOPCKGEN, called ckgen_fmeter.
Both structures have PAD output that can observe frequency directly instead of reading results from the frequency meter. Abist_fmeter is outputted to CLKM[0] and ckgen_fmeter is outputted to DEBUG_MON[2].

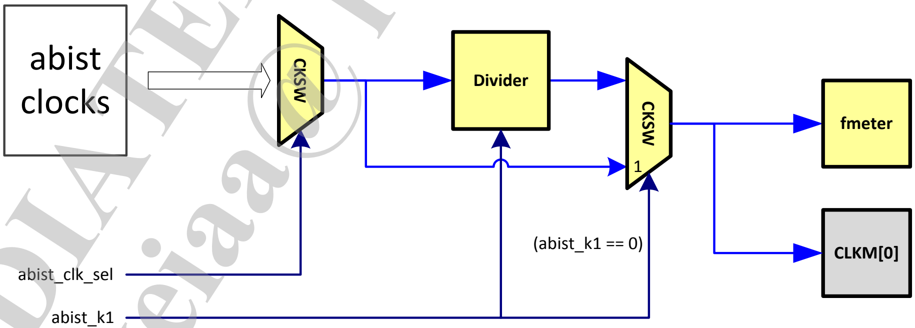


Figure 4-4. ABIST FMETER structure

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

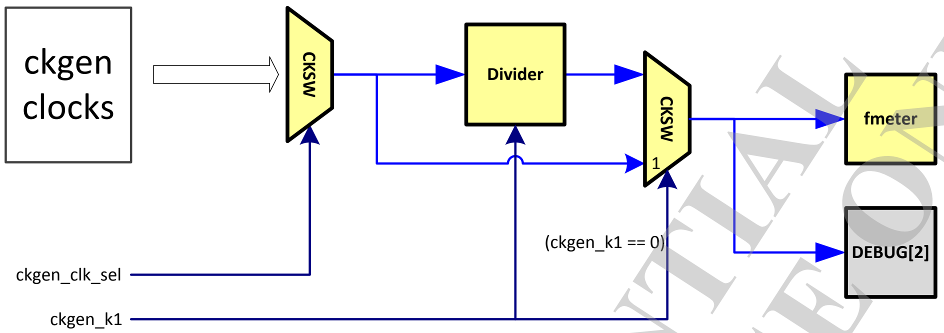


Figure 4-5. CKGEN FMETER structure

4.1.8 Register Definition

See chapater 2.1 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

4.2 Top Reset Generate Unit

4.2.1 Introduction

The top reset generator unit (TOPRGU) generates reset signals and distributes to each system. A watchdog timer is also included in this module.

4.2.2 Features

- Hardware reset signals for the whole chip
- Software controllable reset for each system (except for infrastructure and apmixedsys system)
- Watchdog timer
- Reset output signals for companion chips

4.2.3 Block Diagram

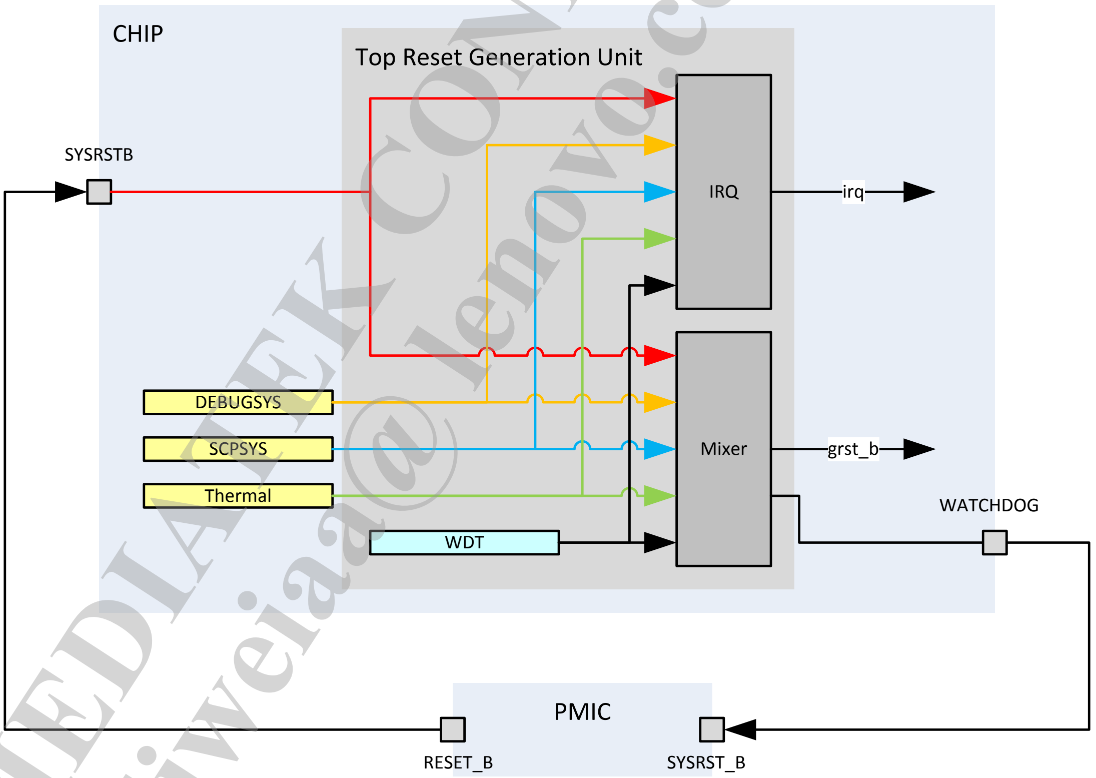


Figure 4-6. Block diagram of top reset generation unit

4.2.4 Register Definition

See chapater 2.2 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

4.2.5 Programming Guide

4.2.5.1 TOPRGU Initial

Enable dual mode reset when TOPRGU is first initialized. Because WDT_MODE will not be reset and the dual mode will be disabled if system reset is triggered through WDT_SWRST, these registers will only be reset by SYSRSTB.

The following registers will not be reset by TOPRGU.

- WDT_MODE
- WDT_STA
- WDT_NONRST_REG
- WDT_NONRST_REG2
- WDT_REQ_MODE
- WDT_REQ_IRQ_EN
- WDT_DEBUG_CTL

4.2.5.2 Watchdog Timer

- Trigger WDT_RESTART right after WDT_LENGTH is updated.
- WDT_SWRST can be triggered without wdt_en set to 1'b1.
- It is recommended to trigger WDT_RESTART before setting wdt_en to 1'b1.

4.2.5.3 IRQ Mode

Dual mode reset is default on. Therefore, all reset requests are default with IRQ mode enabled. This means the interrupt is triggered instead of triggering system reset immediately. If you would like to trigger system reset instead of interrupt, change the corresponding configuration of each reset request.

Each reset request can be configured as reset or IRQ separately.

4.2.5.4 MDSYS and CONNSYS Watchdog Timout

MDSYS and CONNSYS have their own watchdog timer. When their watchdog timers expire, they notify AP through interrupts. AP then asserts software reset to MDSYS or CONNSYS.

- MDSYS
  - Enable bus protection to/from MDSYS.
  - Set md_rst = 1'b1.
  - Wait for 2T 32kHz then set md_rst = 1'b0.
  - Disable bus protection to/from MDSYS.
  - Set up MDSYS boot slave.
  - Inform MDSYS abnormal reset via CCIF after MDSYS is ready.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- CONSYS
  - conn_rst = 1'b1
  - Wait for 2T 32kHz then set conn_rst = 1'b0.

4.2.5.5 Dual Mode Reset

Dual mode reset is system reset after TOPRGU triggers interrupt. The watchdog timer needs to be enabled to complete this function.

In this mode, the watchdog timer will be ***AUTO-RESTART*** after interrupt is triggered. AP needs to clear WDT_STA after receiving interrupt from TOPRGU, or system reset will be triggered after watchdog timer expires.

- Set wdt_en = 1'b1.
- Set dual_mode = 1'b1.
- Set wdt_irq, thermal_irq, scpsys_irq or debug_irq to 1'b1.

4.2.5.6 DDR Protect

DDR protect (rg_ddr_protect_en) is useless when DDR reserved mode is enabled.

4.2.5.7 DDR Reserved Mode Reset

DDR reserved mode keeps data in DDR during system reset. In order to complete this function, DRAMC, DRMC_CONF, DDRPHY_CONF and EMI_CONF (optional) will not be reset.

- Enable DDR reserved mode when initializing TOPRGU.
- Wait for system reset to be triggered.
- [Optional] Check DDR reserved mode status (ddr_reserve_sta).
- After system reset, release DRAMC_CONF protect (set rg_dramc_conf_iso = 1'b0).
- Ensure related clocks of EMI, DRAMC, DDRPHY are ready (including PLL).
- Wait for dramc_sref_sta = 1'b1.
- Release DRAMC protect (set rg_dramc_iso = 1'b0).
- Release DRAMC self-refresh control (set rg_dramc_sref = 1'b0).
- Wait for dramc_sref_sta = 1'b0.

4.2.5.8 History

- EXT RESET is for NAND and PMIC, but there is exception.
  - MT6329 needs to disable WDT_MODE[2].
- WDT_LENGTH needs to be reset, or SYSTEM will enter RESET loop if WDT_LENGTH has been set to very short before reset trigger.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

4.3 PMIC Wrapper

4.3.1 Introduction

The PMIC wrapper is the bridge for communication between AP and PMIC.

4.3.2 Features

- Fast auto SPI format generator for PMIC register read/write
- APB3.0 bus lock scheme when SPI is busy
- Manual SPI format generator
- Supports access to dual PMICs
- Single and dual I/O SPI mode support for PMIC
- Single IO mode support only for Switching Charger
- Separated frequency between controller and SPI

4.3.3 Block Diagram

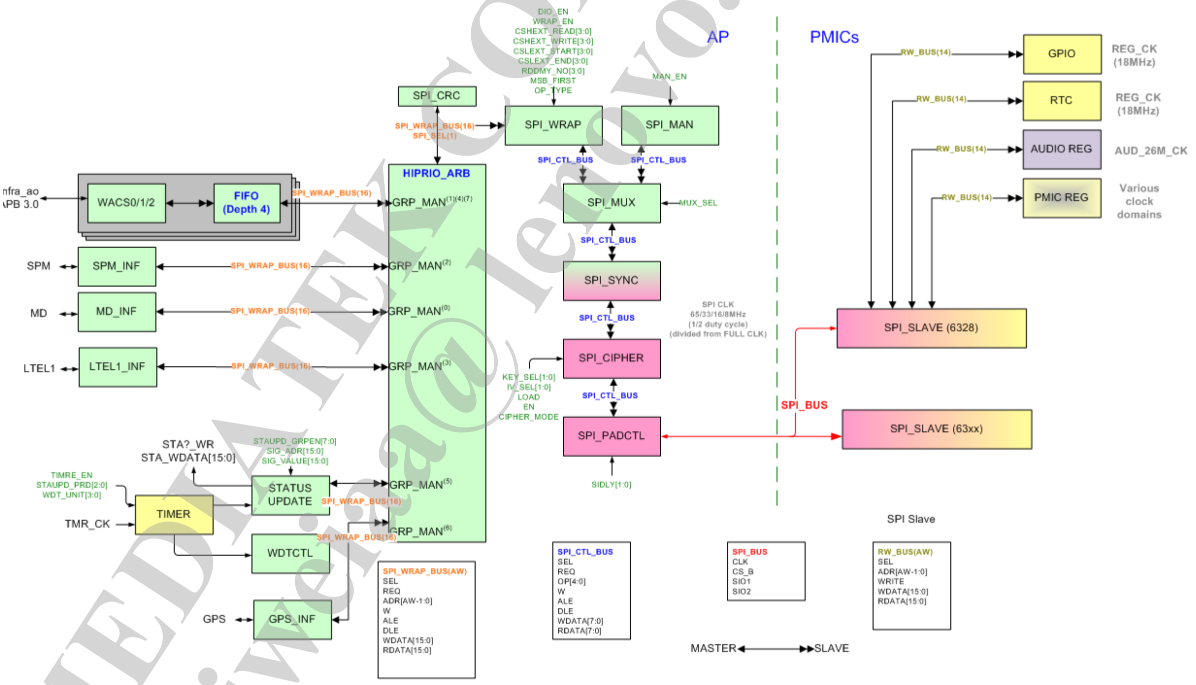


Figure 4-7. PMIC_WRAP architecture

4.3.4 Register Definition

See chapater 2.3 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

4.4 Frequency Hopping Controller

4.4.1 Introduction

The frequency hopping controller helps AP resolve de-sense issues. The RF victims are 2G, 3G, BT, FM, Wi-Fi, etc. The aggressor in AP is the clock generated from PLL in ABB. The harmonic of all clock frequency may de-sense the band of RF system.

4.4.2 Features

The frequency hopping controller receives the command from CPU to trigger the following two mechanisms:

- Spread spectrum clocking
- Frequency hopping

In MT6737, there are 7 hopping PLLs:

NAME	Capability	Range
ARMPLL	hopping, SSC	{-8%,0}
MAINPLL	hopping, SSC	{-8%,0}
MEMPLL	hopping, SSC	{-8%,0}
MMPLL	hopping, SSC	{-8%,0}
VENCPLL	SSC	{-4%,0}
MSDCPLL	hopping, SSC	{-8%,0}
TVDPLL	SSC	{-8%,0}

4.4.3 Block Diagram

Whenever MCUSYS enters sleep mode, SRCLKENA from the sleep controller is de-asserted. The SRCLKENA from MCUSYS controls the power supply for the 13MHz/26MHz TCVCXO via the on-chip PMU. When the signal is de-asserted, LDO for TCVCXO in PMU will be turned off, and 13MHz/26MHz clock will stop.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

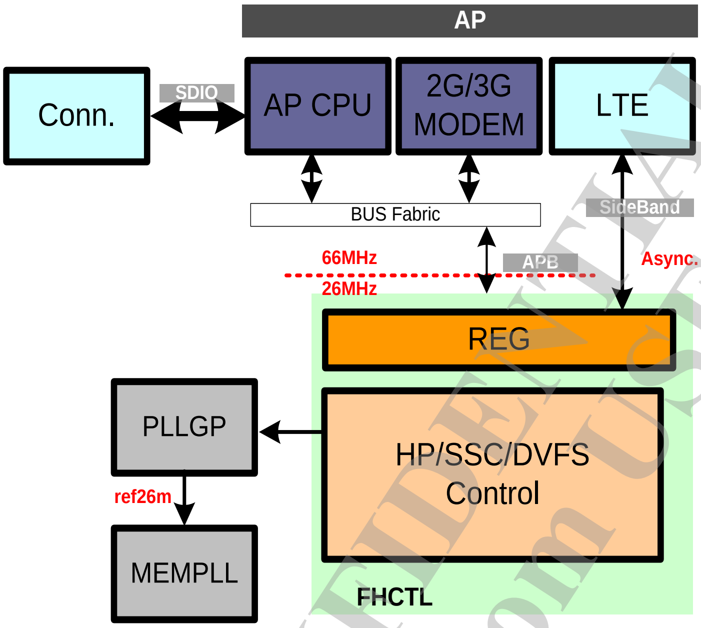


Figure 4-8. Block diagram of frequency hopping controller

4.4.4 Register Definition

See chapater 2.4 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5 Peripherals

5.1 Pericfg Controller

5.1.1 Introduction

The pericfg controller is used to control the reset, clock and bus setting of peripheral subsys. Each module inside the peripheral subsys has its own software reset and clock gated control (power-down control). The hardware DCM (Dynamic Clock Management) of the peripheral subsys is also controlled in the pericfg controller. Beside AP MCU, the modem MCU can also use this pericfg controller to control specific modules clock gated control (power-down control).

5.1.2 Features

- Supports software reset control of each module inside peripheral subsys
- Supports clock gated control of the modules insider peripheral subsys by AP MCU
- Supports clock gated control of the modules insider peripheral subsys by Modem1 MCU
- Supports clock gated control of the modules insider peripheral subsys by Modem2 MCU
- Supports DCM control of peripheral subsys
- Supports bus setting (bandwidth limit/way enable/...) of peripheral subsys

5.1.3 Block Diagram

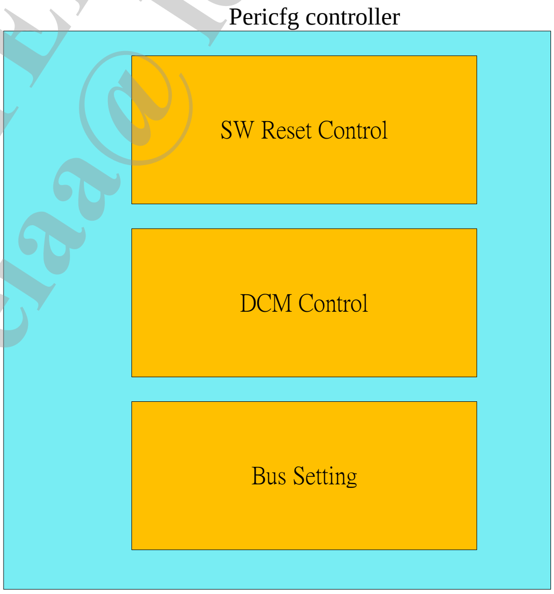


Figure 5-1. Block diagram of pericfg controller

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.1.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.1 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.2 GPIO Control

5.2.1 General Descriptions

There are 198 I/O pins can be programmed as multiple purpose, including GPIO, NAND, SPI, etc. By setting up the GPIO_MODE register, specific IO is selected for specific function.

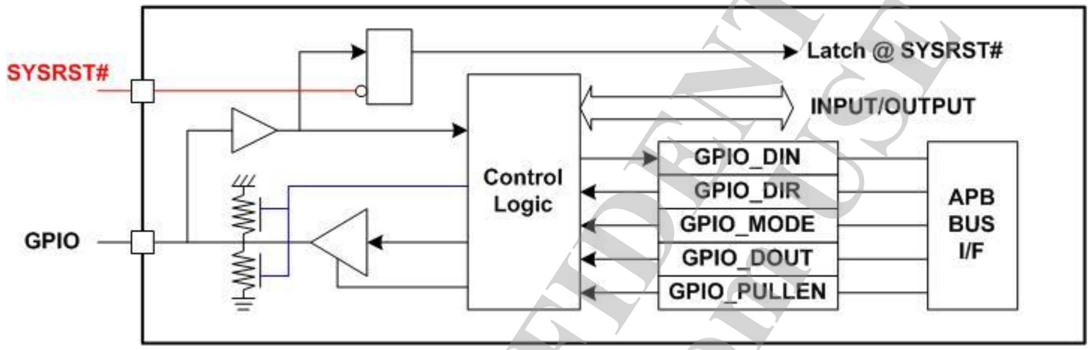


Figure 5-2. GPIO block diagram

All functions should comply with the priority rule. When there are more than one IO set as the same output function, all of the selected IOs are able to output specific signals. When there are more than one IO set as the same input (or bi-directional) function, only the IO with the largest GPIO index works functionally.

When the MIPI function is not used, related IOs can be switched to non-MIPI input-only function, like EINT. To enable the GPI function of MIPI, there are some configurations to be done before the related GPIO_MODE is set.

5.2.2 Register Definition

See chapater 3.2 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.3 Keypad Scanner

5.3.1 General Description

The keypad supports two types of keypads: 8*8 single keys and 3*3 configurable double keys.

The 8*8 keypad can be divided into two parts: 1) The keypad interface including 8 columns and 8 rows (see Figure 5-3 and Figure 5-4). The key detection block provides key pressed, key released and de-bounce mechanisms.

Each time the key is pressed or released, i.e. something different in the 8x8 matrix, the key detection block senses the change and recognizes if a key has been pressed or released. Whenever the key status changes and is stable, a KEYPAD IRQ will be issued. The MCU can then read the key(s) pressed directly in the KP_MEM1, KP_MEM2, KP_MEM3, KP_MEM4 and KP_MEM5 registers. To ensure the key pressed information is not missed, the status register in keypad will not be read-cleared by the APB read command. The status register can only be changed by the key-pressed detection FSM.

This keypad detects one or two keys pressed simultaneously with any combination. Figure 5-7 shows the one key pressed condition. Figure 5-8(a) and Figure 5-8(b) illustrate the cases of two keys pressed. Since the key pressed detection depends on the HIGH or LOW level of the external keypad interface, if the keys are pressed at the same time, and there exists a key that is on the same column and the same row with other keys, the pressed key cannot be correctly decoded. For example, if there are three key pressed: key1 = (x1, y1), key2 = (x2, y2), and key3 = (x1, y2), both key3 and key4 = (x2, y1) will be detected, and therefore they cannot be distinguished correctly. Hence, the keypad detects only one or two keys pressed simultaneously in any combination. More than two keys pressed simultaneously in a specific pattern will retrieve the wrong information.

The 3*3 keypad supports a 3*3*2 = 18 keys matrix. The 18 keys are divided into 9 sub groups, and each group consists of 2 keys and a 20 ohm resistor. Besides the limitation of the 8*8 keypad, 3*3 keypad has another limitation, which is it cannot detect two keys pressed simultaneously when the two keys are in one group, i.e. the 3*3 keypad cannot detect key 0 and key 1 pressed simultaneously or key 14 and key 15 pressed simultaneously.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

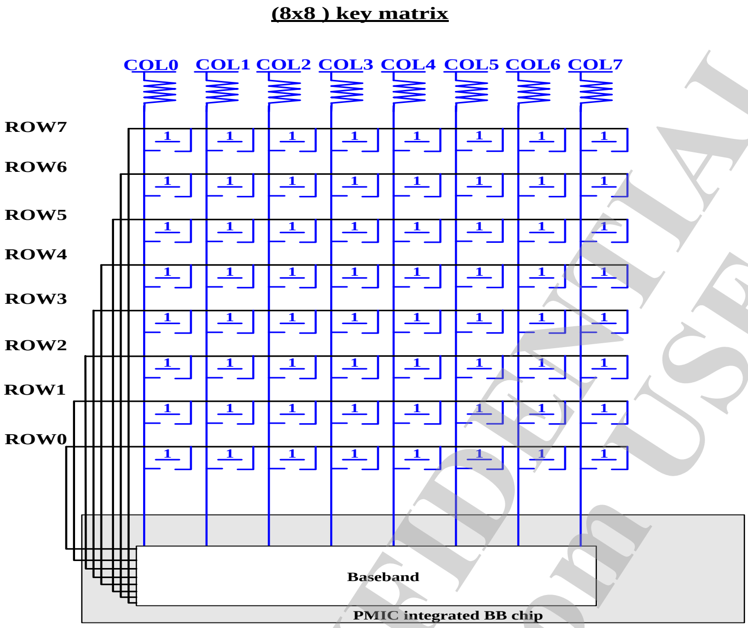


Figure 5-3. 8x8 keypad matrix (64 keys)

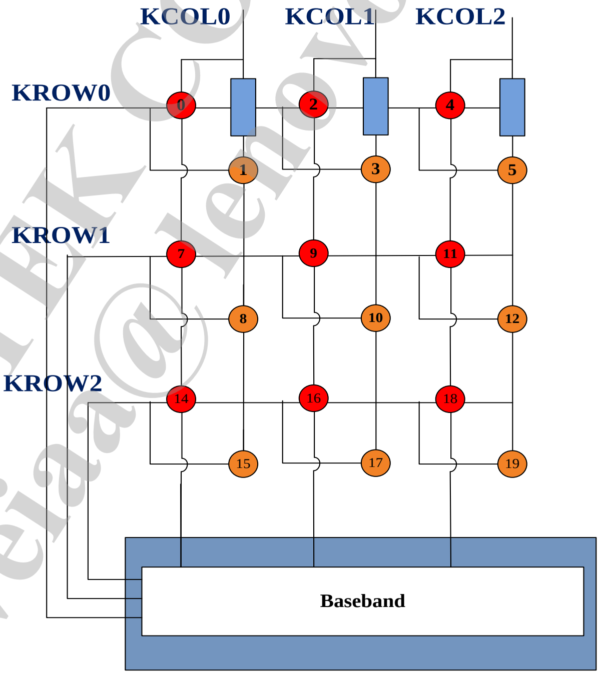


Figure 5-4. 3x3 keypad matrix (18 keys)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.3.2 Waveform

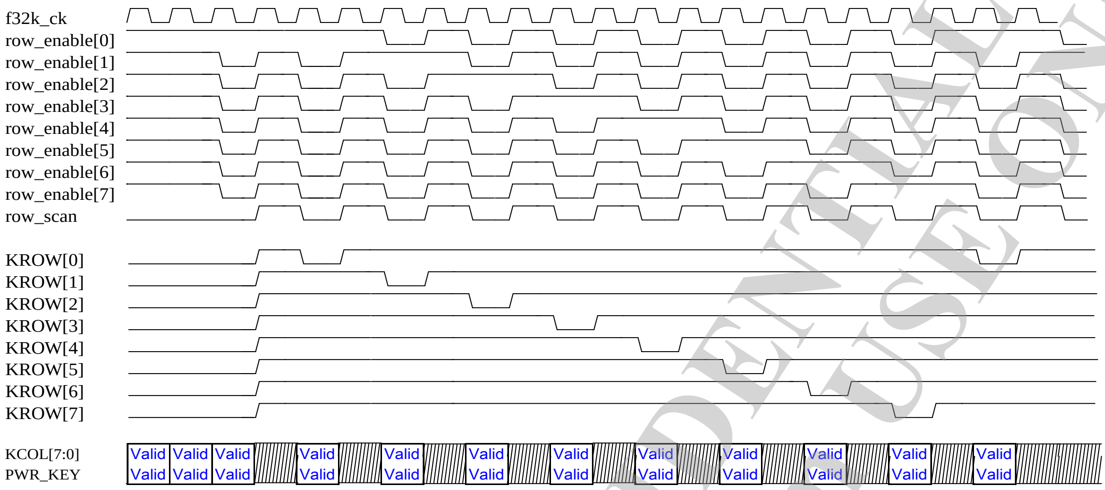


Figure 5-5. 8x8 keypad scan waveform

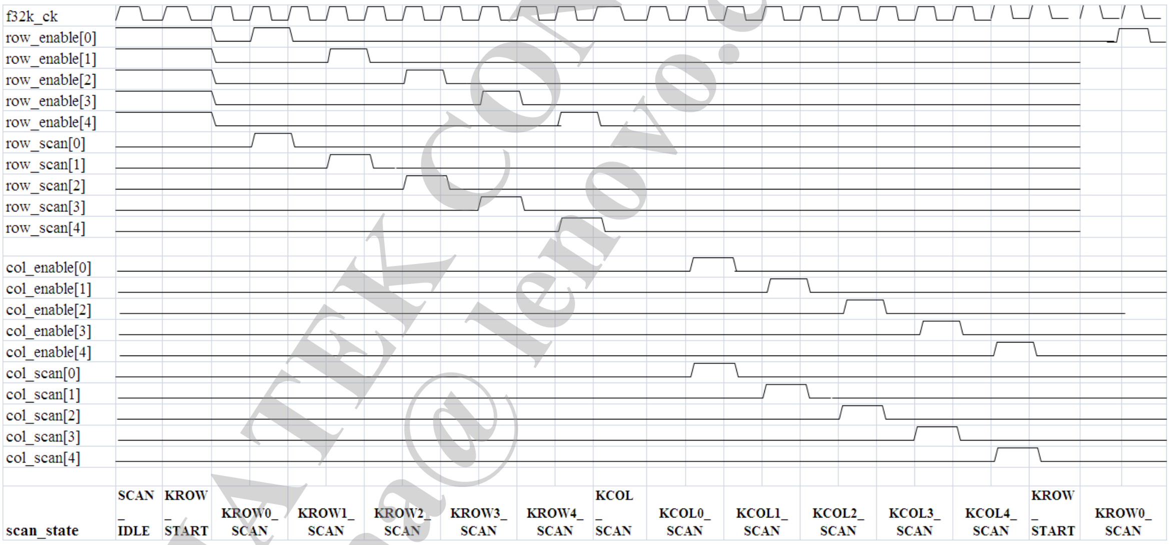


*Figure 5-6. 5*5 keypad scan waveform*

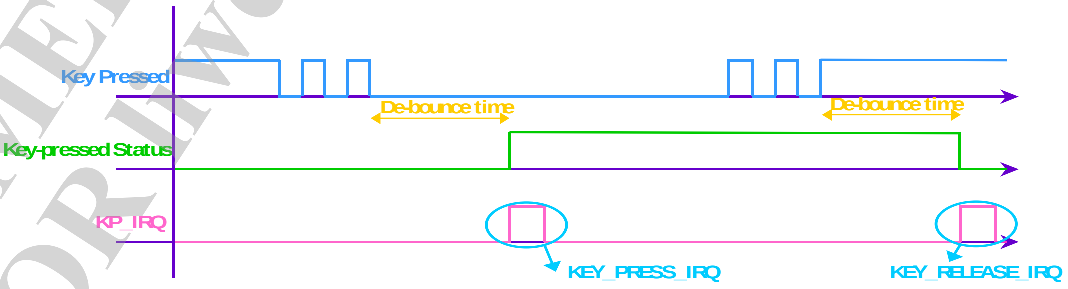


Figure 5-7. One key pressed with de-bounce mechanism denoted

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

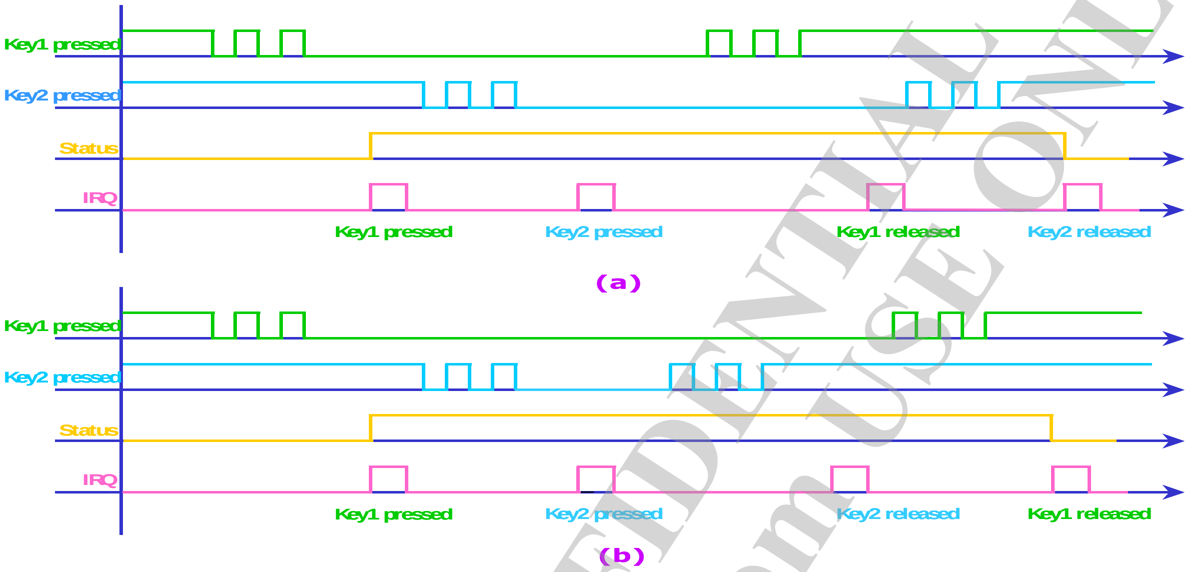


Figure 5-8. (a) Two keys pressed, case 1; (b) Two keys pressed, case 2

5.3.3 Register Definition

See chapater 3.3 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.4 UART

5.4.1 Introduction

The baseband chipset houses four UARTs. UARTs provide full duplex serial communication channels between the baseband chipset and external devices.

UART has both M16C450 and M16550A modes of operation, which are compatible with a range of standard software drivers. The extensions are designed to be broadly software compatible with 16550A variants, but certain areas offer no consensus.

In common with M16550A, the UART supports word lengths from 5 to 8 bits, an optional parity bit and one or two stop bits and is fully programmable by an 8-bit CPU interface. A 16-bit programmable baud rate generator and an 8-bit scratch register are included, together with separate transmit and receive FIFOs. Two modem control lines and a diagnostic loop-back mode are provided. UART also includes two DMA handshake lines, indicating when the FIFOs are ready to transfer data to the CPU. Interrupts can be generated from any of the ten sources.

Note that UART is designed so that all internal operation is synchronized by the CLK signal. This synchronization results in minor timing differences between the UART and industry standard 16550A device, which means that the core is not clock for clock identical to the original device.

After hardware reset, UART will be in M16C450 mode; its FIFOs can then be enabled and UART can enter M16550A mode. UART has further additional functions beyond the M16550A mode. Each of the extended functions can be selected individually under software control.

UART provides more powerful enhancements than the industry-standard 16550:

Hardware flow control
This feature is very useful when the ISR latency is hard to predict and control in the embedded applications. The MCU is relieved of having to fetch the received data within a fixed amount of time.

Note that in order to enable the enhancements, the enhanced mode bit, EFR[4], must be set. If EFR[4] is not set, IER[7:4], FCR[5:4], cannot be written and MCR[7] cannot be read. The enhanced mode bit ensures that UART is backward compatible with the software that has been written for 16C450 and 16550A devices.

5.4.2 Features

- Provides 4 channels
- DMA, polling or interrupt operation
- Supports word lengths from 5 to 8 bits, with an optional parity bit and one or two stop bits
- 4 UART ports for hardware automatic flow control (UART0, UART1, UART2, UART3)
- Supports baud rates from 110bps up to 961,200bps

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- Baud rate auto detection function

5.4.3 Block Diagram

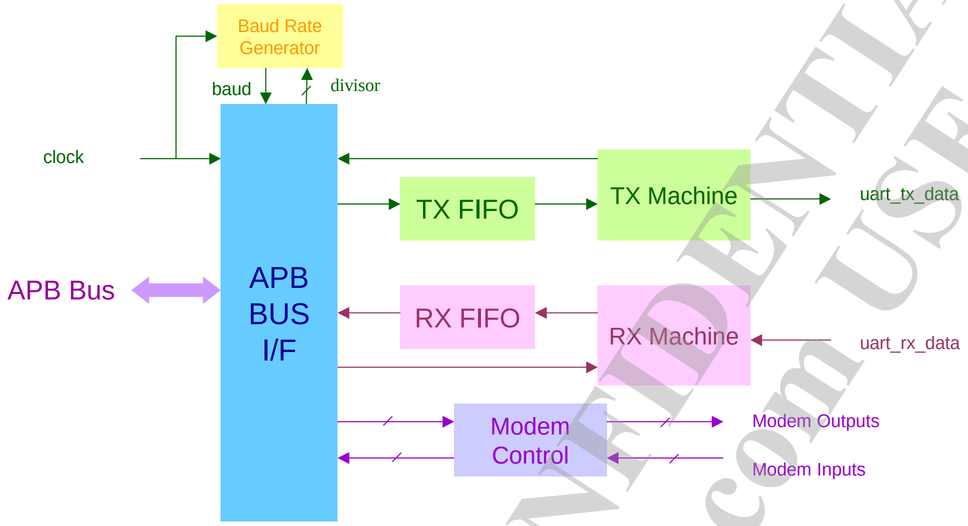


Figure 5-9. Block diagram of UART

5.4.4 Register Definition

UART number	Base address	Feature
UART0	0x11002000	Supports DMA, HW flow control
UART1	0x11003000	Supports DMA, HW flow control
UART2	0x11004000	Supports DMA, HW flow control
UART3	0x11005000	Supports DMA, HW flow control

There are four UART IPs in this SOC. The usage of the registers below are the same except that the base address must be changed to respective one.

See chapater 3.4 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

5.4.5 Programming Guide

5.4.5.1 Auto Baud Rate Detection

UART can detect the baud rate used automatically. Follow the steps below:

1. Set up register autobaud_en to start detecting the data.
2. Send data of ASCII code "AT" or "at" to UART from the connected host, e.g. the PC.
3. Check if the "AT" or "at" is received. If received, the setting is now already set for further transmission.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.4.5.2 Transmission

Follow the steps below for UART transmission:

1. Use the autobaud function to set up the baud rate or set up the parameters by yourself. The settings needed can be found in register DLL, DLM, HIGH SPEED.
2. After setting up the baud rate, start the transmission by filling the TX FIFO and receiving data from RX FIFO.
3. Virtual FIFO can also be used for the transmission. To use the virtual FIFO, you need APDMA settings (refer to details in the APDMA section).

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.5 USB 2.0 High Speed Dual-Role Controller

5.5.1 Introduction

The USB controller is configured for supporting 8 endpoints to receive packets and 8 endpoints to send packets except for endpoint 0. These endpoints can be individually configured in the software to handle either Bulk transfers, Interrupt transfers or Isochronous transfers. There are 8 DMA channels and the embedded RAM size is configurable size up to 8K bytes. The embedded RAM can be dynamically configured to each endpoint. As the host for point-to-point communications, the controller maintains a frame counter and automatically schedules SOF, Isochronous, Interrupt and Bulk transfers.

5.5.2 Features

The following table lists the unified USB IP features.

Feature list	Description
USB specifications	USB2.0 OTG
Enhanced feature	Generic Host QMU Generic Dev QMU
Endpoint	8 Tx 8 Rx EP0
DMA channel	8
Embedded RAM	Up to 8KB
UTMI+ interface	UTMI+ 16b
CPU slave interface	AHB asynchronous design
DMA master interface	AHB busy free asynchronous design

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.5.3 USB Controller Block Diagram

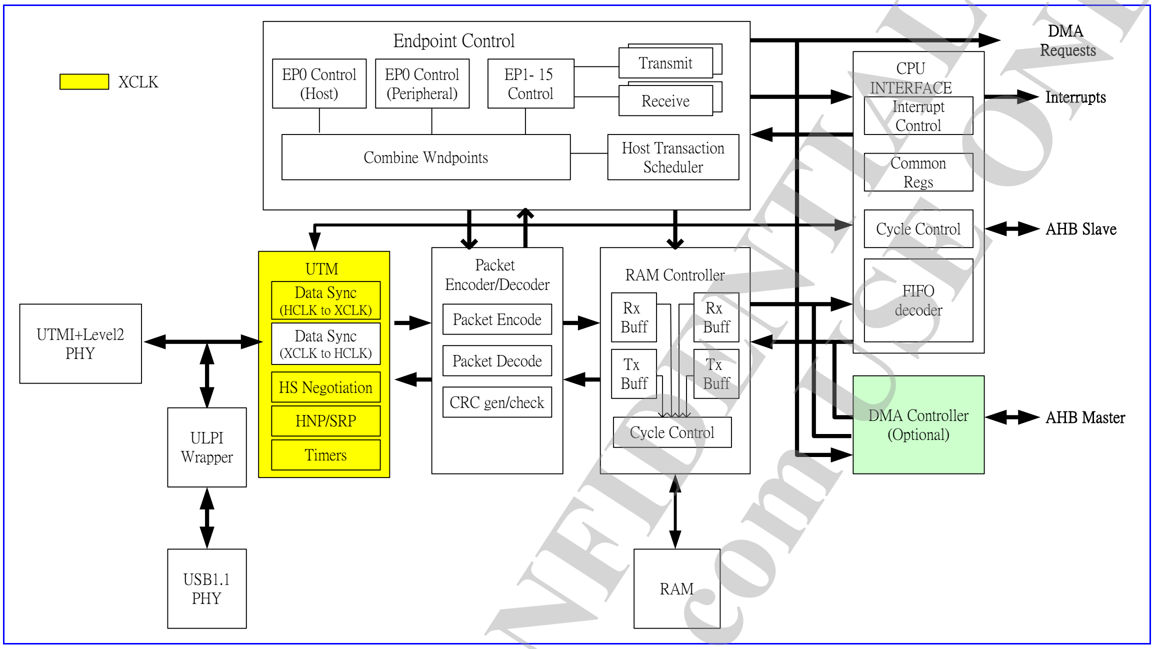


Figure 5-10. USB controller block diagram

5.5.4 Register Definition

Registers accessed using byte manipulation are marked in blue columns. Byte accessing registers can be accessed using word manipulation. Word accessing registers cannot be accessed using the byte manipulation.

Register address	Register name	Manipulation (Byte/Word)	Acronym
Common Registers			
USB + 0000h	Function address register	Byte	FADDR
USB + 0001h	Power management register	Byte	POWER
USB + 0002h	Tx interrupt status register	Byte	INTRTX
USB + 0004h	Rx interrupt status register	Byte	INTRRX
USB + 0006h	Tx interrupt enable register	Byte	INTRTXE
USB + 0008h	Rx interrupt enable register	Byte	INTRRXE
USB + 000Ah	Common USB interrupts register	Byte	INTRUSB
USB + 000Bh	Common USB interrupts enable register	Byte	INTRUSBE
USB + 000Ch	Frame number register	Byte	FRAME
USB + 000Eh	Endpoint selecting index register	Byte	INDEX
USB + 000Fh	Test mode enable register	Byte	TESTMODE
Indexed EndPoint CSR Region *n stands for endpoint number.* *For example, endpoint 1's n = 1. Valid n = 1 ~ MaxEndPoint.*			

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiqiao@lenovo.com USE ONLY

Register address	Register name	Manipulation (Byte/Word)	Acronym
MaxEndPoint is hardware configured and the maximum is 15.			
USB + 0010h ~ USB + 001Fh	It maps to CSR EP0 ~ EPx depending on the INDEX register. For example, if INDEX is n, address 0010h ~ 001Fh are mapped to 0x(100+10*n)h ~ 0x(100+10*n+F)h.	Byte	Indexed CSR
USB + 0020h	USB endpoint 0 FIFO register	Byte	FIFO0
USB + 0020h +(n)*4 h	USB endpoint n FIFO register	Byte	FIFOn
OTG, Dynamic FIFO, Version Registers			
USB + 0060h	OTG device control register	Byte	DEVCTL
USB + 0061h	Power up counter register	Byte	PWRUPCNT
USB + 0062h	Tx FIFO size register	Byte	TXFIFOSZ
USB + 0063h	Rx FIFO size register	Byte	RXFIFOSZ
USB + 0064h	Tx FIFO address register	Byte	TXFIFOADD
USB + 0066h	Rx FIFO address register	Byte	RXFIFOADD
USB + 006Ch	Hardware capability register	Byte	HWCAPS
USB + 006Eh	Hardware sub version register	Byte	HWSVERS
Hardware Configuration, Special Setting Registers			
USB + 0070h	USB bus performance register 1	Byte	BUSPERF1
USB + 0072h	USB bus performance register 2	Byte	BUSPERF2
USB + 0074h	USB bus performance register 3	Byte	BUSPERF3
USB + 0078h	Information about number of Tx and Rx register	Byte	EPINFO
USB + 0079h	Information about the width of RAM and the number of DMA channel register	Byte	RAMINFO
USB + 007Ah	Info. about delay to be applied register	Byte	LINKINFO
USB + 007Bh	Vbus pulsing charge register	Byte	VPLEN
USB + 007Ch	Time buffer available on HS transactions register	Byte	HS_EOF1
USB + 007Dh	Time buffer available on FS transactions register	Byte	FS_EOF1
USB + 007Eh	Time buffer available on LS transactions register	Byte	LS_EOF1
USB + 007Fh	Reset information register	Byte	RST_INFO
USB + 0080h	Rx data toggle set/status register	Word	RXTOG
USB + 0082h	Rx data toggle enable register	Word	RXTOGEN
USB + 0084h	Tx data toggle set/status register	Word	TXTOG
USB + 0086h	Tx data toggle enable register	Word	TXTOGEN
Level1 interrupt Control/Status registers			
USB + 00A0h	USB Level 1 interrupt status register	Byte	USB_L1INTS
USB + 00A4h	USB Level 1 interrupt unmask register	Byte	USB_L1INTM
USB + 00A8h	USB Level 1 interrupt polarity register	Byte	USB_L1INTP
USB + 00ACh	USB Level 1 interrupt control register	Byte	USB_L1INTC
Non-indexed EndPoint CSR Region *n stands for endpoint number.* *For example, endpoint 1's n = 1. Valid n = 1 ~ MaxEndPoint.* *MaxEndPoint is hardware configured and the maximum is 15.*			
USB + 0102h	EP0 control status register	Byte	CSR0

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Register address	Register name	Manipulation (Byte/Word)	Acronym
USB + 0108h	EP0 received bytes register	Byte	COUNT0
USB + 010Bh	NAK limit register	Byte	NAKLIMT0
USB + 010Fh	Core configuration register	Byte	CONFIGDATA
USB + 0100h +(n)*10h	TXMAP register	Byte	TXMAP(n)
USB + 0102h +(n)*10h	Tx CSR register	Byte	TXCSR(n)
USB + 0104h +(n)*10h	RXMAP register	Byte	RXMAP(n)
USB + 0106h +(n)*10h	Rx CSR register	Byte	RXCSR(n)
USB + 0108h +(n)*10h	Rx Count register	Byte	RXCOUNT(n)
USB + 010Ah +(n)*10h	TxType register	Byte	TXTYPE(n)
USB + 010Bh +(n)*10h	TxInterval register	Byte	TXINTERVAL(n)
USB + 010Ch +(n)*10h	RxType register	Byte	RXTYPE(n)
USB + 010Dh +(n)*10h	RxInterval register	Byte	RXINTERVAL(n)
USB + 010Fh +(n)*10h	Configured FIFO size register	Byte	FIFOSIZE(n)
DMA Channels Control Registers *M stands for DMA channel number.* *For example, DMA channel 1's M = 1. Valid M = 1 ~ MaxDMAChannel.* *MaxDMAChannel is hardware configured and the maximum is 8.*			
USB + 0200h	DMA interrupt status register (word access only)	Word	DMA_INTR
USB + 0210h	DMA limiter register (word access only)	Word	DMA_LIMITER
USB + 0220h	DMA configuration register (word access only)	Word	DMA_CONFIG
USB + 0204h +(M-1)*10h	DMA channel M control register (word access only)	Word	DMA_CNTL_M
USB + 0208h +(M-1)*10h	DMA channel M address register (word access only)	Word	DMA_ADDR_M
USB + 020Ch +(M-1)*10h	DMA channel M byte count register (word access only)	Word	DMA_COUNT_M
EndPoint RX Packet Count Register *n stands for endpoint number. For example, endpoint 1's n = 1. Valid n = 1 ~ MaxEndPoint.* *MaxEndPoint is hardware configured and the maximum is 15.*			
USB + 0300h +(n)*4h	EPn RxPktCount register	Word	EPnRXPKTCOUNT
Host/Hub Control Registers (Host mode only registers) *n stands for endpoint number. For example, endpoint 1's n = 1. Valid n = 1 ~ MaxEndPoint.* *MaxEndPoint is hardware configured and maximum is 15.*			
USB + 0480h +8*n h	Transmit endpoint n function address	Word	TXFUNCADDR

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Register address	Register name	Manipulation (Byte/Word)	Acronym
USB + 0482h +8*n h	Transmit endpoint n hub/port address	Word	TXHUBADDR
USB + 0484h +8*n h	Receive endpoint n function address	Word	RXFUNCADDR
USB + 0486h +8*n h	Receive endpoint n hub/port address	Word	RXHUBADDR
Debug Function Registers			
USB + 0600h	Debug flag selection control (byte 0, 1, 2, 3)	Word	DFC0R, DFC1R
USB + 0604h	Timing test mode	Word	TM1
USB + 0605h	No response error count	Word	TM1
USB + 0606h	Debug flag UTMI11 sub group selection	Word	DFC2R
USB + 0608h	Hardware version control register	Word	HWVER_DATE
USB + 0610h	Packet sequence record control/OpState record control	Word	PSR_CTRL/ OSR_CTRL
USB + 0611h ~ 0616h	Packet sequence record filter and trigger setting	Word	PSR_CTRL
USB + 0620h ~ 0637h	Debug register	Word	DBG_PRB
USB + 0640h ~ 065fh	Packet sequence PID data/OpState record Data	Word	PSR_DATA/ OSR_DATA
USB + 0684h	SRAM address register	Word	SRAMA
USB + 0688h	SRAM data register (word access only)	Word	SRAMD
USB + 0690h	RISC_SIZE register	Word	RISC_SIZE
USB + 0700h	Reserved register	Word	RESREG
USB + 0704h	HW TxPktRdy	Word	HWTPR
USB + 0708h	HW TxPktRdy enable register	Word	HWTPR_EN
USB + 070Ch	HW TxPktRdy error detection register	Word	HWTPR_ERR

See chapater 3.5 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.6 USBPHY Register File

The full features include USB2.0 PHYD and PHYA macro control registers. It also includes a frequency meter for USB2.0 PHYA monitor clock. The registers can be accessed by I2C interface (FT). The default mode is accessing registers by AHB. After 0xfe (I2C access only) is configured to 8'h01, the register file will be in the I2C mode (accessing registers by I2C).

5.6.1 Features

- USB2.0
  - USB2.0 PHYD control registers for PHYD macro setting
  - USB2.0 PHYA control registers for PHYA characteristic tuning
  - Force USB2.0 UTMI interface for FT tests
  - Force USB2.0 PHY analog power-down in ATPG mode
  - Frequency meter for USB2.0 PHYA monitor clock
- Accessing PHY registers by AHB slave interface
- Accessing PHY registers by I2C interface

5.6.2 USBPHY Register File Block Diagram

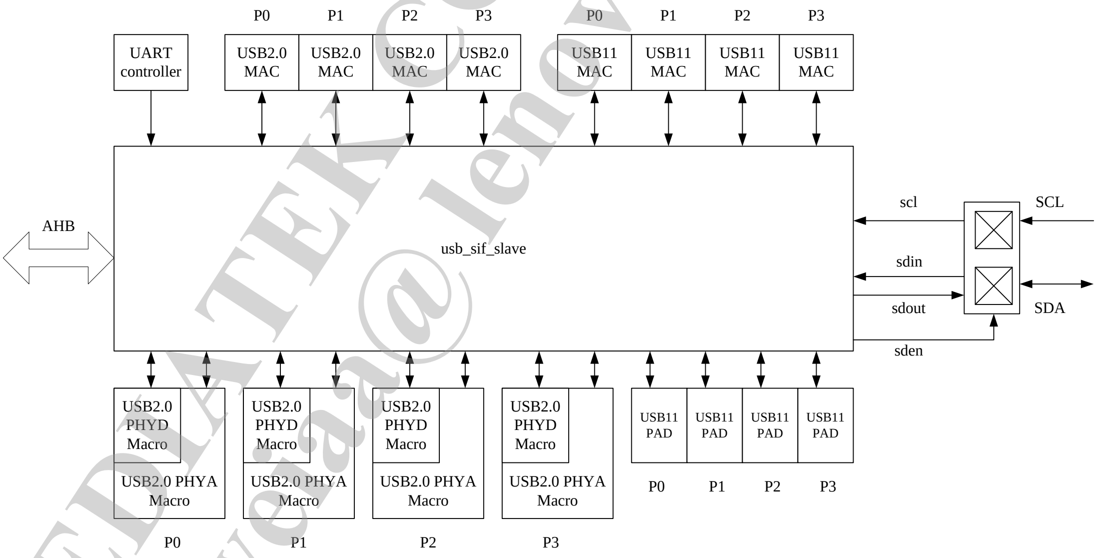


Figure 5-11. USBPHY RegFile block diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

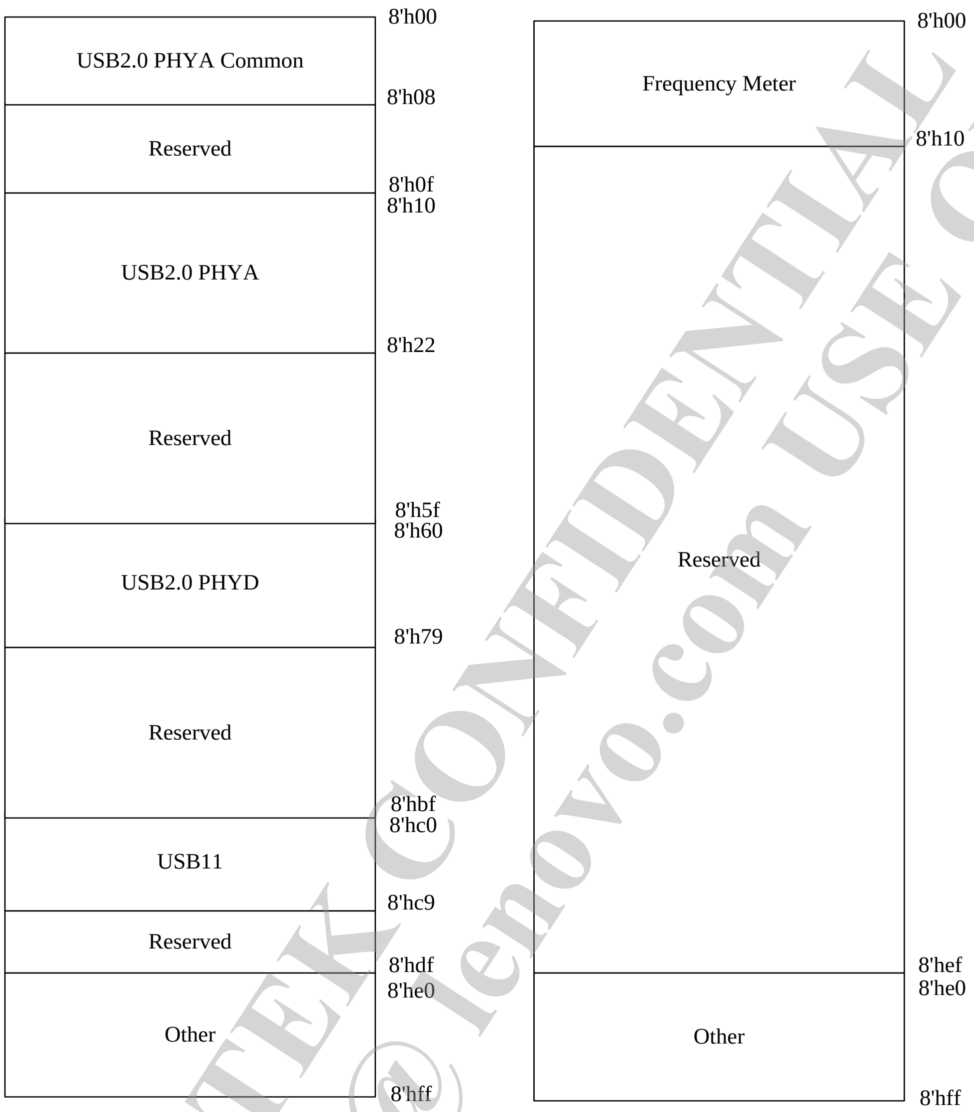
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.6.3 Register Definition

- Page base
  - Every page register contains 0x00h ~ 0xefh (USB2.0+ USB1.1)
  - Frequency meter registers in one page (@ 0xff = 8'h0f)
  - 0xf0~0xff: Global register
  - 0xfe[0]: I2C mode, the default value is 0 (accessing register by AHB interface)
    - If switched to I2C mode, configuring 0xfe[0] to be 1'h1 is required.
    - I2C access only
  - 0xffh (RG_PAGE): I2C page register
    - I2C access only
- I2C
  - Accessing different pages by setting up RG_PAGE
  - Default device number: 7'h60 (*If there are more than one hier, the device number of the second hier. will be 7'h61.)
  - Accessing different pages by setting up RG_PAGE (0xff)
  - Port 0 USB PHY register page : RG_PAGE value : 8'h00
  - Port 1 USB PHY register page : RG_PAGE value : 8'h01
  - Port 2 USB PHY register page : RG_PAGE value : 8'h02
  - Port 3 USB PHY register page : RG_PAGE value : 8'h03
  - Frequency Meter register page : RG_PAGE value : 8'h0f
- AHB
  - Accessing different pages by different base addresses
  - Supporting max. four ports. Base address: 800h,900h,a00h,b00h
    - Port 0 register base address: 800h
    - Port 1 register base address: 900h
    - Port 2 register base address: a00h
    - Port 3 register base address: b00h
    - Frequency meter registers base address: f00h

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.



See chapater 3.6 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.7 SPI Interface Controller

5.7.1 Introduction

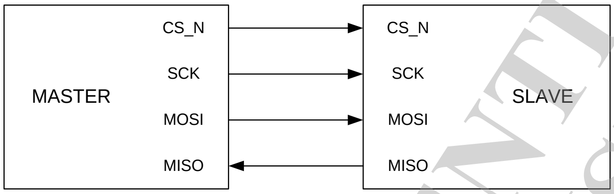


Figure 5-12. Pin connection between SPI master and SPI slave

The SPI interface is a bit-serial, four-pin transmission protocol. Figure 5-12 is an example of the connection between the SPI master and SPI slave. The SPI interface controller is a master responsible of the data transmission with the slave.

5.7.2 Pin Description

Table 5-1. SPI controller interface

Signal name	Type	Description
CS_N	O	Low active chip selection signal
SCK	O	The (bit) serial clock
MOSI	O	Data signal from master output to slave input
MISO	I	Data signal from slave output to master input

5.7.3 Transmission Formats

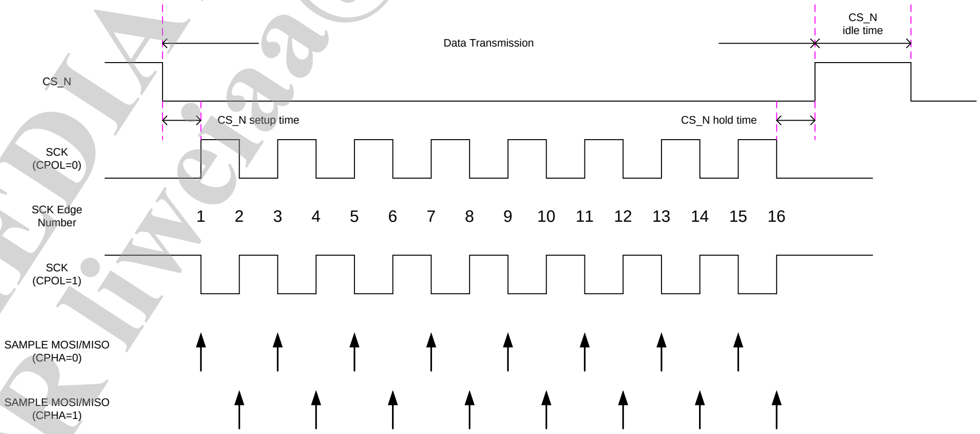


Figure 5-13. SPI transmission formats

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Figure 5-13 shows the waveform during the SPI transmission. The low active CS_N determines the start point and end point of one transaction. The CS_N setup time, hold time and idle time are also depicted.

CPOL defines the clock polarity in the transmission. Two types of polarity can be adopted, i.e. polarity 0 and polarity 1. Figure 5-13 is an example of both clock polarities (CPOL).

CPHA defines the legal timing to sample MOSI and MISO. Two different methods can be adopted.

5.7.4 Features

The features of the SPI controller (master) are:

Configurable CS_N setup time, hold time and idle time

- Programmable SCK high time and low time
- Configurable transmitting and receiving bit order
- Two configurable modes for the source of the data to be transmitted. 1) In TX DMA mode, the SPI controller automatically fetches the transmitted data (to be put on the MOSI line) from memory; 2) In TX FIFO mode, the data to be transmitted on the MOSI line are written to FIFO before the start of the transaction.
- Two configurable modes for destination of the data to be received. 1) In RX DMA mode, the SPI controller automatically stores the received data (from MISO line) to memory; 2) In RX FIFO mode, the received data keep being in RX FIFO of the SPI controller. The processor must read back the data by itself.
- Adjustable endian order from/to memory system
- Programmable byte length for transmission
- Unlimited length for transmission. This is achieved by the operation of PAUSE mode. In PAUSE mode, the CS_N signal will keep being active (low) after the transmission. At this time, the SPI controller is in PAUSE_IDLE state, ready to receive the resume command. The state transition is shown in Figure 5-14.
- Configurable option to control CS_N de-assert between byte transfers. The controller supports a special transmission format called CS_N de-assert mode. Figure 5-15 illustrates the waveform in this transmission format.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

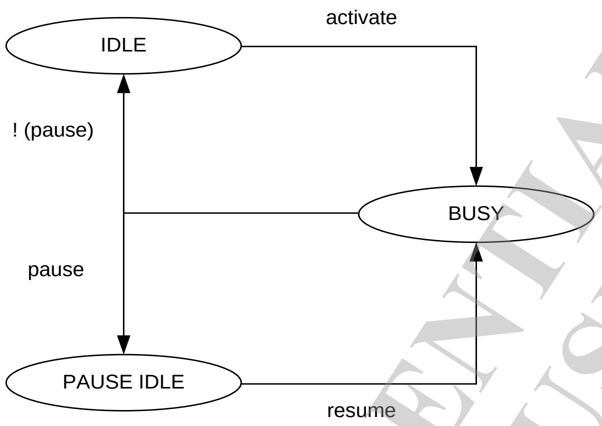


Figure 5-14. Operation flow with or without PAUSE mode

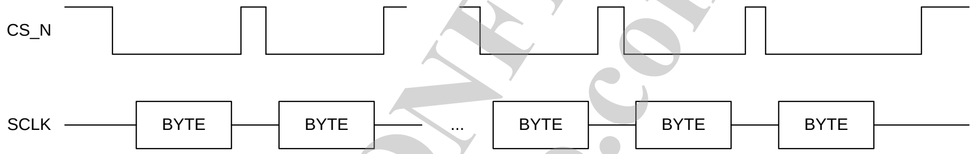


Figure 5-15. CS_N de-assert mode

5.7.5 Block Diagram

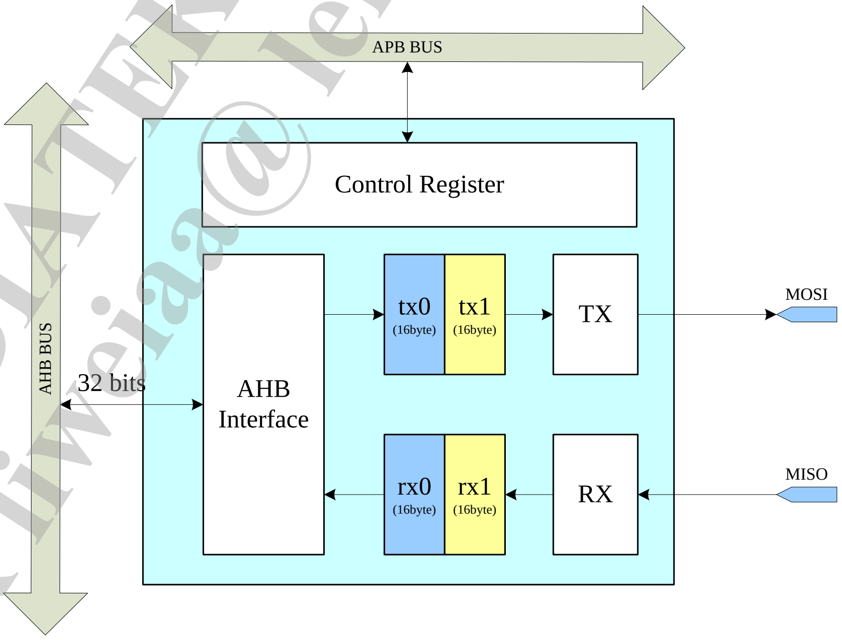


Figure-5-16. Block diagram of SPI

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.7.6 Register Definition

See chapater 3.7 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

5.7.7 Programming Guide

Follow the steps below to perform SPI transmission:

1. Prepare the data in the memory with its start address to be the "source address".
2. Set up the timing and protocol for the SPI transmission (see Figure 5-13 for detailed setup parameters).
3. Fill the "destination address", which is the start address that you would like to place the received data, and "source address", which is the start address to place the data to be transmitted, into register SPI_RX_DST and SPI_TX_SRC, respectively.
4. Write 1 the CMD_ACT to start the transfer
5. Get the data received from the buffer prepared starting from "destination address".

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.8 MSDC Controller

5.8.1 Introduction

The MSDC (Memory Stick and SD card Controller) fully supports

- SD memory card specification version 3.0
- MMC/eMMC 5.0

5.8.2 Features

Each MSDC contains:

- Interface with MCU by AHB bus and AXI bus
- 32-bit access on AHB bus and 64 axi bus master
- 32-bit access for control registers
- 8-bit/16-bit/32-bit access for FIFO in PIO mode
- Built-in 128 bytes FIFO buffers for transmit and receive
- Built-in CRC circuit
- Basic DMA mode, basic descriptor mode, and enhanced descriptor mode for SD/MMC
- Interrupt capabilities
- Does not support SPI mode for SD/MMC memory card
- Does not support suspend/resume for SD/MMC memory card
- Supports SD3.0 SDR104, data rate up to 208x4Mbps
- Supports SD3.0 DDR50, data rate up to 50x4x2Mbps(4-bit with clock dual edge)
- Supports e-MMC boot-up mode and SD boot-up
- Supports HS400 mode (DDR200) to emmc50
- 256 programmable serial clock rates on SD/MMC bus from 100kHz to 208MHz
- Card detection capabilities

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.8.3 Block Diagram

Figure 5-17. Block diagram of MSDC controller

Figure 5-18. Block diagram of MSDC controller for emmc50

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.8.4 Register Definition

MSDC number	Base address	Feature
MSDC0	0x11230000	EMMC4.5/5.0
MSDC1	0x11240000	SD3.0/SDIO3.0

There are 2 MSDC IPs in this SOC. Use of the registers below are the same except that the base address needs to be changed to respective one.

See chapater 3.8 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.9 AUXADC

5.9.1 Introduction

The auxiliary ADC unit is used to identify the plugged peripheral and perform temperature measurement. There are 16 input channels allowing diverse applications, such as temperature measurement and light sensor.

Each channel only operates in the immediate mode. The time-trigger mode is removed now. In the immediate mode, the A/D converter samples the value once only when the flag in the AUXADC_CON1 register is set. For example, if the flag IMM0 in AUXADC_CON1 is set, the A/D converter will sample the data for channel 0. The IMM flags have to be cleared and set again to initialize another sampling. The value sampled for channel 0 is stored in register AUXADC_DAT0, and the value for channel 1 is stored in register AUXADC_DAT1 and so on. If the AUTOSET(x) flag in the register AUXADC_CON0 is set, the auto-sampling function will be enabled in channel(x). The A/D converter samples the data for the channel(x) in which the corresponding data register is read. For example, in the case the AUTOSET0 flag is set. When the data register AUXADC_DAT0 is read, the A/D converter will sample the next value for channel 0 immediately.

If multiple channels are selected at the same time, the task will be performed sequentially on every selected channel from high to low channel. For example, if AUXADC_CON1 is set to 0x7f, i.e. all 7 channels are selected, the state machine in the unit will start sampling from channel 6 to channel 0 and saves the values of each input channel in respective registers. The same process also applies to the timer-triggered mode.

The PUWAIT_EN bit in register AUXADC_CON3 is used to power up the analog port in advance, ensuring that the power is ramped up to the stable state before A/D converter starts the conversion. The analog part is automatically powered down after the conversion is completed.

Besides, there are several embedded temperature sensors. The module accepts signals from module of thermal controller to measure the temperature of the embedded sensors. The measurement result is able to be read in the command registers in the module of thermal controller.

5.9.2 Features

Table 5-2 describes the features in the AUXADC module.

Table 5-2. AUXADC: feature list

Item	Main function	Description
1	Immediate analog-digital conversion	In immediate mode, it supports auto-set option. In time-trigger mode, it supports auto-clear option.
2	Background detection and interrupt	The related command registers: AUXADC_DET_VOLT, AUXADC_PERIOD, AUXADC_DEBT, AUXADC_SEL
3	Temperature measurement	

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.9.3 Block Diagram

SW controls the AUXADC through the APB bus. Once the hardware receives the command, it will trigger AUXADC channel sampling automatically. SW polls the status register or waits for interrupts from the CPU.

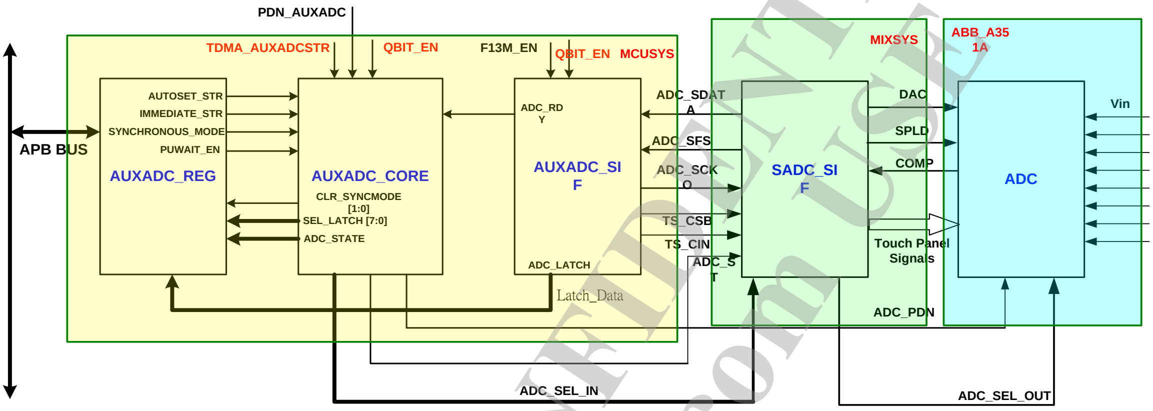


Figure 5-19. Block diagram of AUXADC

5.9.4 Theory of Operation

5.9.4.1 SAR ADC

Successive-approximation-register (SAR) ADC provides low power consumption, cost-effective and medium resolution. The AUXADC is SAR ADC architecture.

Here is an 8-bit conversion example. V_{REF} is the reference voltage of AUXADC.

The AUXADC implements a binary search algorithm. An initial register V_{DA} value compared to the input voltage V_{IN} is the mid-value between (2^8-1) and 0. The value represents V_{REF} /2. If V_{IN} is bigger than V_{DA}, the output of comparison will be 1, and the MSB-bit will be 1. On the contrary, the MSB bit will be 0. Subsequently, bit 7 will be set to 1, and another comparison is done. Bit 6 to bit 0 will be executed as the previous action. Then, the 8-bit digital value will be available.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei4@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

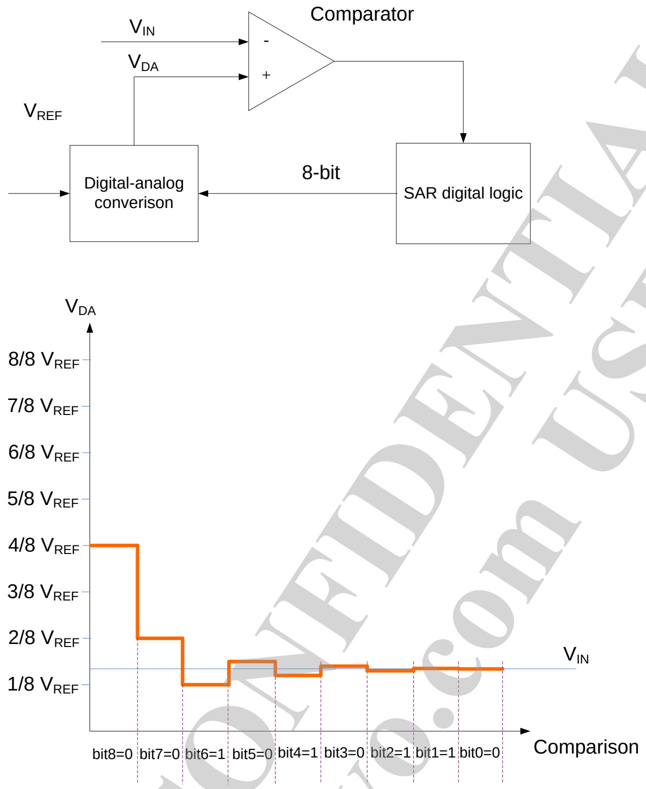


Figure 5-20. SAR ADC architecture and conversion

5.9.4.2 Design Partition

Table 5-3 shows the design partition.

Table 5-3. AUXADC: design partition

Sub module name (hier1)	Description
AUXADC	Top module
AUXADC_REG	APB command registers
AUXADC_SIF	ADC serial interface with the module SADC_SIF
AUXADC_DEBUG	Debugging signal selection
AUXADC_MONITOR	Background detection and generate interrupt
AUXADC_CORE	AUXADC state machine and handle sampling sequence
SADC_SIF	Generate signals to analog part and transfer ADC result to the module AUXADC

5.9.5 Register Definition

See chapater 3.9 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.10 I2C/SCCB Controller

5.10.1 Introduction

I2C (Inter-IC)/SCCB (Serial Camera Control Bus) is a two-wire serial interface. The two signals are SCL and SDA. SCL is a clock signal that is driven by the master. SDA is a bi-directional data signal that can be driven by either the master or the slave. This generic controller supports the master role and conforms to the I2C specification.

5.10.2 Features

- I2C compliant master mode operation
- Adjustable clock speed for LS/FS mode operation
- Supports 7-bit/10-bit addressing
- Supports high-speed mode
- Supports slave clock extension
- START/STOP/REPEATED START condition
- Manual transfer mode
- Multi-write per transfer
- Multi-read per transfer
- Multi-transfer per transaction
- Combined format transfer with length change capability.
- Active drive/wired-and I/O configuration
- Repeated start multiple transfer

5.10.2.1 Manual Transfer Mode

The controller offers manual mode.

When the manual mode is selected, in addition to the slave address register, the controller has a built-in 8-byte deep FIFO which allows MCU to prepare up to 8 bytes of data for a write transfer, or read up to 8 bytes of data for a read transfer.

5.10.2.2 Transfer Format Support

This controller is designed to be as generic as possible in order to support a wide range of devices that may utilize different combinations of transfer formats. Here are the transfer format types supported through different software configurations:

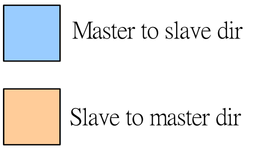
<u>Wording convention note</u>

- Transfer = Anything encapsulated within a Start and Stop or Repeated Start.
- Transfer length = Number of bytes within the transfer
- Transaction = This is the top unit. Everything combined equals 1 transaction.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR riveria@lenovo.com USE ONLY

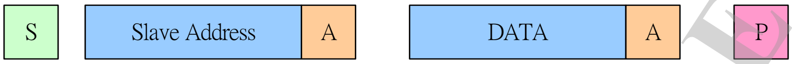
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- Transaction length = Number of transfers to be conducted.

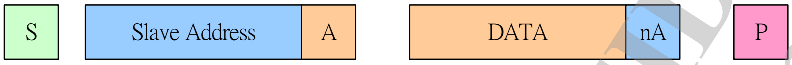


Single byte access

Single Byte Write

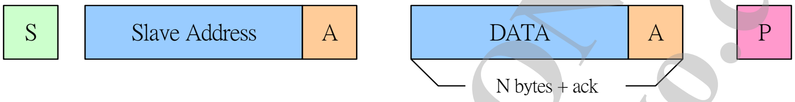


Single Byte Read

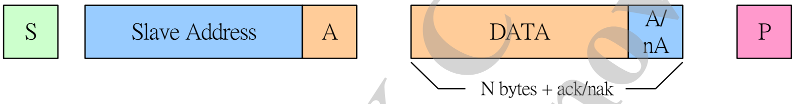


Multi byte access

Multi Byte Write

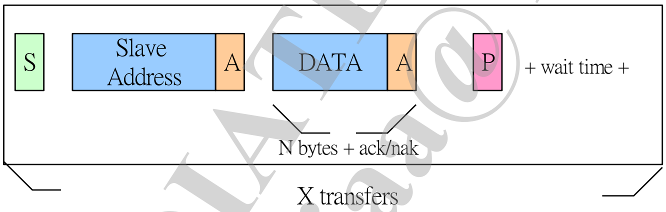


Multi Byte Read

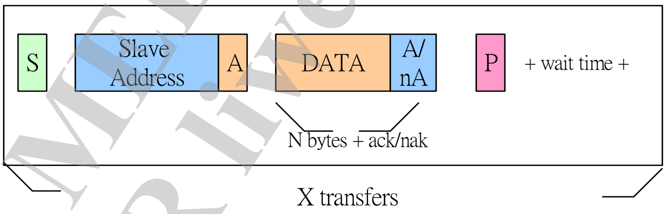


Multi-byte transfer + multi-transfer (same direction)

Multi Byte Write + Multi Transfer



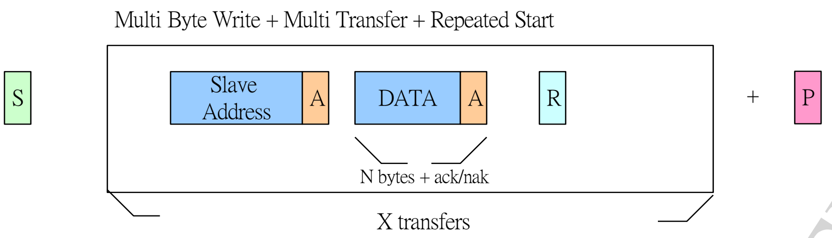
Multi Byte Read + Multi Transfer

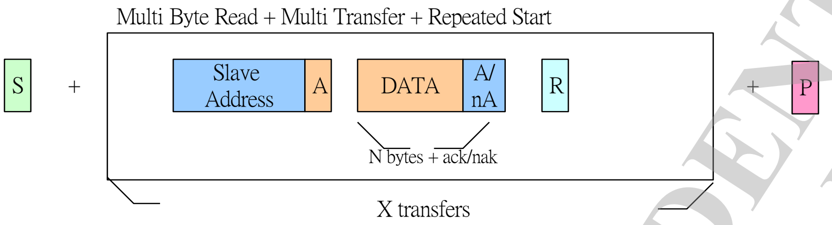


Multi-byte transfer + multi-transfer w RS (same direction)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liveia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

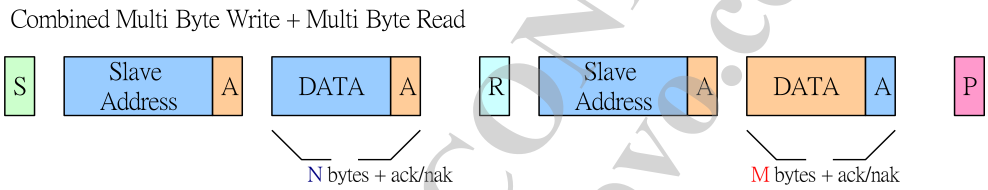
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.



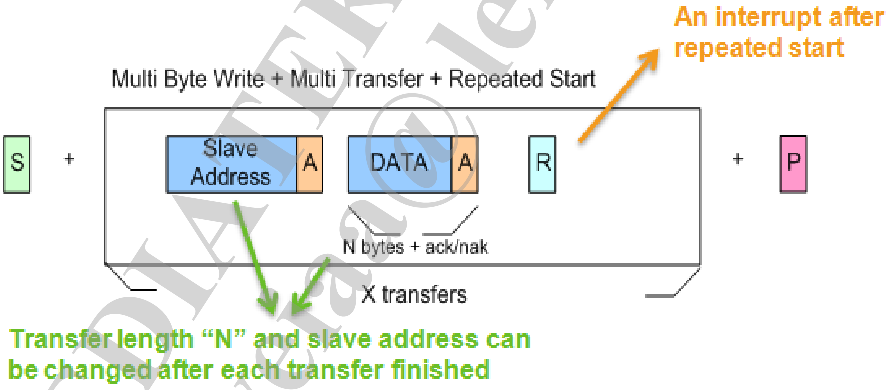


Combined write/read with Repeated Start (direction change)

Note: Only supports write and then read sequence. Read and then write is not supported.

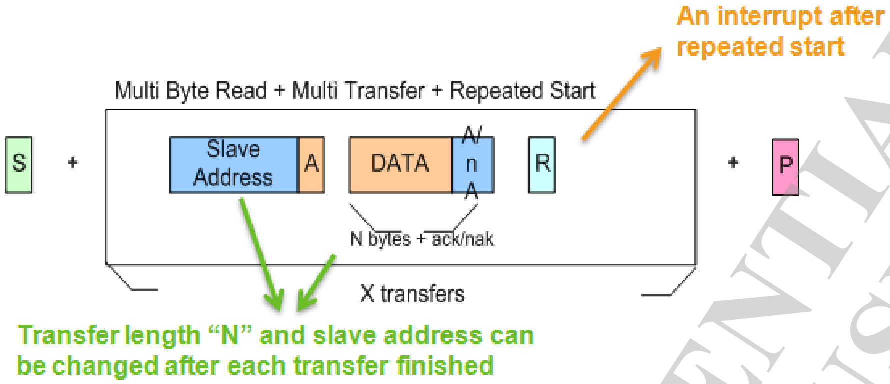


Repeated start multiple transfer (write/read)



MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.



5.10.3 Block Diagram

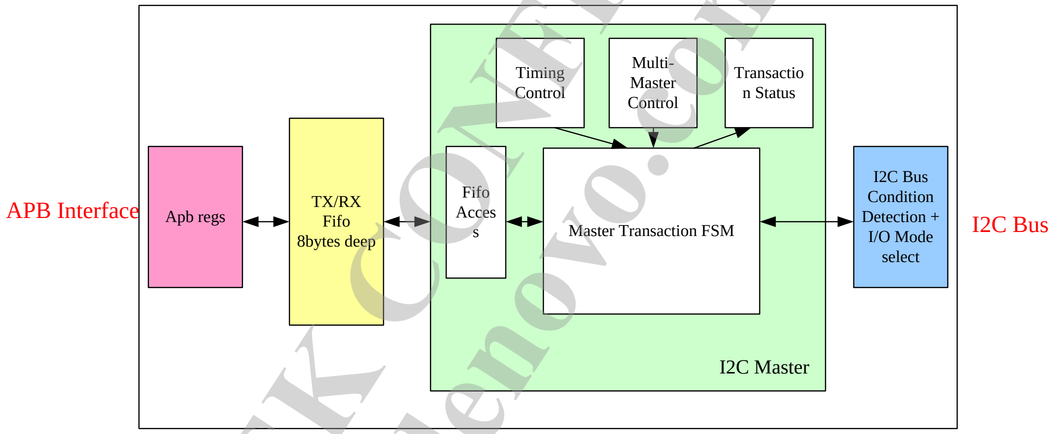


Figure 5-21. Block diagram of I2C

5.10.4 Register Definition

I2C number	Base address	Feature
I2C0	0x11007000	Supports DMA
I2C1	0x11008000	Supports DMA
I2C2	0x11009000	Supports DMA
I2C3	0x1100F000	Supports DMA

There are four I2C IPs in this SOC. The usage of the registers below is the same except that the base address must be changed to respective one.

See chapater 3.10 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.11 Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM)

5.11.1 Introduction

Seven generic pulse-width modulators are implemented to generate pulse sequences with programmable frequency and duration for LCD backlight, charging or other purposes. Before enabling PWM, the pulse sequences must be prepared in the memory or registers. Then PWM will read the pulse sequences to generate random waveform to meet all kinds of applications (see Figure 5-22).

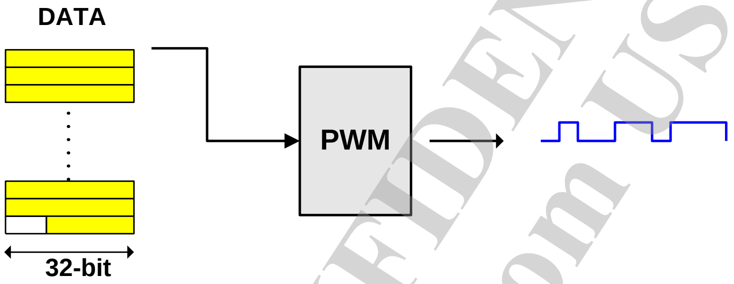
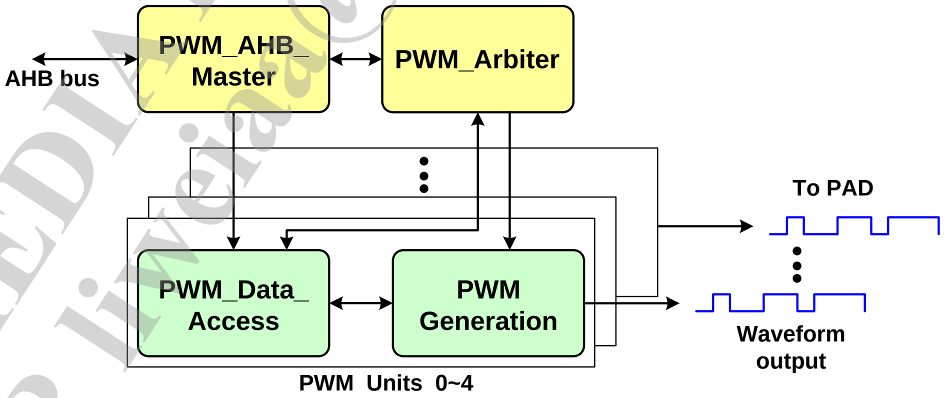


Figure 5-22. Generation procedure of PWM

5.11.2 Features

- Old mode, FIFO mode
- Periodical memory and random mode
- Sequential output mode and 3DLCM mode

5.11.3 Block Diagram



5.11.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.11 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.11.5 Clock Source Selection

OLD_MODE	CLKSEL_OLD	CLKSEL	CLKSRC
1	1	0	bclk
1	1	1	32KHz (used in old mode only)
1	0	0	bclk
1	0	1	bclk/1625
0	Don't care	0	bclk
0	Don't care	1	bclk/1625

Note: bclk can be selected as 26MHz or 66MHz(bus clock) by PWM_CK_26M_SEL.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.12 General-Purpose Timer (GPT)

5.12.1 Introduction

The GPT includes five 32-bit timers and one 64-bit timer. Each timer has four operation modes, which are ONE-SHOT, REPEAT, KEEP-GO and FREERUN, and can operate on one of the two clock sources, RTC clock (32.768kHz) and system clock (13MHz).

5.12.2 Features

The four operation modes for GPT are ONE-SHOT, REPEAT, KEEP-GO and FREERUN. See Table 5-4. ***Operation mode of GPT*** for the functions of each mode.

Table 5-4. Operation mode of GPT

Mode	Auto Stop	Interrupt	Increases when EN=1 and ...	When COUNTn equals COMPAREn	Example: Compare is set to 2 *Bold means interrupt*
ONE-SHOT	Yes	Yes	Stops when COUNTn equals to COMPAREn	EN is reset to 0.	0,1,**2**,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,...
REPEAT	No	Yes		Count is reset to 0.	0,1,**2**,0,1,**2**,0,1,**2**,0,1,**2**...
KEEP-GO	No	Yes	Reset to 0 when overflow		0,1,**2**,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,...
FREERUN	No	No	Reset to 0 when overflow		0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,...

Each timer can be programmed to select the clock source, RTC clock (32.76kHz) or system clock (13MHz). After the clock source is determined, the division ratio of the selected clock can be programmed. The division ratio can be fine-granulated as 1, 2, 3, 4 to 13 and coarse-granulated as 16, 32 and 64.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.12.3 Block Diagram

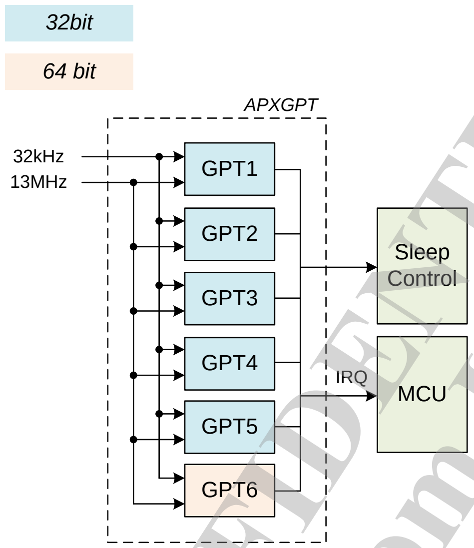


Figure 5-23. Block diagram of APXGPT

5.12.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.12 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

5.12.5 Programming Guide

To program and use GPT, note that:
The counter value can be read any time even when the clock source is RTC clock.

- The compare value can be programmed any time.

For the GPT6 64-bit timer, the read operation of the 64-bit timer value will be separated into two APB reads since an APB read is of 32-bit width. To perform the read of 64-bit timer value, the lower word should be read first then the higher word. The read operation of lower word freezes the "read value" of the higher word but does not freeze the timer counting. This ensures that the separated read operation acquires the correct timer value. If both two tasks, e.g. task A and task B, perform the read of 64-bit timer value, task A first reads the lower word of the value, and task B reads the lower word of the value. Either of the tasks reads the higher word of timer value, and the obtained value will be the time when task B reads the lower word of timer value. To guarantee task A reads the correct 64-bit timer value, some software procedures are required, e.g. the semaphore.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei4@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.13 Thermal Controller

5.13.1 Introduction

On mobile platform, thermal management is very fundamental. The thermal management controls the platform computing performance to achieve the requirement and maintain the Raven within the temperature constraints. Operation under over-high temperature for a long time will have a risk of damage for Raven reliability.

In MT6737, it embeds several temperature sensors in possible hot spots on the die. The thermal controller module executes a periodic measurement for each hot spot. The temperature readings are readable for software.

In order to minimize the software effort of temperature monitoring, the thermal controller generates interrupts to microprocessors which informs the abnormal condition.

5.13.2 Features

- Supports up to three thermal sensors
- Periodic temperature measurement
- Temperature monitoring
- Different types of low pass filters for thermal sensor reading

5.13.3 Block Diagram

There are four microprocessors in MT6737. Their maximum frequency is up to over 1.3GHz and the transistor count is also large. The power consumed by microprocessors occupies a high percentage of the entire chip power consumption. Besides the microprocessors, EMI is also a source of power consumption because it provides high DRAM data bandwidth to other modules in MT6737.

The thermal controller is implemented for the software to operate MT6737 with a pre-defined temperature range. Or it will have function failure and reliability issues. According to temperature measurement, the system performance can be adjusted and the system design for power dissipation can also be monitored.

The hottest location in MT6737 may be different in different applications. Besides, when the thermal controller informs the software of an abnormal condition, the following power reduction action should be an efficient and low latency.

In general, there are two methods for embedded CMOS temperature sensor:

- VBE temperature sensor
- △ VBE temperature sensor (PTAT temperature sensor)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

 © 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

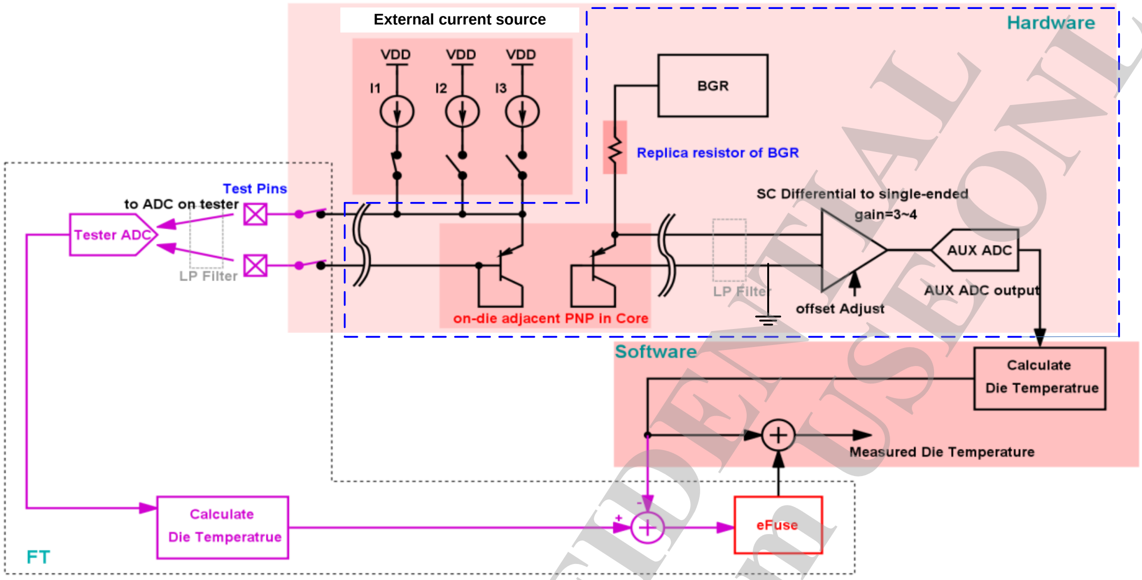


Figure 5-24. Implementation of CMOS temperature sensor

The accuracy target is 2°C when the temperature is in the range of 0 ~ 85°C. We use VBE as a CMOS sensor:

Consider

$$Ic = Is \cdot e^{\frac{V_{BE}}{\frac{nkT}{q}}}$$

$$\Rightarrow V_{BE} = \frac{nkT}{q} \cdot \ln \frac{I_C}{I_S}$$

- -1.665mV/°C in N40 process (TT, RTyp)

And use 12-bit SAR AUXADC for data conversion. The resolution of AUXADC is about 2.5V/2^{12}= 0.6mV. But for △ VBE method,

△ VBE = nkT/q x lnN

- k/q=0.086mV/°C

The resolution of AUXADC is not enough.

Considering offset, we calibrate the offset in FT and use e-fuse to store the calibrated value.

- △ VBE based approach for die temperature offset calibration.

There is no need to wait for thermal equilibrium in FT. However, it needs unused PAD and external bias circuit in FT.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

1. Consider the BJT series resistor,

$$\Delta V_{BE} = \frac{\beta}{1+\beta} R_S (I_{C_1} - I_{C_2}) + \frac{nkT}{q} \cdot \ln \frac{I_{C_1}}{I_{C_2}} \frac{I_{S_2}}{I_{S_1}} = \frac{\beta}{1+\beta} R_S (I_{C_1} - I_{C_2}) + \frac{nkT}{q} \ln \frac{N}{M}$$

2. By applying IC1, IC2 and IC3, the three different current in FT, we can get the following equation and solve it for RS and T.

$$\Delta V_{BE1} = \frac{\beta}{1+\beta} R_S (I_{C_2} - I_{C_1}) + \frac{nkT}{q} \ln N_1$$

$$\Delta V_{BE2} = \frac{\beta}{1+\beta} R_S (I_{C_3} - I_{C_2}) + \frac{nkT}{q} \ln N_2$$

- Comparing the T measured via on chip ADC and the T got in the above equations, we can calibrate the temperature offset.

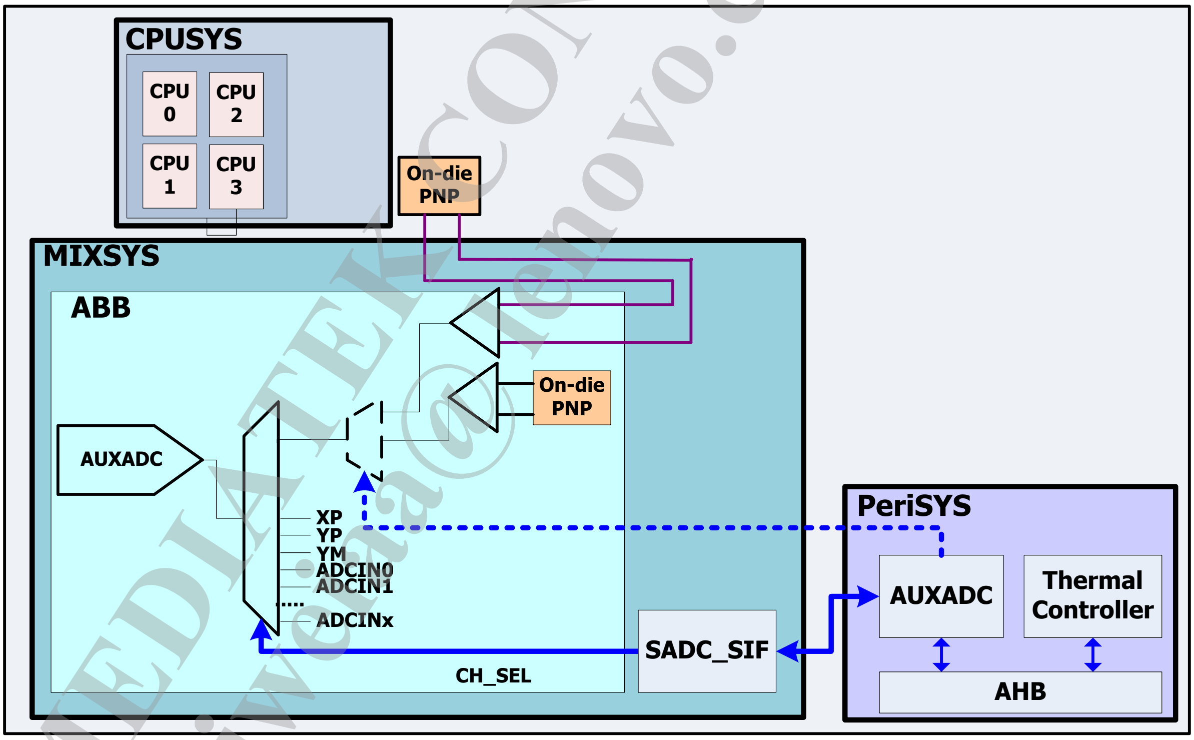


Figure 5-25. Block diagram of system temperature measurement

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei4@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

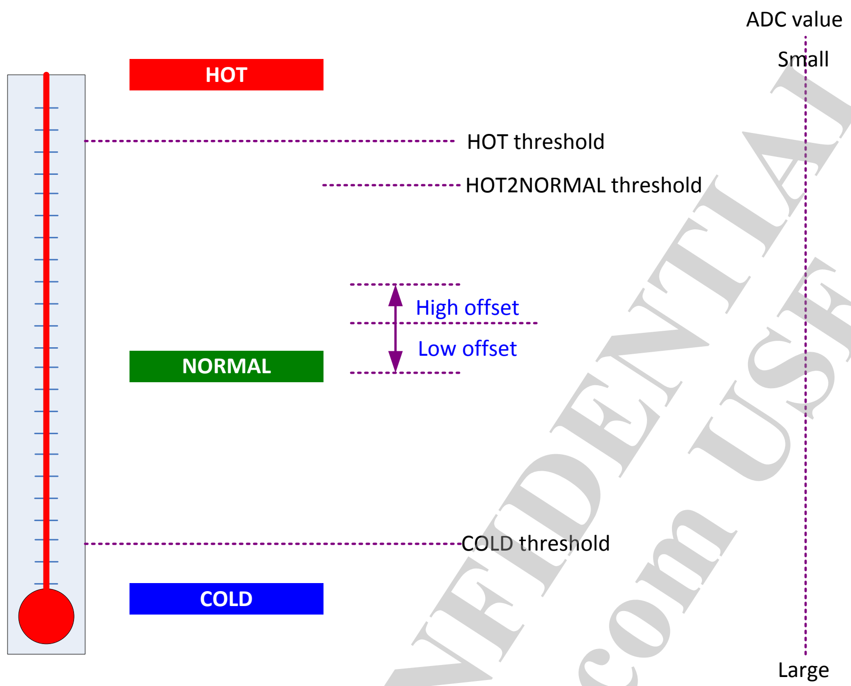


Figure 5-26. Block diagram of system temperature measurement

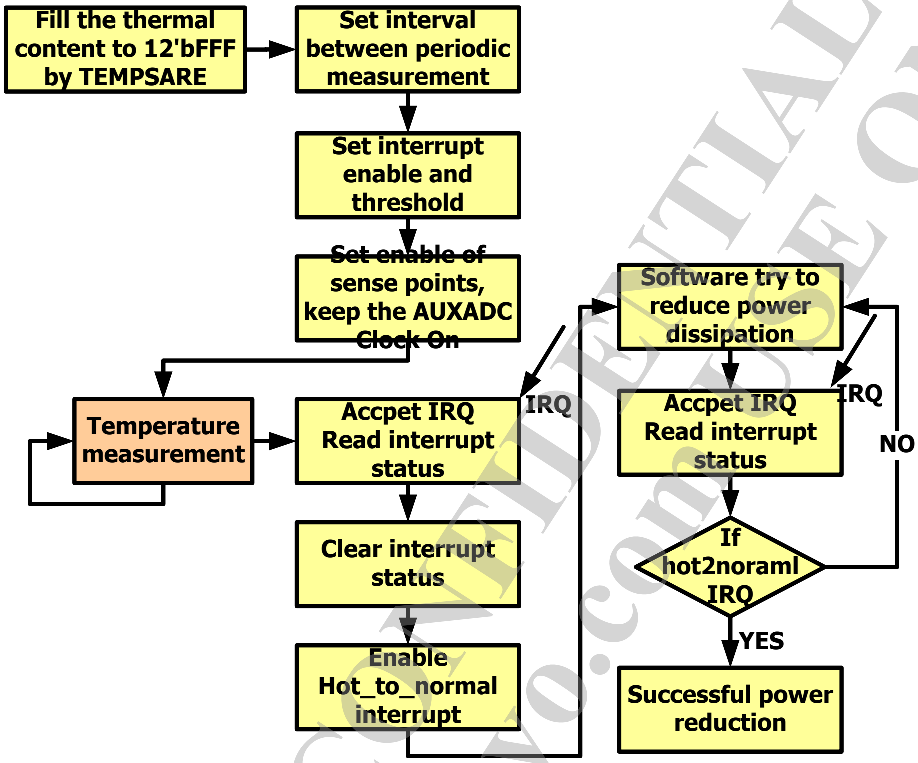
5.13.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.13 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.13.5 Programming Guide



:

Figure 5-27. Programming flow

1. Fill the thermal content to 12'bFFF by accessing TEMPSPARE.

vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL1, 'h0);
vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL2, 'h0);
vWriteREG(TEMPAHBPOLL, 'h0); // polling interval to check if temp sense is ready
vWriteREG(TEMPAHBTO, 'hFF); // Exceed this polling time, IRQ would be inserted
vWriteREG(TEMPSPARE0, 'h1FFF); // fill the TEMPSPARE0 register as 'h1FFF
vWriteREG(TEMPPNPMUXADDR, 32'hTS_CON1); // The adxadc mux address to select to Thermal channel, and please reference mixsys.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCENADDR, 32'TEMPSPARE1); // The adxadc enable address to trigger Thermal senser, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVALIDADDR, 32'hTEMPSPARE1); // The adxadc status address to check if Thermal senser reading is valid, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVOLTADDR, 32'hTEMPSPARE0); // The adxadc temperature address for the value read back from temp senser, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPRDCTRL, 'h0); // use TEMPSPARE0 as valid address
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVALIDMASK, 'h2c); // set adxadc valid polarity to 0
vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL0, 'h0F); // enable all sense points include the debug one
Wait until the content of TEMPIMMD are filled by 'hFFF

2. Set up interval between periodic temperature measurement, if the MODULE clock is 66MHz.

vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL1, 'h3FF); // counting unit is 1024*15.15ns=15.5 us
vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL2, 'h3FF); // sensing interval is 1024*15.5us=15.87 ms
vWriteREG(TEMPAHBPOLL, 'h0F); // polling interval to check if temp sense is ready
vWriteREG(TEMPAHBTO, 'hFF); // Exceed this polling time, IRQ would be inserted

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

vWriteREG(TEMPPNPMUXADDR, 32'hTS_CON1); // The adxadc mux address to select to Thermal channel, and please reference mixsys.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCENADDR, 32'hAUXADC_CON1); // The adxadc enable address to trigger Thermal senser, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVALIDADDR, 32'hAUXADC_CON3); // The adxadc status address to check if Thermal senser reading is valid, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVOLTADDR, 32'hAUXADC_DAT11); // The adxadc temperature address for the value read back from temp senser, please reference auxadc.doc
vWriteREG(TEMPRDCTRL, 'h0); // use AUXADC_DAT11 as valid address
vWriteREG(TEMPADCVALIDMASK, 'h2c); // set adxadc valid polarity to 0

3. Set up monitoring threshold and SPM wake up event.

vWriteREG(TEMPHTHRE, 'hxxx); // set hot threshold
vWriteREG(TEMPCTHRE, 'hxxx); // set cold threshold
vWriteREG(TEMPCTHRE, 'hxxx); // set hot to normal threshold
vWriteREG(TEMPPROTCTL, 'h20xxx); // set hot to wakeup event control
vWriteREG(TEMPPROTTC, 'hxxx); // set hot to HOT wakeup event
vWriteREG(TEMPMONINT, 'h8000001F); // enable interrupt

4. Enable sensing points.

vWriteREG(TEMPMONCTL0, 'h07); // enable all three sense points

5. Accept IRQ

vReadREG(TEMPMONINTSTS); // read interrupt and clear interrupt status

6. Read temperature readings (optional)

vReadREG(TEMPMSR0); // read temperature reading of sense point 0
vReadREG(TEMPMSR1); // read tempe
rature reading of sense point 1
vReadREG(TEMPMSR2); // read temperature reading of sense point 1

7. Release pause of periodic temperature measurement

vWriteREG(TEMPMSRCTL1, vReadREG(TEMPMSRCTL1) & 0xFFFE);

Immediate temperature measurement:

After each immediate is done, the software must disable the immediate mode.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

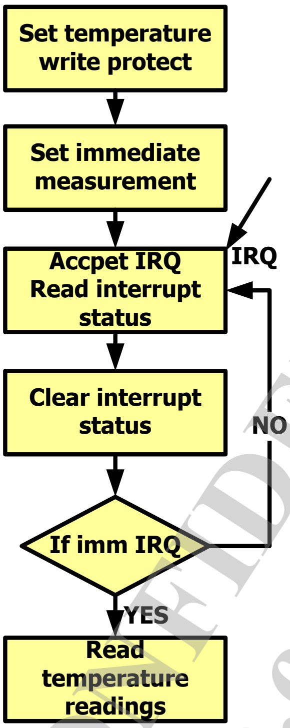


Figure 5-28. Immediate measurement programming flow

5.13.5.1 Interrupt Control Flow

The interrupt condition of high and low temperature monitoring is shown in Figure 5-29.

The software will accept interrupts while the following three conditions occur. The software determines which temperature sensor is to be monitored. Once the condition in any one of the three temperature sensors occurs, the interrupt will be issued.

The state machine is shown in Figure 5-30.

- Cold interrupt: When the temperature decreases to lower than the cold threshold form the normal temperature range, it means when the state of NORMAL transferred into the state of COLD.
- Hot interrupt: When the temperature increases to higher than the hot threshold from the temperature below the hot threshold.

The state of VERY_HOT indicates that temperature is higher than the hot threshold. The state of HOT1 indicates that the temperature is higher than the hot_to_normal threshold. NORAML state can not be transferred into VERY_HOT directly.

- Hot to normal temperature interrupt: When HOT2 state is transferred into the NORMAL state.

FOR riweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

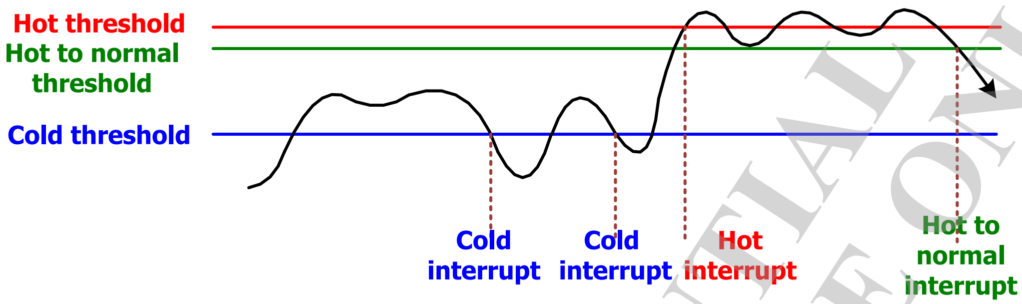


Figure 5-29. Interrupt condition of high/low temperature monitoring

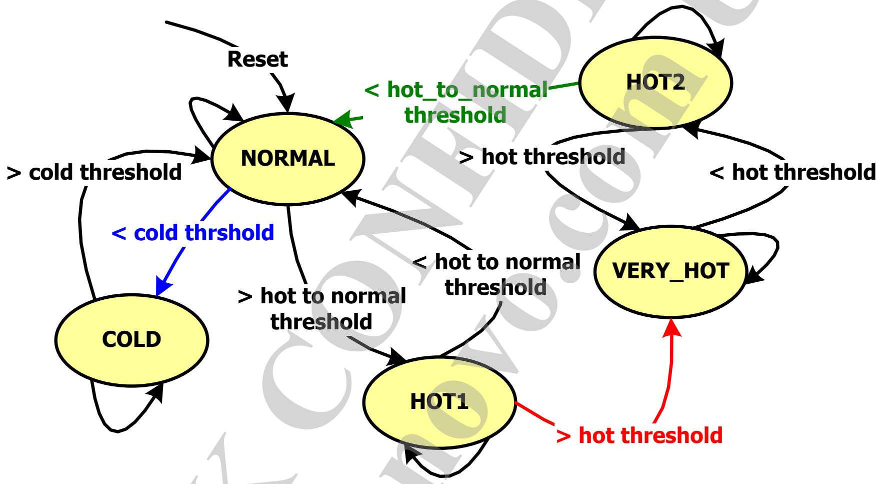


Figure 5-30. Finite state machine of high/low temperature monitoring

In Figure 5-30, when the software immediate measurement is enabled, the state will maintain the current state until the software disables the immediate mode. It is shown as the "*" mark.

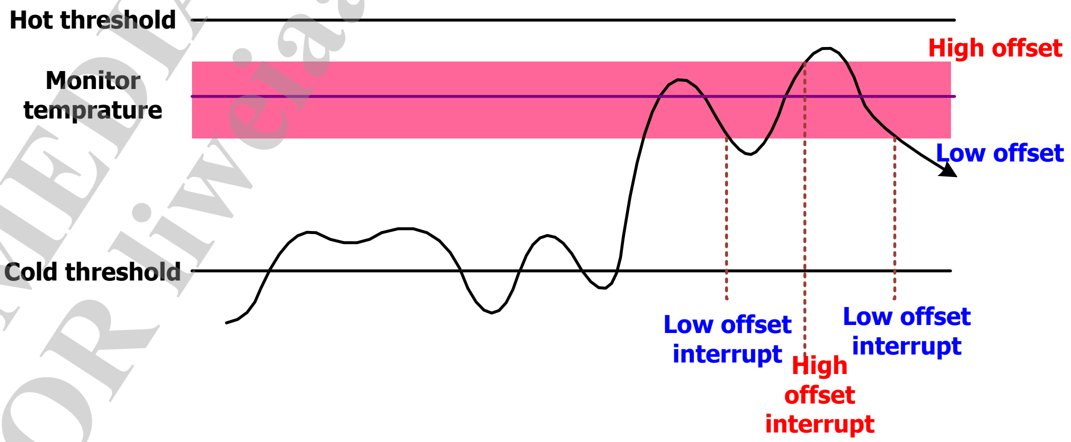


Figure 5-31. Interrupt condition of high/low offset monitoring

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

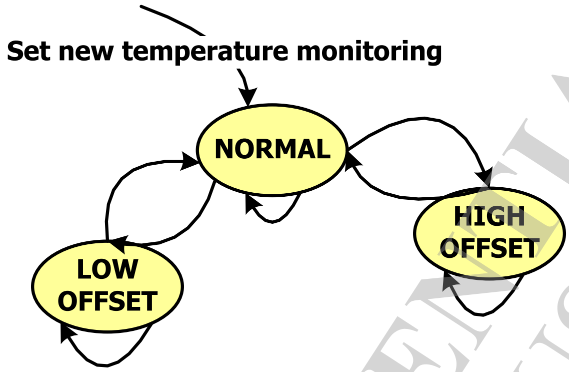


Figure 5-32. Finite state machine of high/low offset monitoring

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.14 IRTX

5.14.1 Introduction

IRTX module provides the "Consumer IR" feature. According to Wikipedia, *"Consumer IR, consumer infrared, or CIR, refers to a wide variety of devices employing the infrared electromagnetic spectrum for wireless communications. Most commonly found in television remote controls, infrared ports are equally ubiquitous in consumer electronics, such as PDAs, laptops, and computers. The functionality of CIR is as broad as the consumer electronics that carry it. For instance, a television remote control can convey a "channel up" command to the television, while a computer might be able to surf the internet solely via CIR. The type, speed, bandwidth, and power of the transmitted information depends on the particular CIR protocol employed."*

MediaTek's IRTX provides three main stream CIR protocols: NEC, RC5 and RC6. It also supports Android IR API in which the OS version is above KitKat.

5.14.2 NEC Protocol

5.14.2.1 Introduction

The NEC protocol uses pulse distance encoding of the bits. Each pulse is a 560µs long 38kHz carrier burst (about 21 cycles). A logical "1" takes 2.25ms to transmit, while a logical "0" takes only half of that, i.e. 1.125ms, as shown in Figure 5-33. The recommended carrier duty-cycle is 1/4 or 1/3.

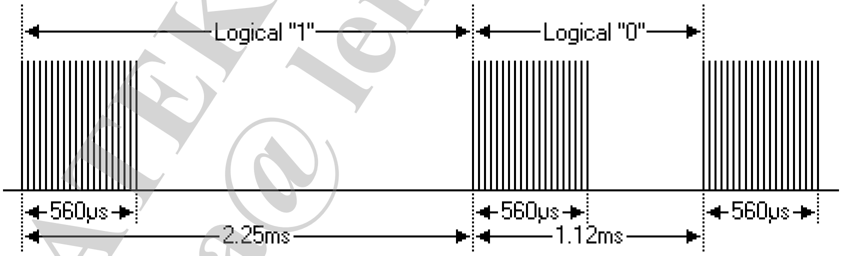


Figure 5-33. Logic representation for NEC protocol

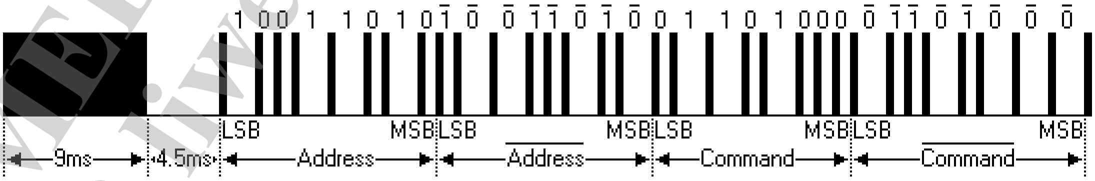


Figure 5-34. Pulse train in transmission of NEC protocol

The picture above shows the typical pulse train of the NEC protocol. With this protocol, the LSB is transmitted first. In this case Address $59 and Command $16 is transmitted. A message is started by a

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

9ms AGC burst, which is used to set up the gain of the earlier IR receivers. This AGC burst is then followed by a 4.5ms space, which is then followed by the Address and Command. Address and Command are transmitted twice. In the second time, all bits are inverted and can be used for verification of the received message. The total transmission time is constant because every bit is repeated with its inverted length.

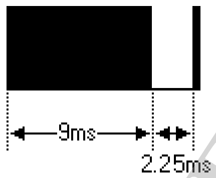


Figure 5-35. A message is started by a 9ms AGC burst

A command is transmitted only once even when the key on the remote control remains pressed. Every 110ms a repeat code is transmitted for as long as the key remains down. This repeated code is simply a 9ms AGC pulse followed by a 2.25ms space and a 560µs burst.

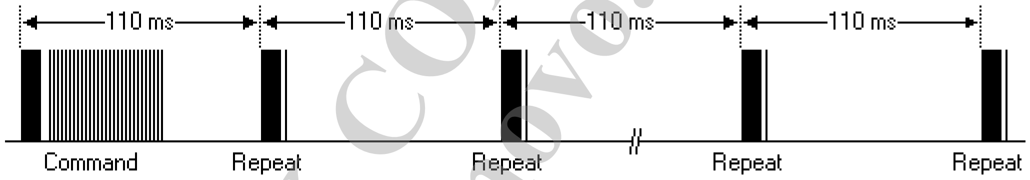


Figure 5-36. A repeat code is transmitted every 110ms

5.14.2.2 Features

- 8-bit address and 8-bit command length
- Address and command are transmitted twice for reliability.
- Pulse distance modulation
- 38kHz carrier frequency
- 1.125ms or 2.25ms bit time

5.14.3 Philips RC-5 Protocol

5.14.3.1 Introduction

The protocol uses bi-phase modulation (or so-called Manchester coding) of a 36kHz IR carrier frequency. All bits are of equal length to 1.778ms in this protocol, with half of the bit time filled with a burst of the 36kHz carrier and the other half being idle. A logical zero is represented by a burst in the

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

first half of the bit time. A logical one is represented by a burst in the second half of the bit time. The pulse/pause ratio of the 36kHz carrier frequency is 1/3 or 1/4 to reduce power consumption.

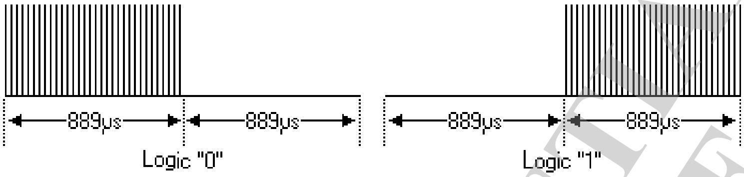


Figure 5-37. Coding method for RC5 protocol

5.14.3.2 Features

- 5-bit address and 6-bit command length (7 command bits for RC5X)
- Bi-phase coding (aka Manchester coding)
- 36kHz carrier frequency
- 1.778ms constant bit time (64 cycles of 36 kHz)
- Manufacturer Philips

5.14.4 Philips RC-6 Protocol

5.14.4.1 Introduction

RC-6 is the successor of the RC-5 protocol. Like RC-5 the new RC-6 protocol is also defined by Philips. It is a very versatile and well defined protocol. Because of this versatility its original definition is many pages long. Here we only summarize the most important properties of this protocol. RC-6 signals are modulated on a 36kHz Infra Red carrier. The duty cycle of this carrier has to be between 25% and 50%.

Data are modulated using Manchester coding; this means that each bit (or symbol) has both a mark and space in the output signal. If the symbol is a "1", the first half of the bit time will be a mark and the second half a space. If the symbol is a "0", the first half of the bit time will be a space and the second half a mark.

The main timing unit is 1t, which is 16 times the carrier period (1/36k*16 = 444µs). With RC-6, total different symbols are defined:

- The leader pulse has a 6t mark time (2.666ms) and 2t space time (0.889ms). This leader pulse is normally used to set up the gain of the IR receiver unit.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

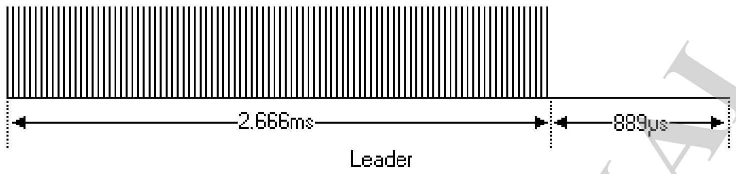


Figure 5-38. Lead pulse in RC6 protocol

- Normal bits have 1t mark time (0.444ms) and 1t space time (0.444ms). "0" and "1" are encoded by the position of the mark and space in the bit time.

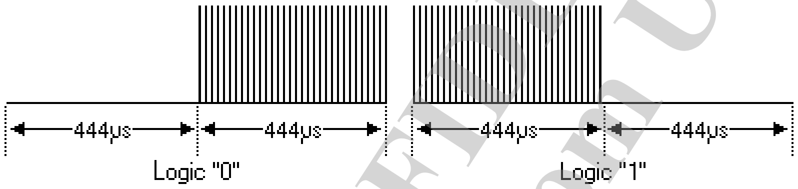


Figure 5-39. Coding method for RC6 protocol

- Trailer bits have 2t mark time (0.889ms) and 2t space time (0.889ms). "0" and "1" are encoded by the position of the mark and space in the bit time.

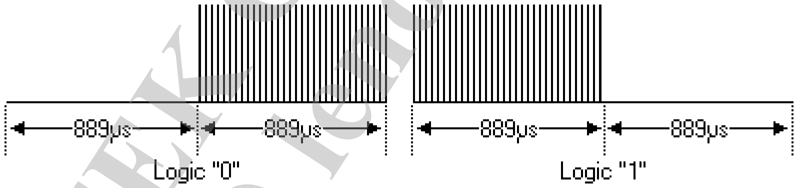


Figure 5-40. Trailer pulse in RC6 protocol

The leader and trailer symbols are only used in the header field of the messages.

5.14.4.2 Features

- Different modes of operation, depending on the intended use
- Dedicated Philips modes and OEM modes
- Variable command length, depending on the operation mode
- Bi-phase coding (aka Manchester coding)
- 35kHz carrier frequency
- Manufacturer Philips

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.14.5 Register Definition

See chapater 3.14 of *“MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table”*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.15 IrDA

5.15.1 Introduction

IrDA framer, which is shown in Figure 5-41, is implemented to reduce the CPU loading for IrDA transmission. The IrDA framer functional block can be divided into two parts: (1) the transmitting part and (2) the receiving part. The transmitter part performs BOFs addition, byte stuffing, the addition of 16-bits FCS, and EOF appendence. The receiving part executes BOFs removal, ESC character removal, CRC checking, and EOF detection. In addition, the framer will perform 3/16 modulation and demodulation to connect to the IR transceiver. The transmitter and receiver need the DMA channel.

5.15.2 Features

- The IrDA framer supports IrDA SIR, MIR and FIR modes of operation.
- SIR mode includes operation from 9600bps ~ 115200bps.
- MIR includes operation at 567000bps or 1152000bps
- FIR mode includes operation at 4Mbps.

5.15.3 Block Diagram

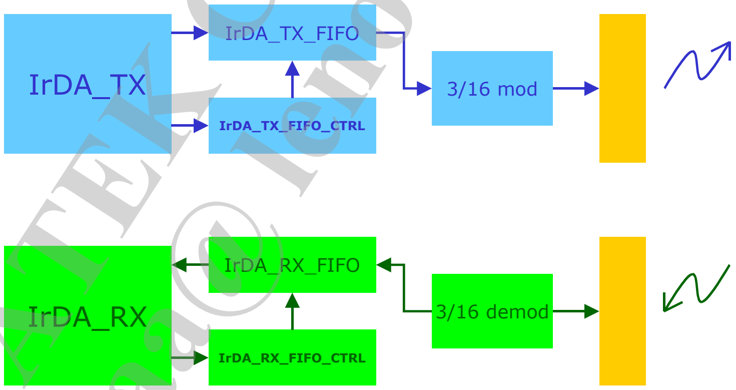


Figure 5-41. Block diagram of IrDA

5.15.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.15 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lhweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.16 Audio System

5.16.1 Introduction

The audio system provides the audio data exchange ability between AP, internal modem and external components. The interfaces are listed as the following:

- Master/Slave I2S input interface with SRC x 1
- Master I2S output x 2
- Master I2S input x 1
- Slave PCM interface for internal MODEM x 1
- Master/Slave PCM interface with SRC for internal/external MODEM x 1
- Proprietary audio interface for MTK PMIC x 1
- PCM/I2S merged interface for MTK connectivity IC x 1

5.16.2 Features

- Audio playing
  - Supports 8, 11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, and 48kHz sampling rate output
  - Supports playing stereo data
- Audio recording
  - Supports 8, 16, 32, 48kHz sampling rate recording
  - Supports stereo recording
- Speech
  - Supports dual MIC
  - Supports 8/16kHz sampling rate recording
  - Supports side tone filter
  - Master/Slave PCM interface with SRC function
- I2S
  - Supports master/slave input mode
  - Supports master output mode
  - Supports 16/24-bit stereo data
  - Supports 8, 11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, and 192kHz sampling rate in master mode
  - Supports EIAJ/I2S format
- PCM/I2S merged interface
  - 4-pin interface for concurrently supporting I2S and PCM
  - PCM supports 8k/16k Hz sampling rate
  - I2S supports 32, 44.1, and 48 kHz sampling rate
- Hardware gain function with higher resolution to enhance the audio quality and flexibility of interconnection
- Flexible interconnection system to make data exchange between interfaces without intervention of CPU

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

5.16.3 Block Diagram

The diagram and table below show the flexibility on the interconnection between audio interfaces.

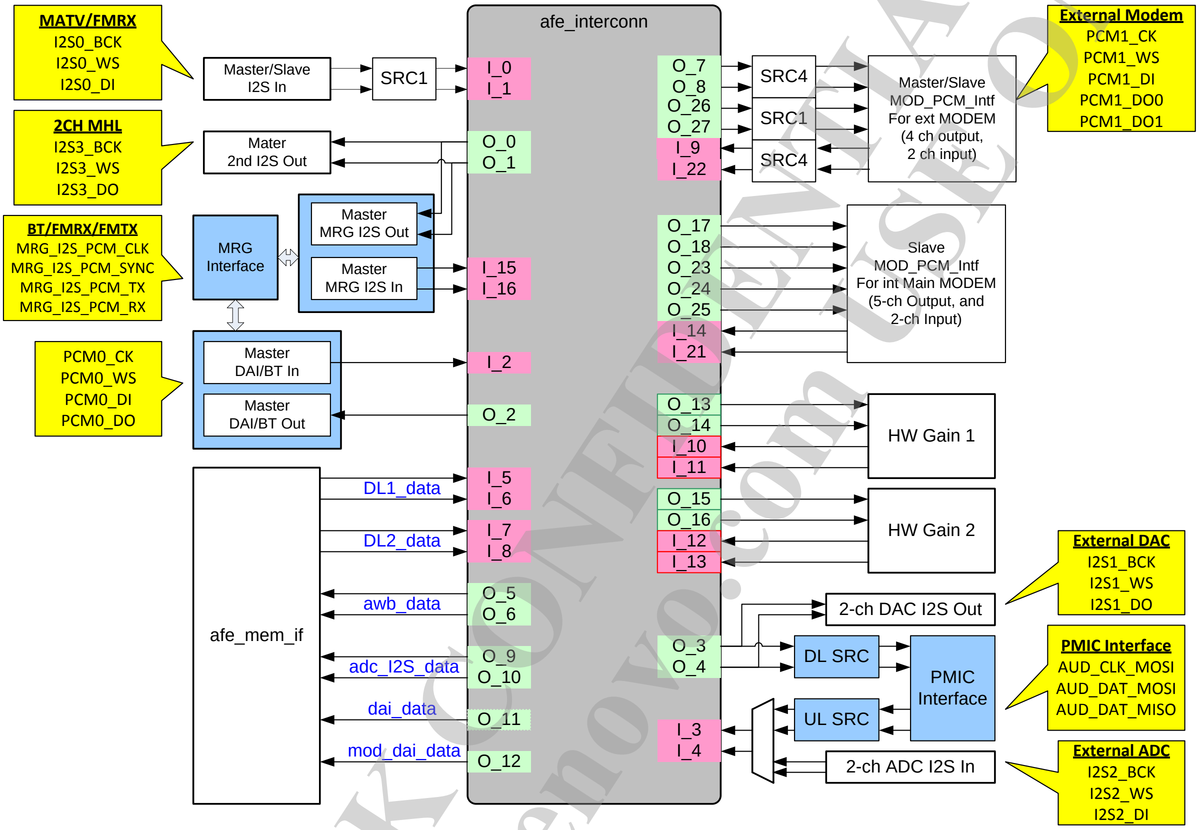


Figure 5-42. Block diagram of audio sys

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 5-5. Interface of audio sys

Input	Output	O_00	O_01	O_02	O_03	O_04	O_05	O_06	O_07	O_08	O_09	O_10	O_11	O_12	O_13	O_14	O_15	O_16	O_17	O_18	~~O_19~~	~~O_20~~	O_21	O_22	O_23	O_24	O_25
		I2S_2_LO	I2S_2_RO	DAI_O	DAC_I2S_LO	DAC_I2S_RO	MEM_AWB_LO	MEM_AWB_RO	MOD_DAI_LO	MOD_DAI_RO	MEM_ADC_LO	MEM_ADC_RO	MEM_DAI_O	MEM_MOD_DAI_O	GAIN1_LO	GAIN1_RO	GAIN2_LO	GAIN2_RO	SPCM_LO	SPCM_RO	~~I2S_3_LO~~	~~I2S_3_RO~~	MEM_ADC2_LO	MEM_ADC2_RO	SPCM2_LO	SPCM2_RO	SPCM3_LO
I_00	I2S_I_L	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	S	S	S	S	x	x	S	S	RS	RS	S	S	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	S	x	S	x	S
I_01	I2S_I_R	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	RS	S	S	S	S	x	x	S	S	RS	RS	S	S	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	x	S	x	S	x
I_02	DAI_I	S	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	S	x	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	S	~~x~~	~~x~~	x	x	x	x	x
I_03	ADC_I2S_I_L	S	S	RS	S	S	S	x	S	x	S	x	x	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	~~S~~	~~S~~	S	x	S	x	S
I_04	ADC_I2S_I_R	S	S	RS	S	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	x	S	S	S	S	x	S	~~S~~	~~S~~	x	S	x	S	x
I_05	MEM_DL1_LI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	S	x	x	x	x
I_06	MEM_DL1_RI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	x	S	x	x	x
I_07	MEM_DL2_LI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	S	x	x	x	x
I_08	MEM_DL2_RI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	x	S	x	x	x
I_09	MOD_DAI_I	S	S	S	S	S	S	x	x	x	S	x	x	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	~~S~~	~~S~~	x	x	S	S	S
I_10	GAIN1_LI	RS	x	RS	RS	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	x	x	x	x	S	x	~~S~~	~~x~~	S	S	S	x	S
I_11	GAIN1_RI	x	RS	RS	x	RS	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	x	x	x	x	S	~~x~~	~~S~~	S	S	x	S	x
I_12	GAIN2_LI	RS	x	RS	RS	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	x	x	x	x	S	x	~~S~~	~~x~~	S	S	x	x	x
I_13	GAIN2_RI	x	RS	RS	x	RS	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	x	x	x	x	S	~~x~~	~~S~~	S	S	x	x	x
I_14	SPCM_I	S	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	S	S	x	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	x	~~S~~	~~S~~	x	x	x	x	x
I_15	MRG_I2S_LI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	x	x	S	x	x	x	S	S	RS	S	x	x	~~x~~	~~x~~	S	x	x	x	x
I_16	MRG_I2S_RI	RS	RS	RS	RS	RS	x	RS	x	x	x	S	x	x	S	S	S	RS	x	x	~~x~~	~~x~~	x	S	x	x	x
I_17	ADC2_I2S_I_L	S	x	RS	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	~~S~~	~~S~~	S	x	S	x	S
I_18	ADC2_I2S_I_R	x	S	RS	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	~~S~~	~~S~~	x	S	x	S	x
~~I_19~~	~~MEM_DL1_2_LI~~	~~RS~~	~~x~~	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~
~~I_20~~	~~MEM_DL1_2_RI~~	~~x~~	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	~~RS~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~	~~S~~	~~x~~
I_21	SPCM2_I	S	S	S	S	S	x	S	S	S	x	S	x	S	S	S	S	S	x	x	~~S~~	~~S~~	x	x	x	x	x

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweijia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

5.16.4 Register Definition

See chapater 3.16 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6 Multimedia Subsystem

6.1 Multimedia Subsystem Configuration

6.1.1 Introduction

The multimedia subsystem contains multimedia controller, multimedia data path v2.0 (MDP 2.0) and display (DISP). The multimedia controller includes bus fabric control, Smart Memory Interface (SMI) control, memory access second level arbiter, and multimedia configuration. It plays the key role to handle different handshaking between infra subsystem, video subsystem, image subsystem and G3D subsystem. MDP 2.0 is the time sharing pipeline data flow controller to process resizing and rotation by memory access. The display pipeline outputs pixels to display interface with overlay, color enhancement, adaptive ambient light processing, color correction and gamma correction.

6.1.2 Features

The multimedia subsystem has the following features:

- APB bus fabric control center
- Smart Multimedia Interface (SMI) controller
- Second level arbiter for memory access request
- Multimedia Data Path v2.0. It has one read DMA, two resizers, one 2D-sharpness enhancement, one write DMA and one write rotator
- Two display pipe lines. One of the pipelines has its own read DMA, overlay, color engine, adaptive ambient light processing, color correction, gamma correction and display interface controller as basic components. The other one only includes read DMA and display interface controller.
- Supports 3D display
- Supports color enhancement engine
- Supports adaptive ambient light processing for backlight power saving and sunlight visibility improvement
- Supports color correction and gamma correction for accurate image reproduction
- Supports concurrent dual display output
- Display output interface: 1 DSI and 1 DPI.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.1.3 Block Diagram

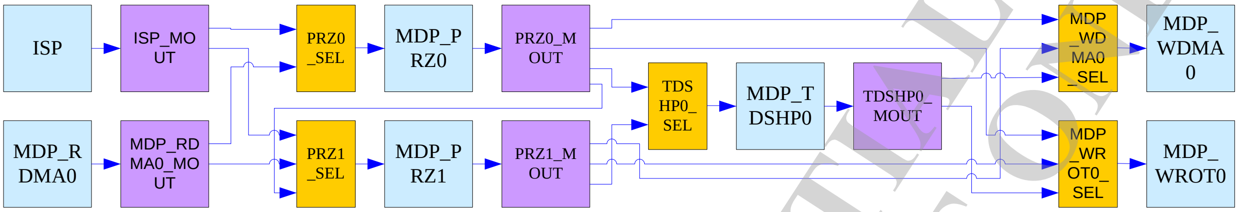


Figure 6-1. MDP function blocks of multimedia partition

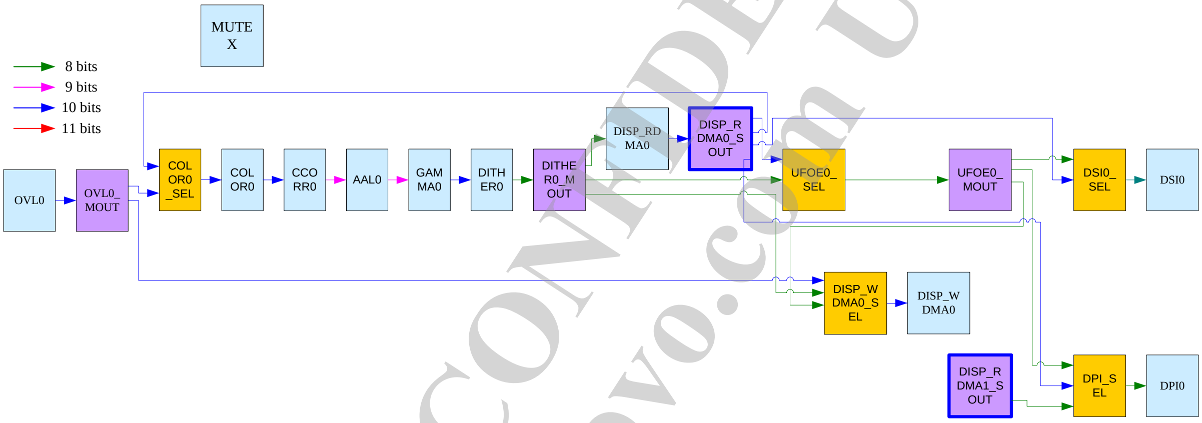


Figure 6-2. DISP function blocks of multimedia partition

6.1.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.1 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.1.5 Programming Guide

Before we introduce the programming model, two basic operation modes and one terminology "STREAM" must be explained first to make the programming model reasonable. The basic operation modes are

1. Single mode:
   In this mode, one SW trigger only makes modules to process one frame. Usually, it is a memory-in-memory-output operation (e.g. memory -> RDMA0 -> PRZ0 -> WDMA0 -> memory), or an operation output to the display device with frame buffer (e.g. memory -> RDMA0-> color0-> gamma -> DSI0. SW must wait for one frame processing to be done before triggering the next frame.

2. Refresh mode:

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

In this mode, pixels must be outputted to the display device without frame buffer (e.g. DSI video mode and DPI). After a data path is configured as refresh mode and starts, it will process frame-by-frame automatically until the data path stops. The process follows the refresh timing (vsync, hsync and data enable) of the display output interface.

In the refresh mode, the display output interface refresh timing is asynchronous to software, and we must guarantee each module receives complete settings for one frame when it starts to process this frame. For this reason, a mutex between software and hardware is used to achieve this.

A mutex is used to specify a STREAM and to guarantee a complete setting of this STREAM is seen by modules in this STREAM.

- A STREAM means a data stream from Source to Sink.
- Source can be any module with read memory capability, which is RDMA or OVL.
- Sink can be any module with capability of outputting to external display devices or to memory, which is DSI0, DPI or WDMA/WROT.

In multimedia subsys, there are at most 8 STREAMs concurrently. Therefore, we provide 10 mutexes. Every mutex's function and register interface are the same.

Mutex has the following attributes, which can be set in dispsys_mutex.

- Source of SOF (Start Of Frame)
  It means the Sink of this STREAM is which module. Due to the display timing of a STREAM, when to start a frame/when to end a frame, is decided by the Sink, and the display subsys must know it to route the SOF signal to all modules in this mutex.
- Which modules are in the STREAM.

Because one mutex describes one STREAM, there is a constraint that one module can be set in only one mutex. In other words, one module cannot be set in more than one mutex.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.2 SMI_COMMON

6.2.1 Introduction

SMI (Smart Multimedia Interface) is a simple bus protocol for multimedia engines to access system memories, including off-chip and on-chip memories. As in the block diagram, multimedia engines access EMI and MM memory through the SMI bus. The MM memory is part of SMI controller and designed to have short accessing latency and high bandwidth for multimedia engines. From the perspective of SMI, the multimedia engines are masters of the bus, and SMI itself is the slave of the bus. Furthermore, the MM memory is regarded as internal memory and EMI which is a type of external memory.

In this document, we focus on SMI_COMMON.

6.2.2 Features

- Auto clock gating for power reduction
- Arbitration among request from local arbiters to EMI
- Bandwidth/outstanding limiter
- Performance monitor
- Command throttling for reducing latency

6.2.3 Block Diagram

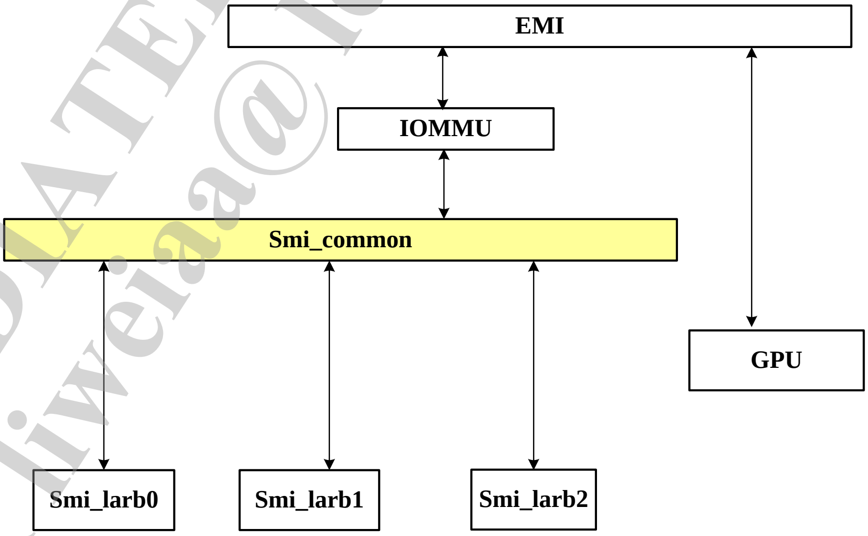


Figure 6-3. SMI_COMMON and neighbor blocks

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.2.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.2 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.3 SMI_LARB

6.3.1 Introduction

The SMI (Smart Multimedia Interface) is a MediaTek proprietary interface used in multimedia systems. The SMI bus fabric deals with the complex bus interconnection and memory access transaction in a high-performance multimedia-rich system. The SMI bus fabric is separated into 2 parts for hierarchical arbitration. The SMI local arbiter is used for the first level arbitration for part of multimedia engines. The granted masters from SMI local arbiters are arbitrated at the second level arbiter at SMI common arbiter with other masters in other multimedia sub-systems.

6.3.2 Features

- 1st level arbitration of multimedia engines
- GMC/SMI protocol to AXI protocol conversion
- Supports bandwidth regulation for each master
- Performance monitor enables performance index measurement

6.3.3 Block Diagram

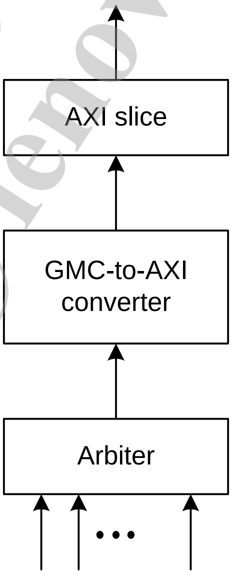


Figure 6-4. SMI local arbiter block diagram

6.3.4 Register Definition

The base addresses of local arbiters are listed below.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-1. Base addresses of SMI local arbiters

Module	Base address
SMI_LARB0	0x1401_6000
SMI_LARB1	0x1601_0000
SMI_LARB2	0x1500_1000

The following register table is for SMI_LARB0. Replace the base address 0x14016000 with the base address of other SMI local arbiters when you are to program other SMI local arbiters.

See chapater 4.3 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.4 CAM

6.4.1 Introduction

Camera receives RAW and SOC sensor image data after processing of images and outputs YUV data to DRAM.

6.4.2 Features

The camera incorporates a feature-rich image signal processor to connect with a variety of image sensor components. This processor consists of timing generated unit (TG), lens/sensor compensation unit and image process unit

- Interface
  - Main cam: MIPI 4 lane/parallel interface
  - Sub cam: MIPI 2 lane/parallel interface
- Image capture resolution: Up to 13M
- Video recording resolution: Up to 720P
- Raw dump frame rate is 13M@28fps
- Supports video snapshot (up to 13M sensor), which enables user capture full size image while recording video.
- Image processing
  - Bad pixel compensation
  - Lens shading compensation
  - Demosaic
  - Color clipping
  - Gamma correction
  - Edge enhancement
  - Noise reduction with large kernel
  - Preference color adaptation
- 3A statistics and correction
- Flicker detection
- Electronic image stabilization for video
- High quality resizers

6.4.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.4 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR hwenaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.5 SENINF_TOP (Sensor Interface)

6.5.1 Introduction

The seninf_top module transfers sensor signal into image pixels and pass them to ISP.

6.5.2 Features

- MIPI interface
  - Two 4-lanes MIPI interfaces
  - Virtual channel/Data type data interleaving
- Serial interface
  - 1 serial interface
- Parallel interface
  - 1 parallel interface
- Provides 3 sensor master clocks

6.5.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.5 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.6 MDP_RDMA

6.6.1 Introduction

MDP RDMA is used to read images of multiple source format in memory and then output in scan-line sequence to the following engine. It supports several functions, such as

- Input image clipping, as illustrated in Figure 6-5.
- Different input formats, as listed in Table 6-2.
- Color conversion for RGB to YUV.
- Chroma upsample for cosited or non-consited YUV422/420 source

To support larger image size with cost burden, tile mode scheme is applied in MDP. MDP_RDMA is fully tile mode ready and can fulfill the single or tile mode operation. It also has a 3x3 color conversion inside. When the input is in RGB domain and output is in YCbCr domain, the 3x3 color conversion should be set well to get the correct data.

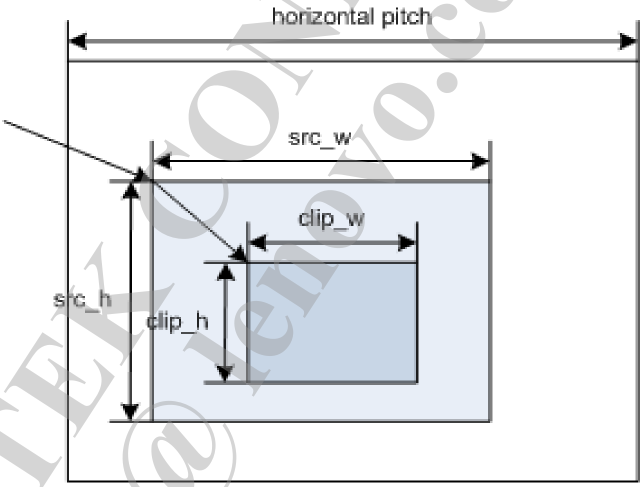


Figure 6-5. Support clipping from source frame buffer

Table 6-2. Input format list

Input domain	Supported format
YCbCr	YCbCr_420_P_SW YCbCr_420_SP_SW YCbCr_420_SP_HW_BLOCK YCbCr_420_SP_HW_BLOCK_INTERLACE YCbCr_422_P_SW YCbCr_422_SP_SW YCbCr_422_I_SW YCbCr_422_I_HW_BLOCK Y Only
RGB	RGB565

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

Input domain	Supported format
	RGB(BGR)888 ARGB(RGBA)8888 XRGB(RGBX)8888

6.6.2 Features

- Supports multiple format of input images
- Supports up to HD resolution 1280x800@60 fps without tile mode
- Supports YUV420/422 scanline 1/2/3 planes and RGB 16/24/32 bits
- Supports arbitrary byte swap for YUV or RGB source
- Supports cropping/clipping.
- Supports chroma up-sample filter to YUV444
- Supports default optimized or programmable RGB2YUV
- Tile mode ready; supports source width up to 131072 pixels
- Direct link to RSZ with YUV 444

6.6.3 Block Diagram

The internal pipeline of MDP_RDMA is shown in the following diagram, the input is from external memory via SMI read port, and output is direct linked to the next engine depending on the dispsys data-path setting, e.g. RSZ. There is also APB interface for S/W control, following the mutex protocol for advanced S/W control from disp_mutex.

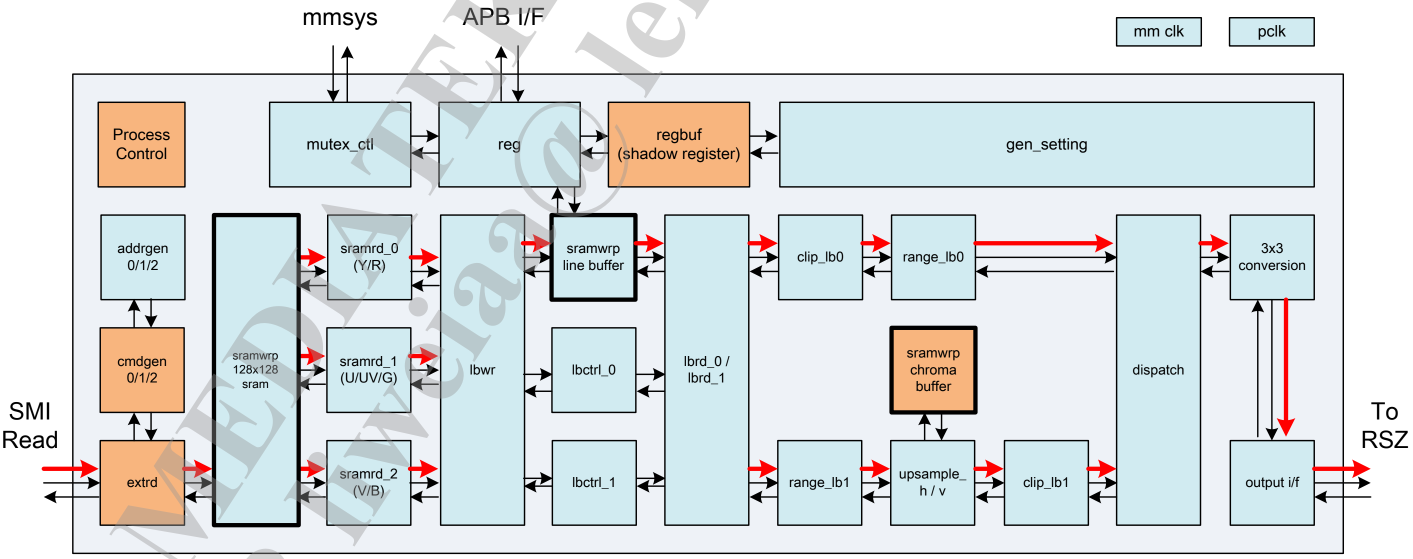


Figure 6-6. Block diagram of DISP MDP_RDMA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.6.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.6 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.6.5 Programming Guide

To enable MDP_RDMA to read a frame, SW can be programmed by the following method. Here we offer a quick example: With an YCbCr_420_P_SW 1920x1080 frame provided in DRAM, MDP_RDMA will try to clip it into 256x256 as the following example settings:

1. Release reset and enable all interrupt
   DISP_ROT_RESET = 0x0000_0000
   DISP_ROT_INTERRUPT_ENABLE = 0x0000_0007
2. Set up controls to determine the behavior of MDP_RDMA.
   DISP_ROT_CON = 0x0000_0000
3. Set up SMI configuration for performance issues.
   DISP_ROT_GMCIF_CON = 0x0000_1771
4. Set up input format.
   DISP_ROT_SRC_CON = 0x0000_0000
5. Set up base address 0 for the first plane of the source frame. If the source frame contains more than one plane, base address 1 and base address 2 should be set as well. Note that the offset of start address is relative to operations. Refer to appendix for the start address offset cases.
   DISP_ROT_SRC_BASE_0 = 0x0007_7880
   DISP_ROT_SRC_BASE_1 = 0x0080_6c40
   DISP_ROT_SRC_BASE_2 = 0x00A0_1040
6. Calculate the byte number of the line pitch. It is the distance from the first byte of the current line to the first byte of the next line. The value for sub frame is required for multiple planar source.
   DISP_ROT_MF_BKGD_SIZE_IN_BYTE = 0x0000_0780
   DISP_ROT_SF_BKGD_SIZE_IN_BYTE = 0x0000_0780
7. Set up the width and the height of the source frame before it is rotated.
   DISP_ROT_MF_SRC_SIZE = 0x0100_0100
8. Set up the clip size if necessary.
   DISP_ROT_MF_CLIP_SIZE = 0x0100_0100
9. Set up offset in source format if necessary.
   DISP_ROT_MF_OFFSET_1 = 0x0000_0000
10. Set up option for RGB to YUV color transform control registers and parameters if necessary.
    DISP_ROT_TRANSFORM_0 = 0x0000_0000
11. Assert ROTEN to enable MDP_RDMA to wait for update of the shadow register.
    DISP_ROT_EN = 0x0000_0001
12. Assert register update to start operation of MDP_RDMA. This control signal comes from dispsys mutex control.

FOR lineia@lenovo.com USE ONLY
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

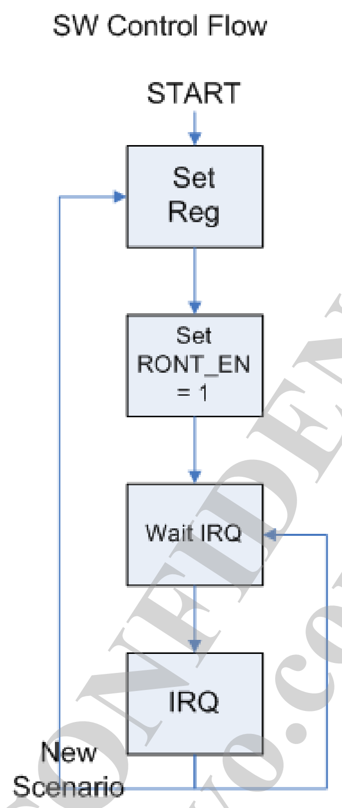


Figure 6-7. SW control flow

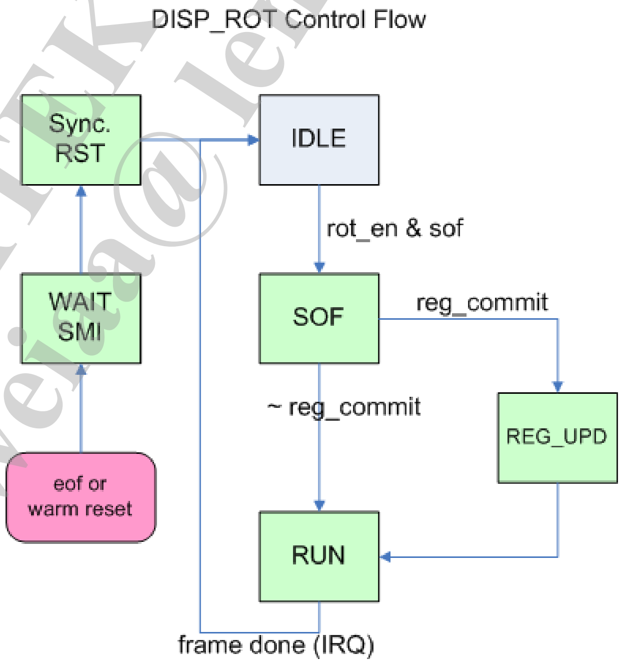


Figure 6-8. HW FSM and mutex control flow

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

6.7 MDP RSZ

6.7.1 Introduction

There are two resizer modules for MT6737 MDP, including MDP_RSZ0 and MDP_RSZ1. The algorithm of each may be slightly different for different project requirements. The table lists the corresponding algorithm spec. Table 6-3 shows the functional specification of MDP_RSZ0 and MDP_RSZ1. MDP_RSZ0 and MDP_RSZ1 scale for multiple purposes in MDP 2.0 structure, mainly for generating image for display, video codec, jpeg codec and FD. Digital zoom is accomplished by MDP_RSZ0 or MDP_RSZ1 in MDP 2.0. MDP_RSZ0 and MDP_RSZ1 supports YUV444 input and YUV444 output.

Table 6-4 shows the hardware specifications of MDP_RSZ0 and MDP_RSZ1. They support three scaling algorithms including 6-tap FIR, 4n-tap cubic accumulation and n-tap source accumulation. The maximum image width is 544.

Table 6-3. Functional specifications of resizers

	MDP_RSZ0	MDP_RSZ1
Input data format	8-bit YUV444 (unsigned)	8-bit YUV444 (unsigned)
Output data format	8-bit YUV444 (unsigned)	8-bit YUV444 (unsigned)
Scaling ratio	Between 1/128x and 64x	Between 1/128x and 64x
Crop function	Supported	Supported
Function	1. Digital zoom 2. MDP general-purpose resizing	1. Digital zoom 2. MDP general-purpose resizing
Supported width (OTF)	N/A	N/A
Supported width (tile mode)	6tap: 544 ntap: 544 4ntap:272	6tap: 544 ntap: 544 4ntap:272

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-4. Hardware specifications of resizers

	MDP_RSZ0	MDP_RSZ1
Luma interpolation method (H)	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 4n tap CA (3) n tap SA	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 4n tap CA (3) n tap SA
Luma interpolation method (V)	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 4n tap CA (3) n tap SA	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 4n tap CA (3) n tap SA
Chroma interpolation method (H)	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 2n tap TA (3) n tap SA	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 2n tap TA (3) n tap SA
Chroma interpolation method (V)	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 2n tap TA (3) n tap SA	(1) 6 tap FIR (2) 2n tap TA (3) n tap SA
Interpolation order	H->V (xn tap) V->H (6 tap)	H->V (xn tap) V->H (6 tap)
Line buffer (frame mode)	N/A	N/A
Line buffer (tile mode)	272x48x6 (Logical) -> 136x96x6	272x48x6 (Logical) -> 136x96x6

6.7.2 Theory of Operations

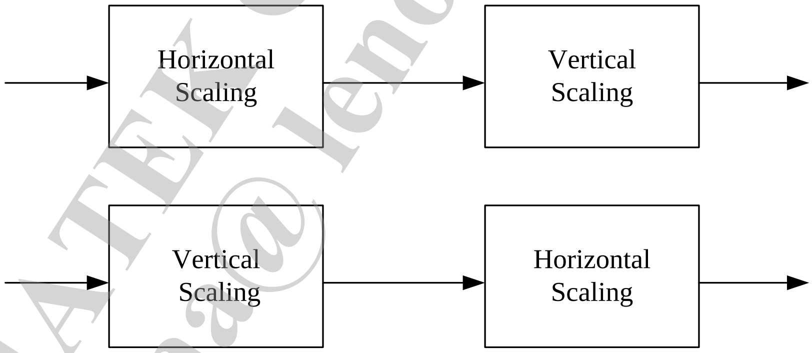


Figure 6-9. Separate 1D FIR operaiton

Basically, the rescaling procedure is composed of two separate 1D FIR operations (see Figure 6-9). There are three major types of 1D FIR operation, 6 tap FIR, 4n tap cubic accumulation and n tap source accumulation. These three algorithms have different rescaling characters and tap numbers. 6 tap is suitable for up-scaling and down-scaling (1X~1/2X). It is a fixed 6 tap FIR operation and needs 18-line buffer to do vertical scaling operation (see Figure 6-10).

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiad@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

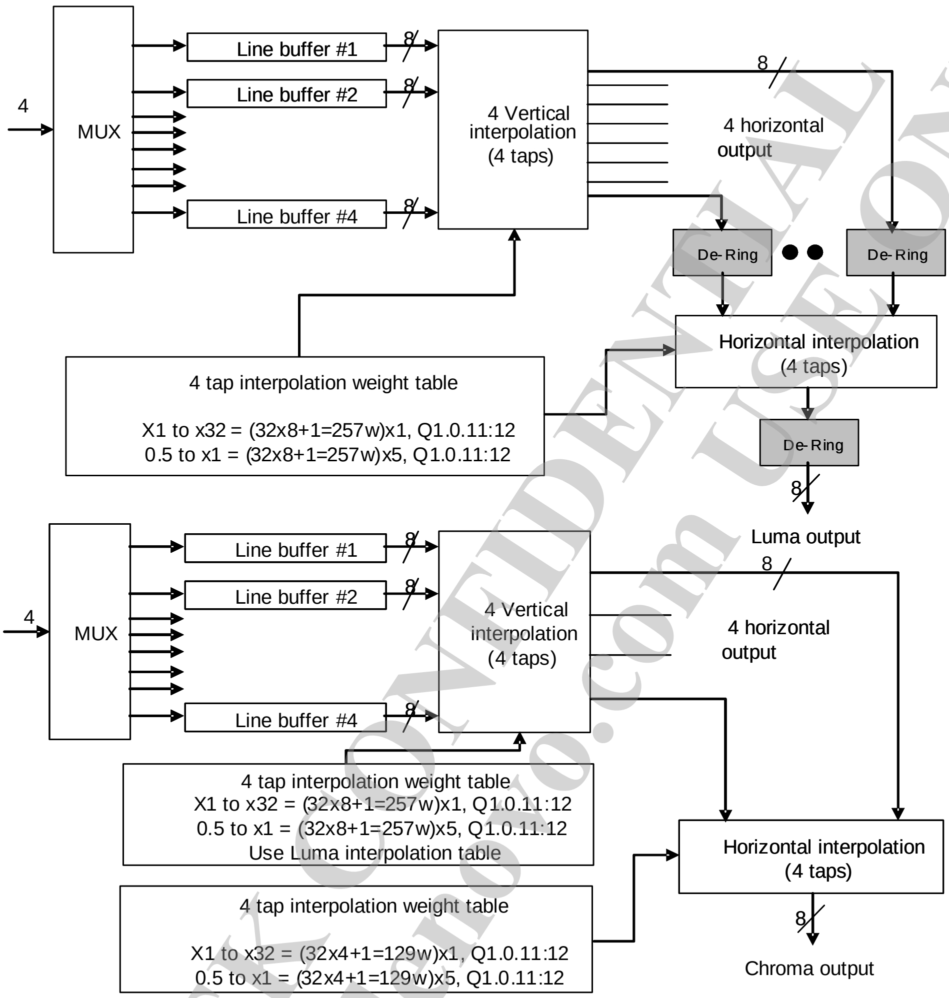
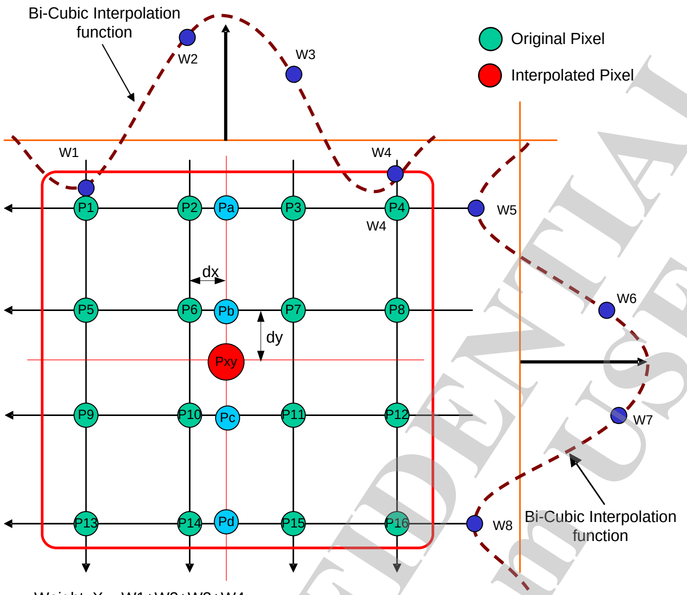


Figure 6-10. 4 tap cubic block diagram (Luma and Chroma data, in MT6737 4tap changes to 6tap)

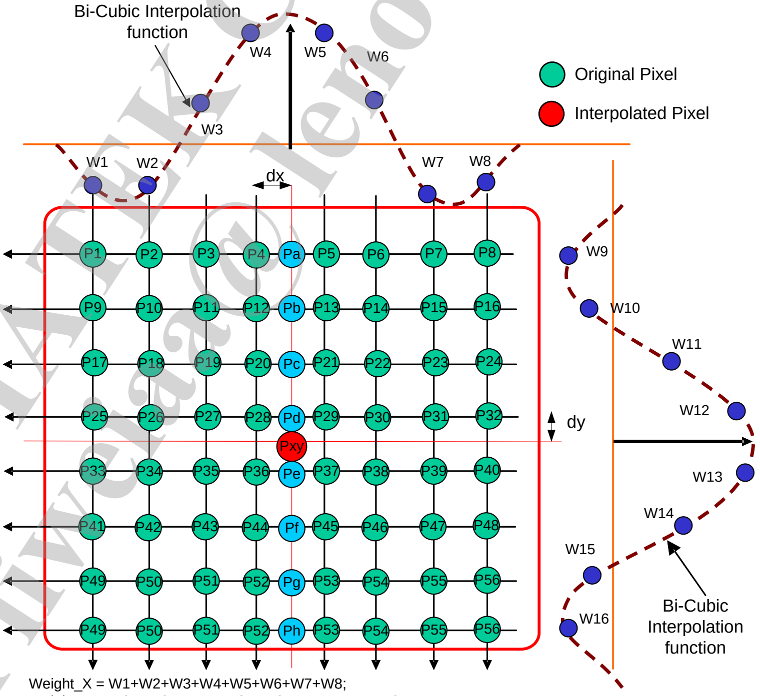
4n tap cubic accumulation has better quality than 6 tap FIR when the down-scaling ratio is bigger than 1/2X. It is essential a variable tap FIR operation and its tap number is determined by scaling ratio (4 times n, n is scaling ratio). For example, when the scaling ratio is 1, the tap number is 4 (see Figure 6-11). When the scaling ratio is 1/2, the tap number is 8 (see Figure 6-12). In addition, n tap source accumulation is also a variable tap number FIR algorithm. It has poor sharpness and is an extremely low cost solution.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.



Weight_X = W1+W2+W3+W4;
Weight_Y = W5+W6+W7+W8;
Pa=(P1*W1 + P2*W2 + P3*W3 + P4*W4+Weight_X/2)/Weight_X
Pb=(P5*W1 + P6*W2 + P7*W3 + P8*W4+Weight_X/2)/Weight_X
Pc=(P9*W1 + P10*W2 + P11*W3 + P12*W4+Weight_X/2)/Weight_X
Pd=(P13*W1 + P14*W2 + P15*W3 + P16*W4+Weight_X/2)/Weight_X
Pxy=(Pa*W5 + Pb*W6 + Pc*W7 + Pd*W8+Weight_Y/2)/Weight_Y

Figure 6-11. Cubic accumulation (scaling ratio = 1x)



Weight_X = W1+W2+W3+W4+W5+W6+W7+W8;
Weight_Y = W9+W10+W11+W12+W13+W14+W15+W16;
Pa=(P1*W1 + P2*W2 + P3*W3 + P4*W4 + P5*W5 + P6*W6 + P7*W7 + P8*W8 + Weight_X/2)/Weight_X
Pb, Pc, Pd, Pe, Pf, Pg, Ph Is Interpolated In the same way
Pxy=(Pa*W9 + Pb*W10 + Pc*W11 + Pd*W12 + Pe*W13 + Pf*W14 + Pg*W15 + Ph*W16+ Weight_Y/2)/Weight_Y

Figure 6-12. Cubic accumulation (scaling ratio = 1/2x)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.7.3 Programming Guide

6.7.3.1 Suggested Algorithm

Corresponding to applied scaling ratio, here is the suggested algorithm for the resizer to choose from. The algorithm is suggested for the best quality. The principles are:

- 6tap: 32x ~ 1/2x
- 4ntap: 1/2x ~ 1/64x
- ntap: 1x ~ 1/128x

However, the suggested algorithm may contradict with limited supporting size in each resizer engine. Take CDRZ for example, as described in the figure below, if a certain application needs to use CDRZ to resize from 3000 to 1400, it is suggested to use 4ntap cubic accumulation algorithm. However, the supported size of 4ntap in CDRZ is 1152, which is smaller than 1400. Therefore, in this case choose ntap to be applied.

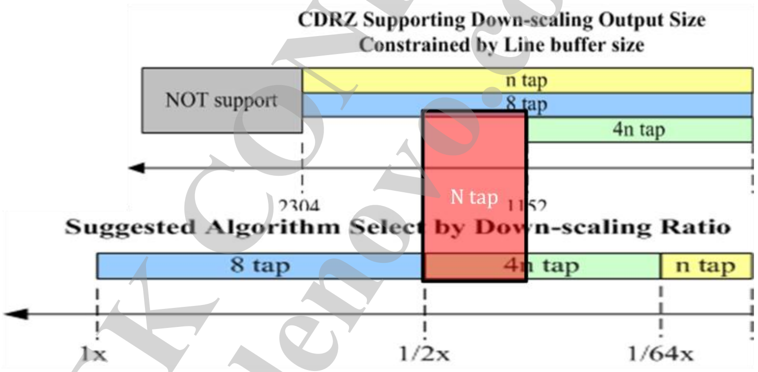


Figure 6-13. Suggested algorithm v.s. supported size

6.7.3.2 Coefficient Step Calculation

The coefficient step is calculated in different way for different algorithms. Refer to the descriptions below.

- 6tap:
  - Unit base: 32768 (2^15)
  - M_m1 = Input_size **– In_Int_Ofst – (In_Sub_Ofst==0? 0 : 1)** -1
  - N_m1 = Output_size -1
  - Cstep = (M_m1*UNIT+(N_m1>>1))/N_m1
- 6tap:
  - Unit base: **65536** (2^16) (note the offset settings)
- 4ntap:
  - Unit base: 1048576 (2^20)
  - M_m1 = Input_size **– In_Int_Ofst – (In_Sub_Ofst==0? 0 : 1)** -1

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

  - N_m1 = Output_size -1
  - Cstep = (N_m1*UNIT+(M_m1-1))/M_m1
  - Transfer offset from input to output
- N-tap:
  - Unit base: 1048576 (2^20)
  - M_m1 = Input_size **– In_Int_Ofst – (In_Sub_Ofst==0? 0 : 1)** -1
  - N_m1 = Output_size -1
  - Cstep = (N_m1*UNIT+(M_m1-1))/M_m1
  - Transfer offset from input to output

6.7.3.3 Input/Output Offset Transfer

- For 6 tap interpolation, set "Input Offset" into register.
  - Set register Int_Ofst = In_Int_Ofst ;
  - Set register Sub_Ofst = In_Sub_Ofst ;
- For Accumulation, set "Output Offset" into register.
  - Transfer Input Offset to Output Offset
  - Out_Int_Ofst = (In_Int_Ofst*Cstep + In_Sub_Ofst*Cstep/Unit)/Unit
  - Out_Sub_Ofst = (In_Int_Ofst*Cstep + In_Sub_Ofst*Cstep/Unit) % Unit

6.7.3.4 Table Selection

- 6tap/6tap: Depends on scaling ratio
  - [1~32768]: Table 27 or Table 0~19
  - (32768:36409): Table 20
  - [36409:40961): Table 21
  - [40961:46812): Table 22
  - [46812:54614): Table 23
  - [46812:59579): Table 24
  - [59579:65537): Table 25
  - [65537~∞): Table 26
- 4n tap (downscaling only)
  - 1~19 (blur ~ sharp), 15 is recommended
- N tap (downscaling only): No table selection required

The entire programming guide is as the following steps:
- Decide input/output size.
- Check "Maximum Size" constraint.
- Calculate the ratio.
- Choose algorithm from "Suggested Algorithm".
- Check "Supporting Size" constraint.
- Trigger Resizer and wait for IRQ.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

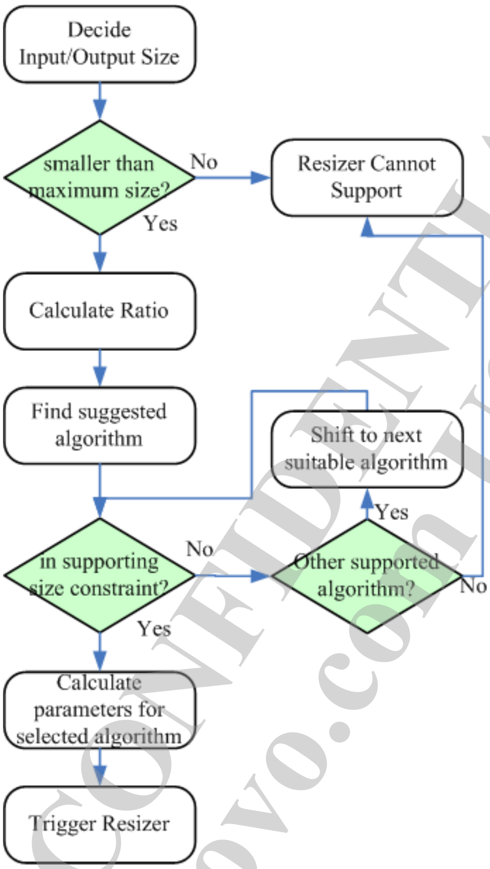


Figure 6-14. Programming guide

6.7.3.5 Programming Method

In MT6737, there are two programming methods

- CPU program through APB bus
- Command queue

Use proper programming method for different applications. In the video recording application, program CDRZ and MDP_RSZ0/MDP_RSZ1 by command queue to synchronize frame level setting between ISP and MDP processing.

6.7.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.7 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR lweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.8 MDP ROT_DMA (Multimedia Data Path-Rotation DMA)

6.8.1 Introduction

ROT_DMA is a write rotate DMA agent supporting 8 rotation/flip options. The users may hold the phone in any orientation, and we need to rotate the image in the correct direction.

6.8.2 Features

- Rotation Angels: 0°, 0° + H_Flip, 90°, 90° + H_Flip, 180°, 180° + H_Flip, 270°, and 270° + H_Flip as illustrated in Figure 6-15.
- Format and Footprint: YUV422 1/2/3 plane, YUV420 2/3 plane, RGB888, ARGB8888, RGB565, Y only
- Programmable RGB color matrix
- Dither engine

6.8.3 Block Diagram

See the figure below for the engine architecture, including color matrix, dither, sub-sampling, rotator and DMA engines.

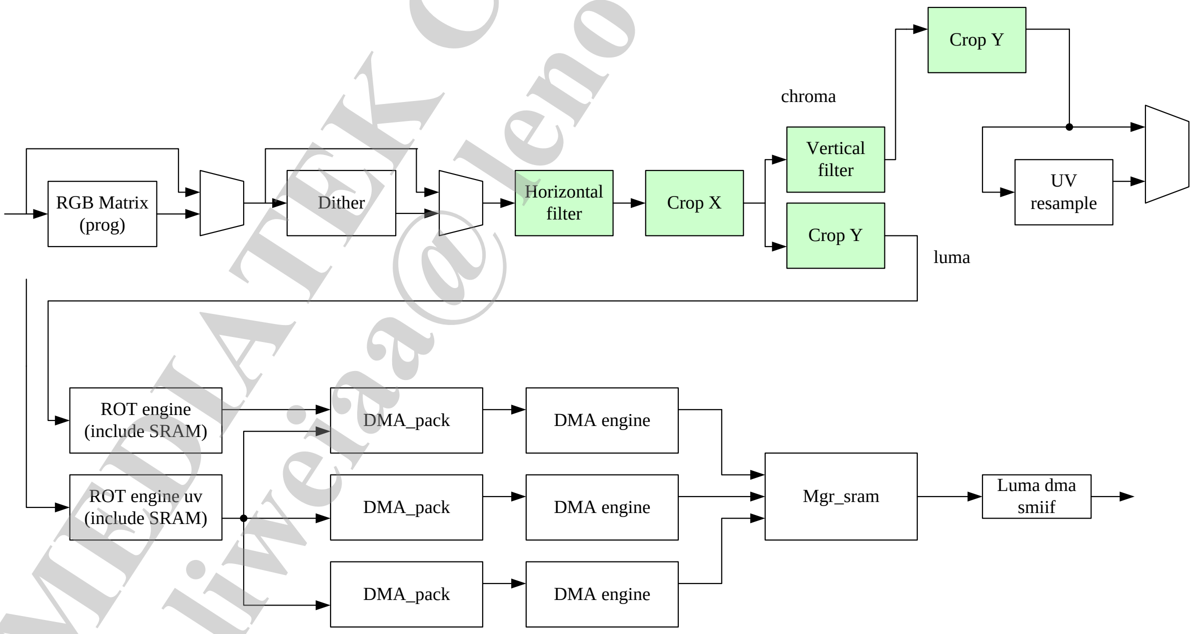


Figure 6-15. Block diagram of ROT_DMA

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

6.8.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.8 of *“MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table”*.

6.8.5 Programming Guide

6.8.5.1 Firmware Settings for Rotation/Flip

To output data to DRAM with rotation/flip, ROT_DMA should calculate the correct address to put the first data. Then the next data can be written in certain order which also depends on rotation/flip settings. However, the circuit for calculating the address to put the first data is only applied in the beginning of the entire image or tile. For cost effectiveness, the address offset for the first data compared to BASE_ADDR can be calculated by firmware and transferred into hardware by register OFST_ADDR. For all kinds of rotation/flip settings, the required positions of OFST_ADDR are different. The illustrations for the position of OFST_ADDR on DRAM footprint is shown in Figure 6-16 to Figure 6-19. Note that the xsize and ysize are defined according to input data scan-line direction. The direction of xsize is parallel to input scan-line direction, and the direction of ysize is perpendicular to input scan-line direction. The stride setting is defined according to DRAM footprint, which is the direction after rotation/flip.

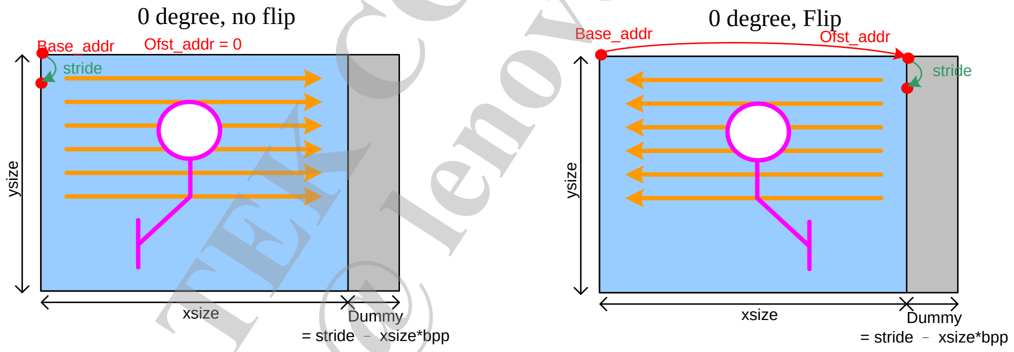


Figure 6-16. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 0° rotation (scan-line)

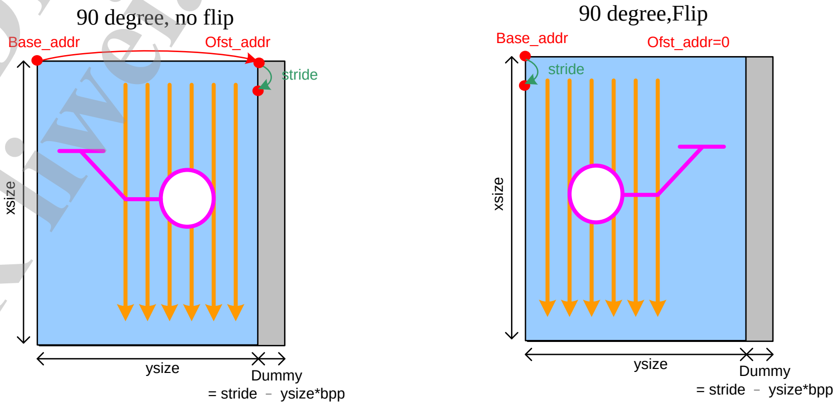


Figure 6-17. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 90° rotation (scan-line)

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

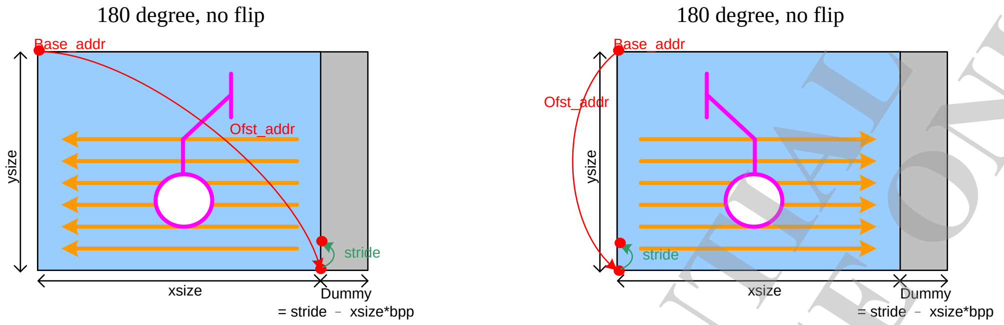


Figure 6-18. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 180° rotation (scan-line)

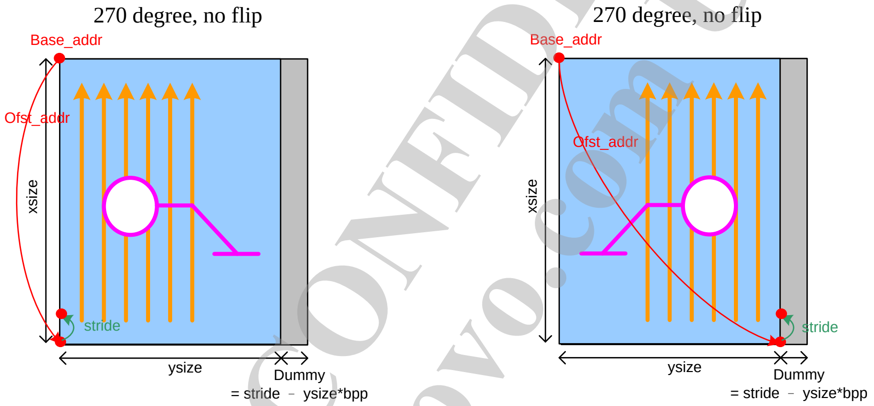


Figure 6-19. Firmware settings of OFST_ADDR in 270° rotation (scan-line)

Summary is given in Table 6-5.

Table 6-5. ROT_DMA OFST_ADDR settings for rotation/flip

Rotation	No Flip (Flip = 0)	Horizontal Flip (Flip = 1)
0 degree (Rotation=0)	0	Xsize-1
90 degree (Rotation=1)	Ysize-1	0
180 degree (Rotation=2)	Stride*(Ysize-1) +(Xsize-1)	Stride*(Ysize-1)
270 degree (Rotation=3)	Stride*(xsize-1)	Stride*(Xsize-1) +(Ysize-1)

For an interpolation based UV-resampler, which can perform better quality for YUV420, VIDO UVSEL should be set corresponding to different rotation/flip settings. According to Table 6-6, the suggested settings provide the proper chroma sampled points.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-6. VIDO UV SEL for YUV420 format cooperated with CRSP

Rotation	Flip	UV_SELX	UV_SELY
0	0	0	1
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	1	0	0
2	0	1	1
2	1	0	1
3	0	0	1
3	1	0	1

6.8.5.2 Working Buffer Height Setting

Setting up the buffer width and buffer height for ROT_DMA is necessary, no matter the rotation is enabled or not. Set N mod M = 0 for better performance. If N mod M is not 0, and you would like the efficiency to drop as little as possible, derive an algorithm for height calculation.

First of all, you need to know the buffer size for each format.

```
if (UYVY 2-plane or 3-plane)
     y_max_buf_size = 256x48
    uv_max_buf_size = 128x48
else if (YUV420)
     y_max_buf_size = 256x64
    uv_max_buf_size = 128x32
else
     y_max_buf_size = 256x32
    uv_max_buf_size = 256x32
```

Algorithm: (Width is tile width.)

Phase 1:

We can apply the algorithm on Y channel first to get the approximation first.

Coeff 1= floor (MAX_BUF_SIZE / WIDTH/2) *2
Coeff 2= Ceiling (WIDTH / Coeff1)
Buf_line_num= Ceiling (WIDTH/Coeff 2/ 4) *4 (To make sure if Buf_line_num mod 4 = 0)

If (buf_line_num > width)
Buf_line_num = ceiling (width / 4) * 4 (To make sure width >= Buf_line_num)

else if (Buf_line_num * Buf_line_num * Coeff 2 > MAX_BUF_SIZE) (buffer overflow)
Buf_line_num = buf_height.

Phase 2:

Check if the setting is over the buffer size or not.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

```
Y_buf_check =0
Uv_buf_check =0

//internal buffer check
while ((y_buf_check !=0) | (uv_buf_check!=0)){

        // Y buffer check
        Internal_y_buf_width = Ceiling(width/buf_line_num) x buf_line_num //multiple of
buf_line_num and >= width
        Internal_y_buf_usage = Internal_y_buf_width x buf_line_num
        If (internal_y_buf_usage > y_max_buf_size){
              buf_line_num = buf_line_num -4
             Y_buf_check =0
               Uv_buf_check =0
        }else{
              Y_buf_check =1
        }

        // UV buffer check
        if (YUV422 rotate 0/180)
              Uv_blk_width = main_blk_width/2
              Uv_blk_line     = main_buf_line_num
        Else if ((YUV422 rotate 90/270)
              Uv_blk_width = main_blk_width
              Uv_blk_line     = main_buf_line_num/2
        Else if (YUV420)
              Uv_blk_width = main_blk_width/2
              Uv_blk_line     = main_buf_line_num/2
      Else
               Uv_blk_width = main_blk_width
              Uv_blk_line     = main_buf_line_num

        Internal_uv_buf_width = Ceiling(Uv_blk_width / Uv_blk_line)x Uv_blk_line

        Internal_uv_buf_usage = Uv_blk_width x Uv_blk_line
        If (internal_uv_buf_usage > uv_max_buf_size){
              Main_buf_line_num = maian_buf_line_num -4
             Y_buf_check =0
               Uv_buf_check =0
        }else{
              uv_buf_check =1
        }
}
```

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.8.5.3 SMI 256 Byte Boundary Restriction

6.8.5.3.1 Methods to Handle Boundary Restriction

SMI has a restriction that any burst issued from DMA cannot cross the 256-byte address boundary, no matter in read or write action. The reason is from the bank configuration in SMI, where the 256-byte address is only the bank switching point.

Here we try to analyze the probability of crossing the 256-byte boundary by random access. As illustrated in Figure 6-20. The probability P is

P = (byte per burst length)/256

It depends on the designed burst length of ROT_DMA. For example, if the minimum burst length 4-16, the probability P = 64/256 = ¼, which means that 25% burst request will be separated. Though the total data amount is fixed, it increases 25% burst request times and will reduce DRAM access utility.

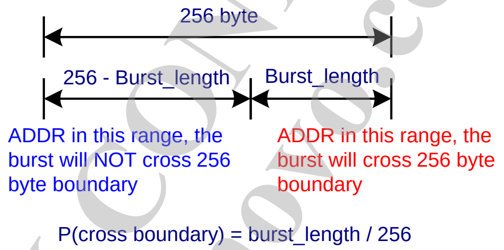


Figure 6-20. Probability of crossing 256-byte boundary by random access

To handle this restriction from SMI, there are two common solutions. One is adopting a burst separator between ROT_DMA and SMI port. As illustrated in Figure 6-21, the original DMA requests are represented in black arrow. Because it is not considered 256 byte boundary restriction, some requests should be cross the 256-byte boundary. The burst separator filters all requests from ROT_DMA, which allows the legal request pass as represented in blue arrows but separate the illegal request into two requests as represented in yellow arrows. Although it is simple to implement, it increases the total request number.

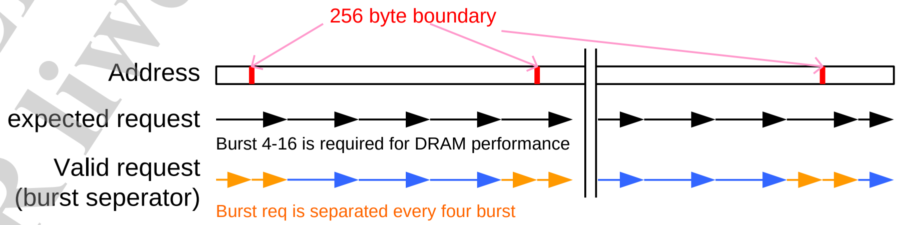


Figure 6-21. Scan-line request without considering 256-byte boundary

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

The second method is handling the 256-byte boundary restriction inside the control logics of ROT_DMA. After the data are stored in burst accumulator, ROT_DMA will adjust the burst length to meet the boundary when the target address is close to the 256-byte boundary. In common cases, the minimum burst length is a factor of 256 bytes; therefore the requests after the adjusted request will automatically align with the 256-byte boundary. This method is difficult to implement but can efficiently reduce the overhead of DMA requests (see Figure 6-22).

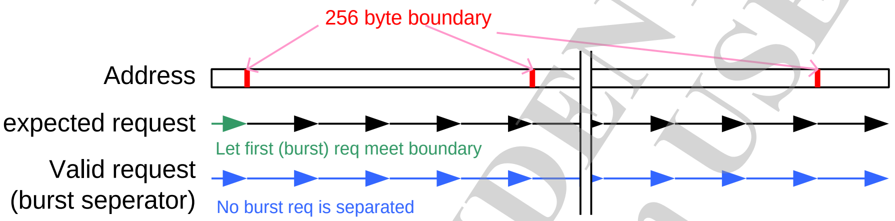


Figure 6-22. Scan-line request considering 256-byte boundary

6.8.5.3.2 SMI Boundary Restriction In Case of Rotation

The method described in the previous section is based on continuous scan-line access of DMA. It works only in 0° or 180° rotation with or without flip. Unfortunately, it does not always work in 90° or 270° rotation with or without flip. Considering a general condition with 90° or 270° rotation, if the stride is not multiple of 256 bytes, the distribution of 256-byte boundary will differ in every line as described in Figure 6-23. To handle this, the SMI_IF controller issues requests with different burst lengths according to the current address.

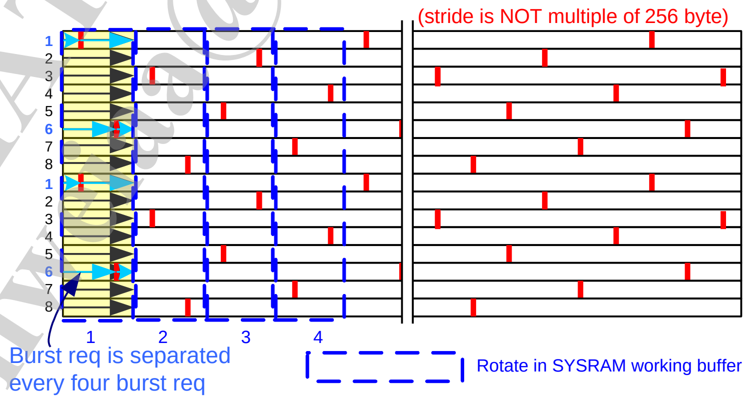


Figure 6-23. 4-16 burst in 270° rotation with/without flip

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR livia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

 © 2016 MediaTek Inc.
This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

6.9 Display 2D Sharpness

6.9.1 Introduction

The sharpness function provides better picture quality for panel display. It restores the image details, sharpens the edge and provides a vivid feeling for pictures and videos.

6.9.2 Features

- 2-dimensional sharpness filter
- Peaking by color (PBC)

6.9.3 Block Diagram

Figure 6-24 is the block diagram of display 2D sharpness. The FIFO unit is used to pre-fetch pixel data, and thus the overall throughput can be improved in some situations.

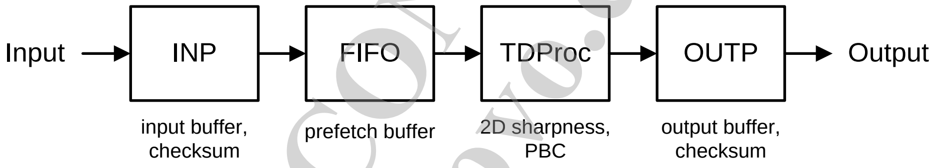


Figure 6-24. Block diagram of display 2D sharpness

Figure 6-25 is the block diagram of the sharpness core. The luminance data will be processed and modified in the sharpness function. The chrominance data will flow into PBC, but no modification at the output.

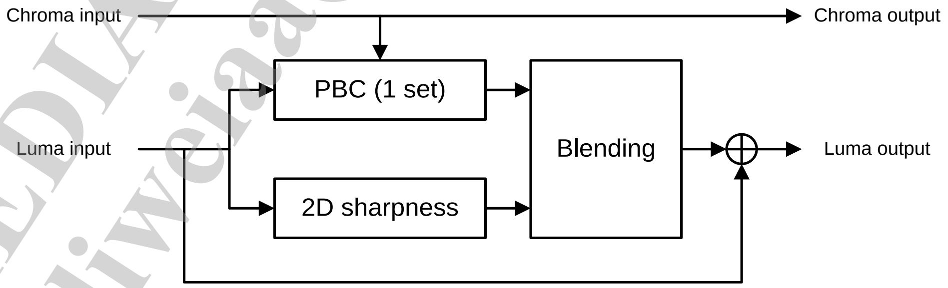


Figure 6-25. Block diagram of sharpness core

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.9.3.1 2-dimensional Sharpness

The 2D filters are used to extract middle/high-frequency components from the input signal. Each extracted AC component is enhanced individually and then added back to the input signal. The enhancement units are composed by coring, gain, limit and clip.

Before 2-dimensional sharpness After 2-dimensional sharpness

Figure 6-26. Visual effect of 2-dimensional sharpness

6.9.3.2 Peaking by Color

Sometimes you may prefer different sharpness levels in different color tones. PBC is used for such preference. PBC detects at most three different colors and applies different sharpness levels to them.

Before green PBC After green PBC

Figure 6-27. Visual effect of peaking by color

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiao@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.9.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.9 of *“MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table”*.

6.9.5 Programming Guide

6.9.5.1 Sharpness Adjustment

There are total three possible usage scenarios for different situations.

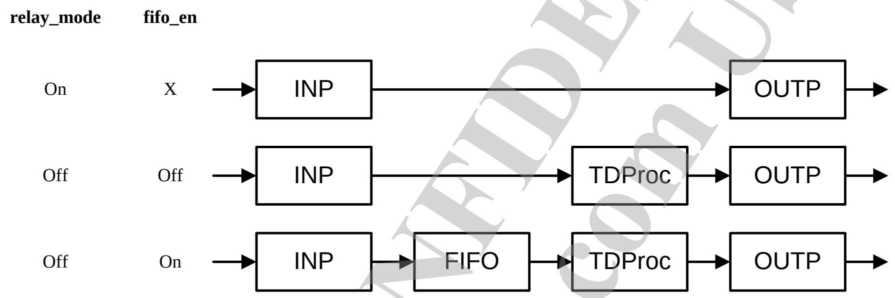


Figure 6-28. Usage scenarios

The sharpness function is designed to provide different sharpness levels. The sharpness level can be programmed by the gain curve control in the 2-dimensional sharpness unit. Higher sharpness level enhances more details of the image and sharpens the edge. However, sharpness setting that is too strong will induce some artificial side effects. Therefore, balance setting with enough sharpness level is preferred.

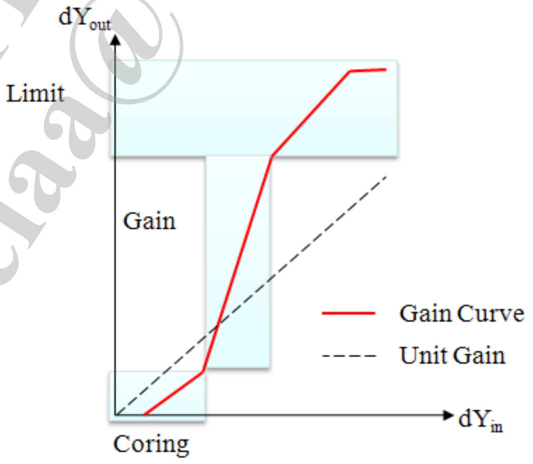
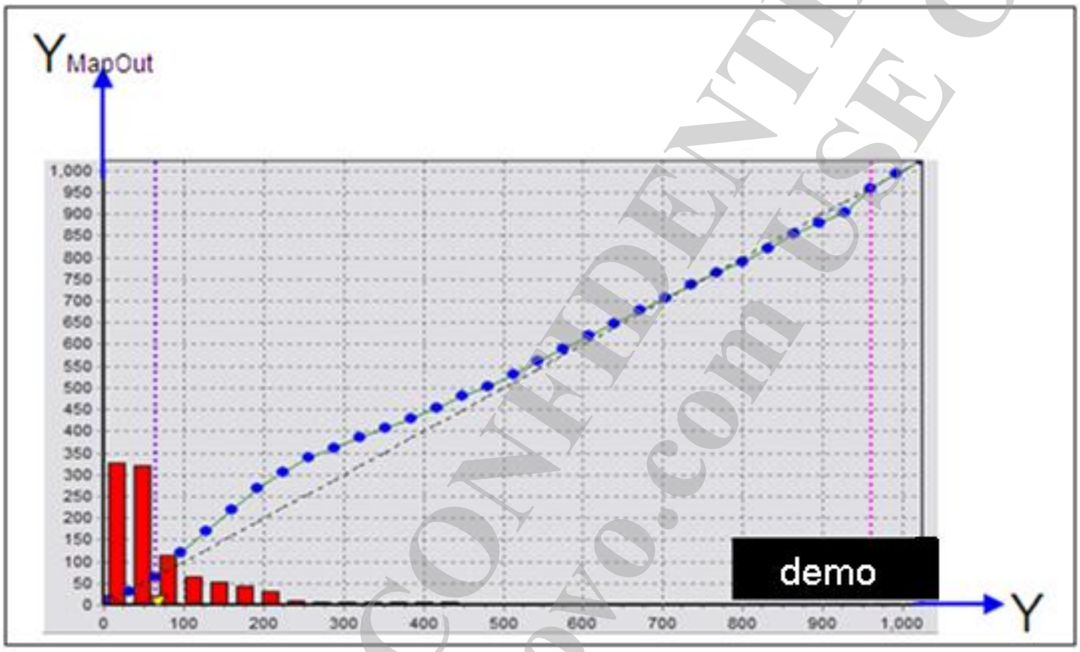


Figure 6-29. Gain curve control of sharpness

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.9.5.2 Luma Adjustment

The color processor applies a luma mapping curve to the input luma (see the figure below). The full luma range is equally divided into 16 segments, and registers Y_FTN_* are responsible for the adjustments.



MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.10 DISP_OVL

6.10.1 Introduction

The display OVERLAY can do alpha blending up to 4 layers. The 4 layer sources can be from MEMORY/constant layer color. Four RDMA is included in overlay and 4 sets of color transform are also included.

6.10.2 Features

The following table describes the features of DISP_OVL.

Item	Main function	Description
1	4K2K resolution	Supports 4096x2160
2	4 layer overlay	Supports 4 layers of blending (w/o multiplier)
3	Color format uniform	Supports color format uniform and swap control (RGB565/RGB888/RGBA8888/ARGB8888/YUYV/YUV2)
4	3D display	Interleave left and right image for 3D display (landscape and portrait mode)
5	Color conversion	Wide-gamma : sRGB/GPU/Adobe mode
6	Layer constant color	Constant color input for each layer source
7	Alpha blending	Supports pixel alpha blending + SurfaceFlinger alpha blending (G2D)
8	Flexible ROI system	Supports individual color depth, window size, vertical and horizontal offset
9	Flip function	Vertical/Horizontal/180 degree flip function

6.10.3 Block Diagram

There are four OVL_RDMA in DISP_OVL, and each OVL_RDMA contains a 128x128 single port SRAM (ping-pung buffer).

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

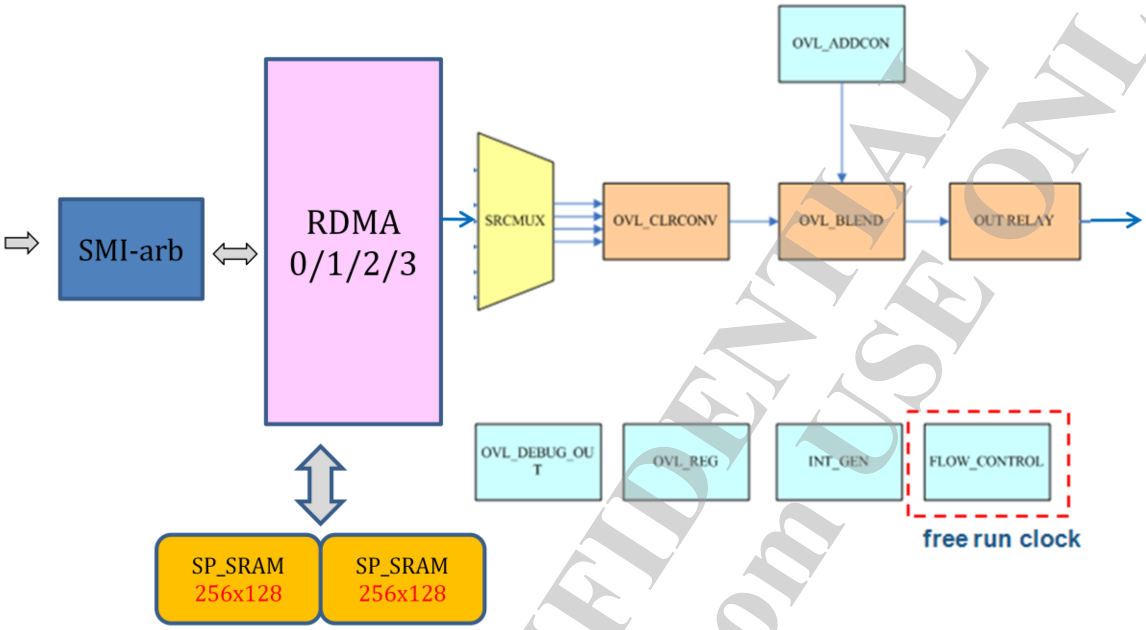


Figure 6-30. Block diagram of DISP_OVL

6.10.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.10 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.10.5 Programming Guide

Register settings:

1. Configure DATAPATH (number of layers, layer source, color format, etc).
2. Configure RDMA parameters (addr/size/fmt/swap).
3. Configure layer parameters (layer size/offset/roi size).

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@ lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

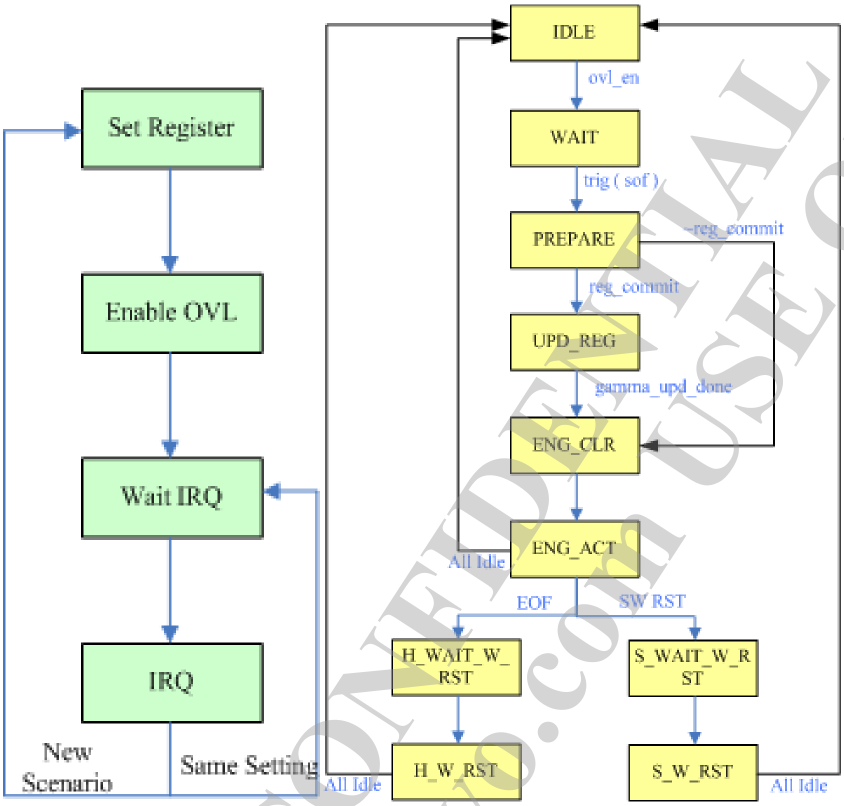


Figure 6-31. Typical DISP_OVL programming procedure

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.11 DIPS RDMA (Display Read Direct Memory Access)

6.11.1 Introduction

The RDMA engine is responsible of providing data to the interface engines, e.g. DSI, DBI and DPI. Because the interface engines need the real time service, the RDMA engine contains one line buffer to store the sufficient pixel data. It also detects the usage of data buffer to trigger the deep sleep mode of EMI.

6.11.2 Features

- Direct link input mode
- Memory input mode
  - Input format: YUYV422, UYVY422, YVYU422, UYVY422, RGB565, RGB888, ARGB8888
  - Input footprint: Raster-scan mode, 64 byte-aligned tile mode
  - Slow down mode
- Output control
  - Byte swap, RGB swap
  - Progressive mode, Interlace mode
  - Programmable YUV to RGB matrix
  - Non-stop output mode if the data buffer is under-running
- Buffer control
  - 240x16 byte data buffer (1280 pixels with RGB888 format)
  - Programmable request/pre-ultra/ultra control mechanism

6.11.3 Block Diagram

The following figure shows the detailed block diagram of RDMA engine. The clocks are automatically configured and one asynchronous FIFO is used for the output clock domain.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

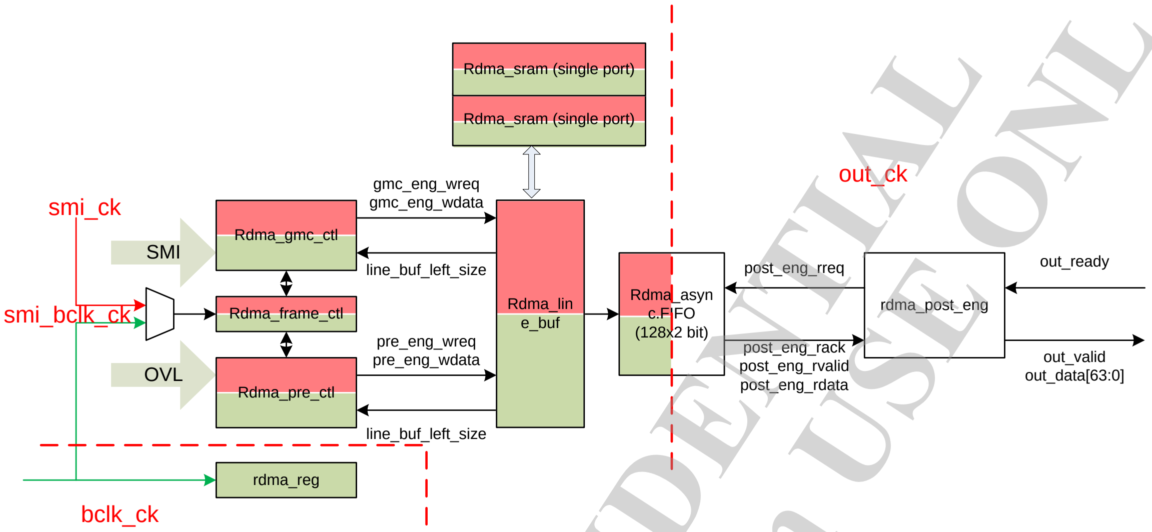


Figure 6-32. Block diagram of RDMA engine

6.11.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.11 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.11.5 Programming Guide

The figure below shows the general programming sequence.

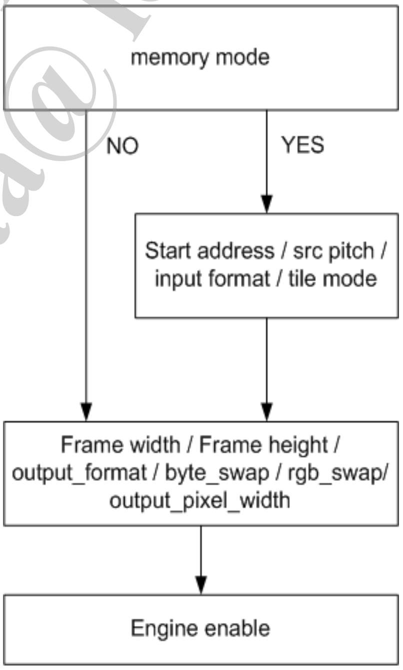


Figure 6-33. General programming sequence

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

The direct link mode can be easily configured by output frame width and height. On the other hand, the memory mode has several modes, which will be discussed in sub-sections.

6.11.5.1 Memory Mode Control: Raster Scan Input, Progressive Output

1. Set 'MEM_MODE_START_ADDR' = Address of the first pixel.
2. Set 'MEM_MODE_SRC_PITCH' = Width of the source frame.

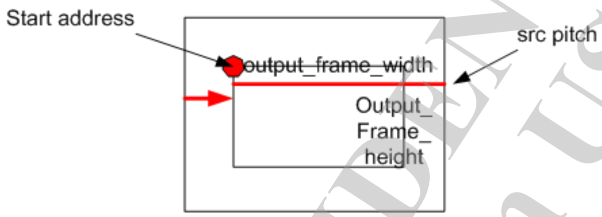


Figure 6-34. Basic memory mode configuration

6.11.5.2 Memory Mode Control: Raster Scan Input, Interlace Output

1. Set 'MEM_MODE_START_ADDR' = Address of the first pixel.
2. Set 'MEM_MODE_SRC_PITCH' = ***Double*** of the width of the source frame.

6.11.5.3 YUV to RGB Transfer Formula

$$\begin{pmatrix} Y_out \\ U_out \\ V_out \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C00 & C01 & C02 \\ C10 & C11 & C12 \\ C20 & C21 & C22 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} Y_input + pre_add_0 \\ U_input + pre_add_1 \\ V_input + pre_add_2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} post_add_0 \\ post_add_1 \\ post_add_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Figure 6-35. Programmable color matrix

6.11.5.4 Byte Swap/RGB Swap

Set up the corresponding registers according to the data format on the memory.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

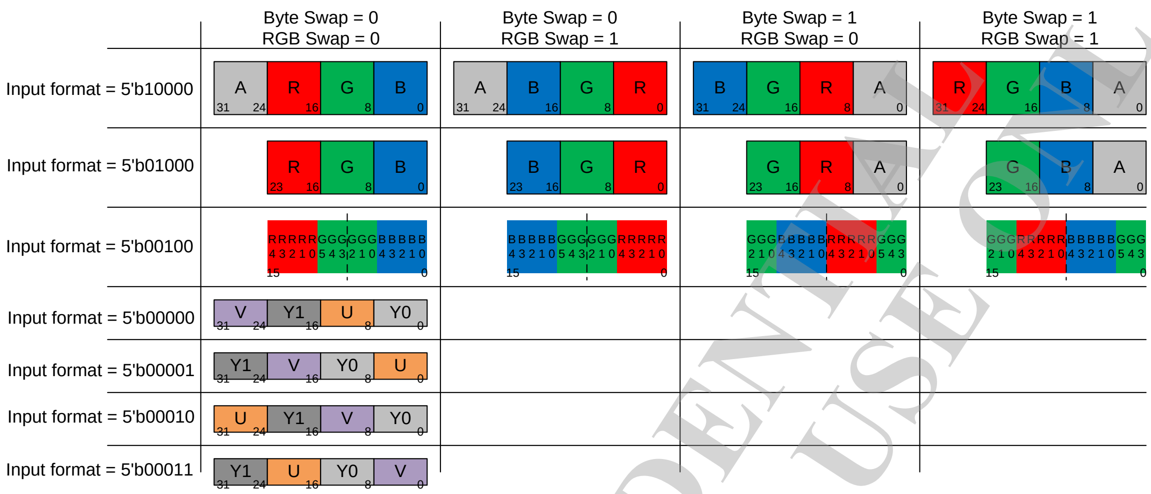


Figure 6-36. Byte/RGB swap

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.12 DISP_WDMA

6.12.1 Introduction

MDP_WDMA and DISP_WDMA have the same hardware architecture but slightly differ in SRAM size, which influences the line-width support and outstanding ability. WDMA does the job of DMA writing out the data in display/MDP pipeline into DRAM. In the following sections, WDMA is called DISP_WDMA.

6.12.2 Features

- Dither
- Programmable parameter color transform
- Input color format YUV444/RGB888
- Output format RGB565/RGB888/ARGB8888/UYVY/YV12/NV12/NV21
- 3-tap filter in horizontal and 2-tap filter in vertical for YUV420 down sample
- Byte swap/color swap/UV swap functions

6.12.3 Block Diagram

DISP_WDMA has a 256x128 two-port SRAM for DMA FIFO. One 320x64 single-port SRAM is for vertical filtering line_buffer (2560 pixels). For line-width larger than 2560, YUV420 vertical down sample must be drop-pixel scheme.

MDP_WDMA has a 128x128 two-port SRAM for DMA FIFO. One 64x64 single-port SRAM is for vertical filtering line_buffer (512 pixels). For line-width larger than 512, YUV420 vertical down sample must be drop-pixel scheme.

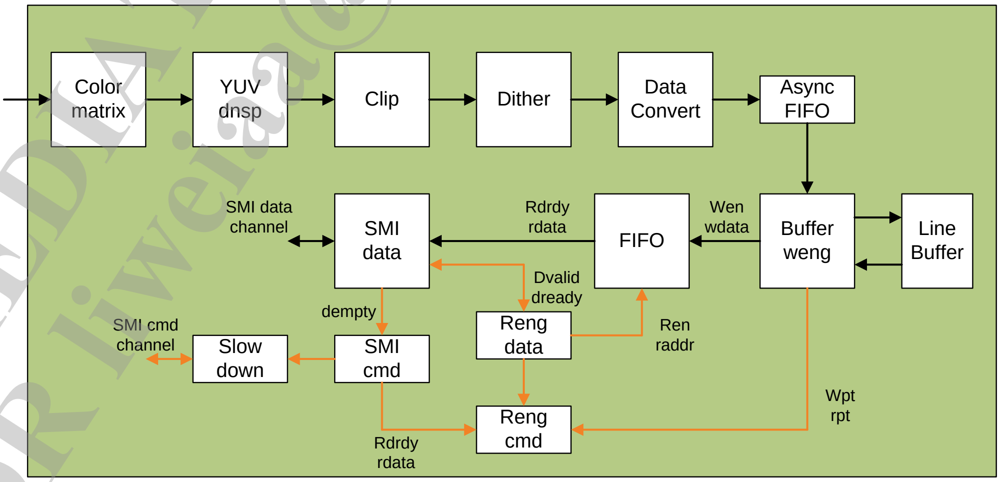


Figure 6-37. Block diagram of DISP_WDMA

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.12.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.12 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.12.5 Programming Guide

The fundamental key parts are base address/input output format/data strides in memory. If color transform is needed, color transform matrix will also be needed. Other setting such as dither/filter are optional.

MUST program
WDMA_CFG
WDMA_SRC_SIZE
WDMA_CLIP_SIZE
WDMA_CLIP_COORD
WDMA_DST_ADDR0
WDMA_DST_W_IN_BYTE
WDMA_DST_ADDR1
WDMA_DST_ADDR2
WDMA_DST_UV_PITCH
WDMA_DST_ADDR_OFFSET0
WDMA_DST_ADDR_OFFSET1
WDMA_DST_ADDR_OFFSET2

The read result of WDMA_CT_DBG means the input counter of the WDMA.
The MSB part is line counter and the LSB part is pixel counter.
This can be used as debugging register.

The read result of WDMA_FLOW_CTRL_DBG means the current state of WDMA.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

The state machine of the WDMA is as the following:

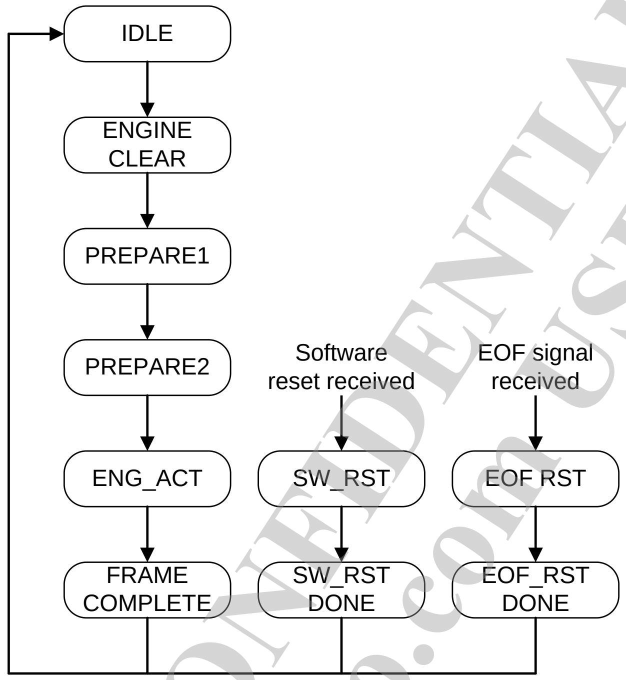


Figure 6-38. Typical DISP_WDMA programming sequence

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.13 Color Processor

6.13.1 Introduction

The color management engine is highly configurable and programmable; it fits different display panels and satisfies different user preferences for various purposes.

Color management is designed for two applications, getting better picture quality, and having one panel resemble the other in their output characteristics. With color processor, you can obtain better picture quality experience, and manufactures have identical and controllable production quality more easily.

A GUI tool is also provided as an easy and intuitive interface to color management.

6.13.2 Features

The color processor is very flexible for luma/saturation/hue adjustments. Main features are:

- Flexible architecture: PQ processing at many possible stages
- Input/output color space conversion
- Hue engine:
  - Partial hue: Modifies hue angle of specific hue phase
- Y engine:
  - Adaptive luma: Adaptively adjusts Y curve according to image content
  - Global contrast/brightness adjustment
  - Chroma boost: Compensates saturation value due to Y change
- Sat engine:
  - Partial S: Modifies saturation value of specific hue phase
  - Global saturation adjustment
- Histogram statistics: Includes Y histogram and chroma histogram

6.13.3 Block Diagram

The color engine provides various luma/saturation/hue adjustments. See Figure 6-39 for the block diagram.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

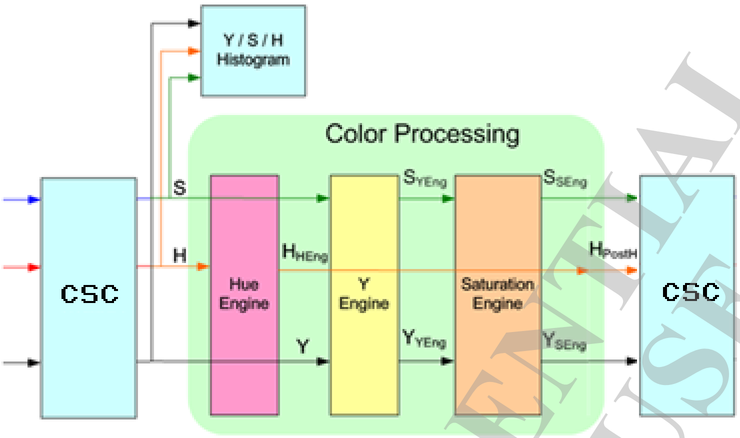


Figure 6-39. Block diagram of color processor

6.13.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.13 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.13.5 Programming Guide

6.13.5.1 Hue Adjustment

There are 20 hue phases for partial hue adjustment.

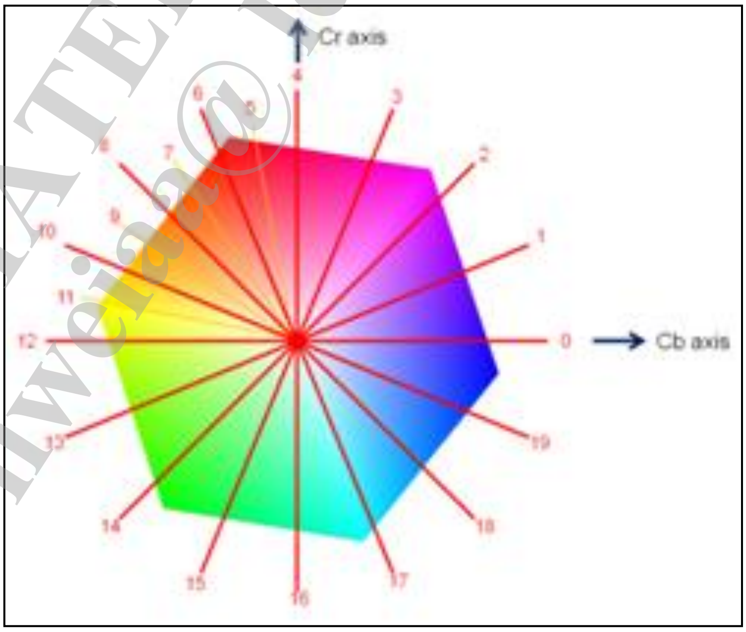


Figure 6-40. 20 hue phases distribution

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Partial hue adjustment is achieved by HUE_TO_HUE_W_* registers. An example of partial hue adjustment is shown in Figure 6-41.

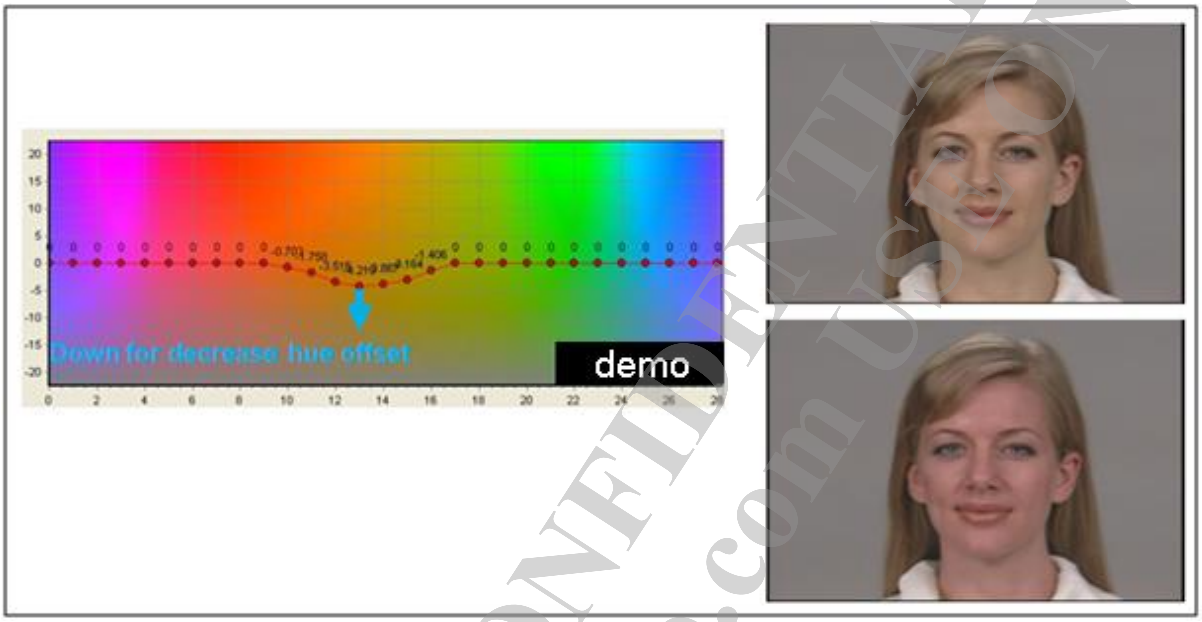


Figure 6-41. Partial hue adjustment example

6.13.5.2 Luma Adjustment

Global contrast and brightness adjustment are also provided for intuitive luma adjustment. The registers are G_CONTRAST and G_BRIGHTNESS (see Figure 6-42).

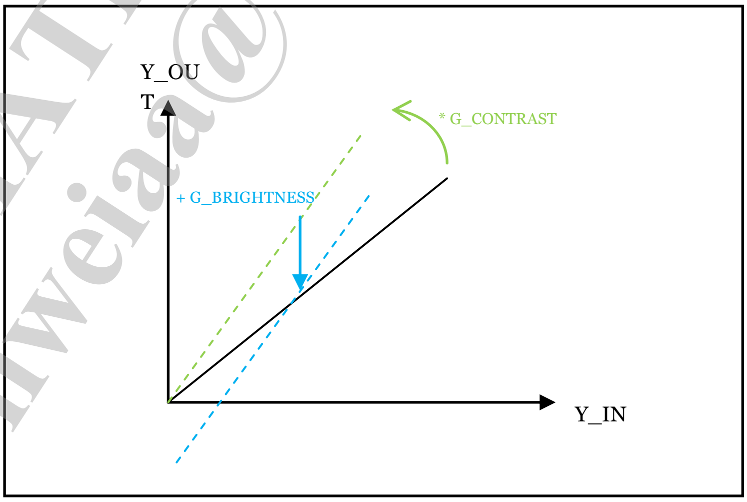


Figure 6-42. Contrast/brightness adjustment example

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.13.5.3 Saturation Adjustment

In human vision system, luminance increase results in pale images even the saturation is not decreased. Therefore, the color processor provides a “Chroma Boost” mechanism to detect the luminance increasing amount and decides the corresponding saturation boost level. The control registers are *_CBOOST_*, and the formula is illustrated in Figure 6-43.

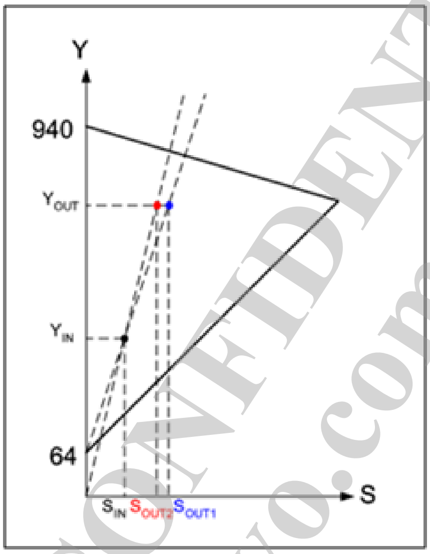


Figure 6-43. Chroma boost demonstration

For saturation adjustment, the color processor provides a flexible partial saturation adjustment. Similar to PartialHue, the hue plan is equally divided into 20 hue phases and saturation corresponding to each hue phase can be customized by three gains and two turning points. The adjustment for each hue phase are controlled by PARTIAL_SAT_GAIN*, PARTIAL_SAT_POINT*. Figure 6-44 shows the saturation adjustment in one hue phase.

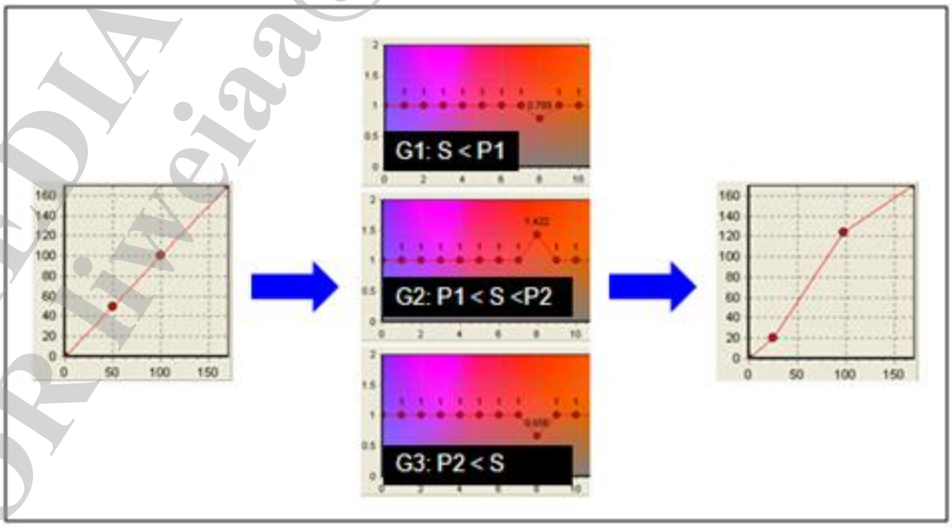


Figure 6-44. Example of partial S adjustment for one hue phase

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

A global saturation gain is provided for intuitive saturation adjustment. The control register is G_SATURATION (see Figure 6-45).

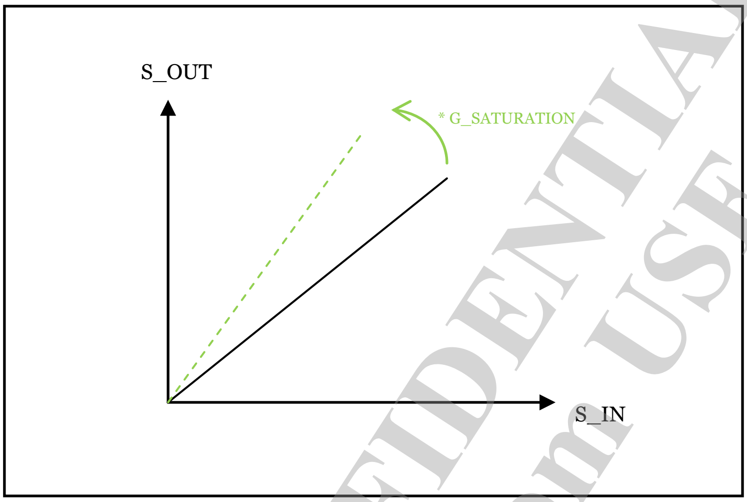


Figure 6-45. Illustration of global saturation adjustment

6.13.5.4 Color Matrix Conversion Programming

The color engine is equipped with input/output color matrix conversions. This makes possible that the color engine can operate in selectable processing stage. For example, the color engine can operate by RDMA engine's RGB or YCbCr outputs.

If RGB data are fed to the color engine, RGB to YCbCr conversion should be performed before color processing, and YCbCr to RGB conversion can be applied for the following engines.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.14 DIPS CCORR (Display Color Correction Engine)

6.14.1 Introduction

The color correction engine changes the overall mixture of RGB colors to fit the characteristics of target panel.

6.14.2 Features

- Fixed-coefficient inverse gamma table with wide-gamut support
- Programmable 3X3 matrix
- Fixed-coefficient gamma table

6.14.3 Block Diagram

Figure 6-46 is the block diagram of color correction core.

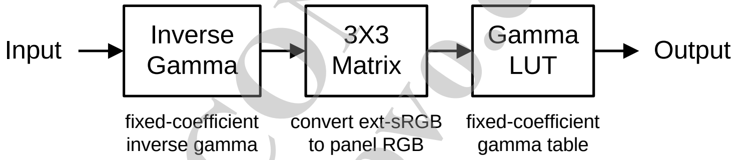


Figure 6-46. Block diagram of color correction

6.14.3.1 Color Correction

In order to display accurate image colors, the panel needs to match the standard sRGB color gamut. However, most LCD panels only display 65 to 80 percent of the sRGB color gamut. The OLED panels, on the other hand, can display over 130 percent of sRGB color gamut. With color correction, you can reproduce correct color on panels with different color gamuts.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Wide-gamut panel without color correction   Wide-gamut panel with color correction

Figure 6-47. Visual effect of color correction

6.14.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.14 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.15 DIPS AAL (Display Adaptive Ambient Light Controller)

6.15.1 Introduction

The AAL processor, composed of content adaptive and ambient light adaptive, is responsible for backlight power saving and sunlight visibility improvement.

6.15.2 Features

- 33-bin weighted histogram
- DRE enhancement for sunlight visibility
- CABC compensation for backlight power saving

6.15.3 Block Diagram

Figure 6-48 is the block diagram of AAL processor.

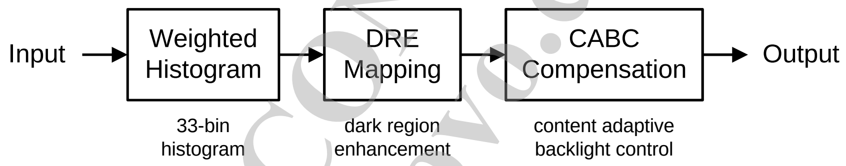


Figure 6-48. Block diagram of AAL processor

6.15.3.1 DRE Enhancement

Dark region enhancement improve the visibility under sunlight.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Without DRE enhancement With DRE enhancement

Figure 6-49. Visual effect of DRE enhancement

6.15.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.15 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.16 DIPS GAMMA (Display GAMMA Processing Engine)

6.16.1 Introduction

The GAMMA engine changes the overall mixture of RGB colors to fit the characteristics of target panel.

6.16.2 Features

- 10-bit gamma table with 512 entries
- Non-block gamma LUT programming

6.16.3 Gamma Correction

For accurate image reproduction, the transfer function of the panel should have a standard 2.20 gamma value. The gamma correction consists of three programmable look-up tables for RGB colors. It applies arbitrary mapping curve to compensate the incorrect transfer function of the panel.

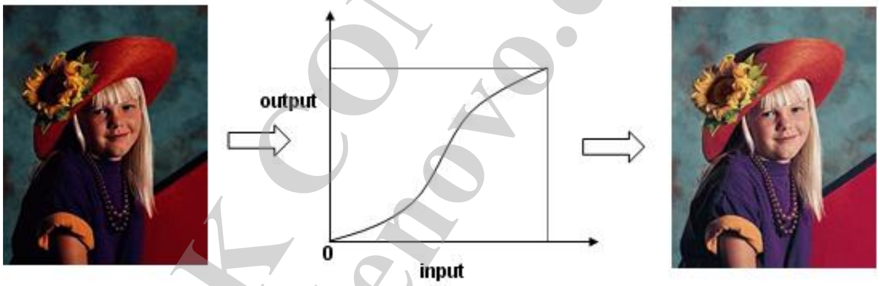


Figure 6-50. Visual effect of gamma correction

6.16.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.16 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.17 DISP DITHER

6.17.1 Introduction

The dither engine decreases the RGB depth while migrates the loss of quality at the same time.

6.17.2 Register Definition

See chapater 4.17 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.18 DISPLAY PWM Generator

6.18.1 Introduction

The PWM generator provides PWM signals for the LED driver of mobile LCM.

6.18.2 Features

- Operating clock: 26MHz (default) or 104MHz
- Gradual PWM control

6.18.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.18 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.18.4 Programming Guide

(1) Turn on DISP_PWM operating clock.
(2) Get MMSYS mutex.
(3) Set up DISP_PWM_CON_0 and DISP_PWM_CON_1.
(4) Write DISP_PWM_EN = 1.
(5) Release MMSYS mutex.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.19 DPI (Digital Parallel Interface)

6.19.1 Introduction

The DPI controller provides data to the companion chip, such as HDMI, MHL, or other bridge chips.

6.19.2 Features

- Programmable 2D/3D, progressive/interlaced timing generator
- Programmable EAV, SAV embedded sync. Timing
- Fixed-coefficient color space transform
- Supports RGB 8-bit/YUV444 8-bit/YUV422 8-bit,10-bit,12-bit output data format
- Supports YC MUX (CCIR656-like) output format
- Support s dual edge output format
- Supports secure display
- 3-tap chroma LPF
- Internal pattern generator

6.19.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.19 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.19.4 Programming Guide

6.19.4.1 General Timing Programming

Programming DPI for one frame timing is easy. Figure 6-51 is illustration of the general timing relationship in DPI. The optional BG defines the region of background color in the image frame. The polarities of VS/HS/DE are all adjustable.

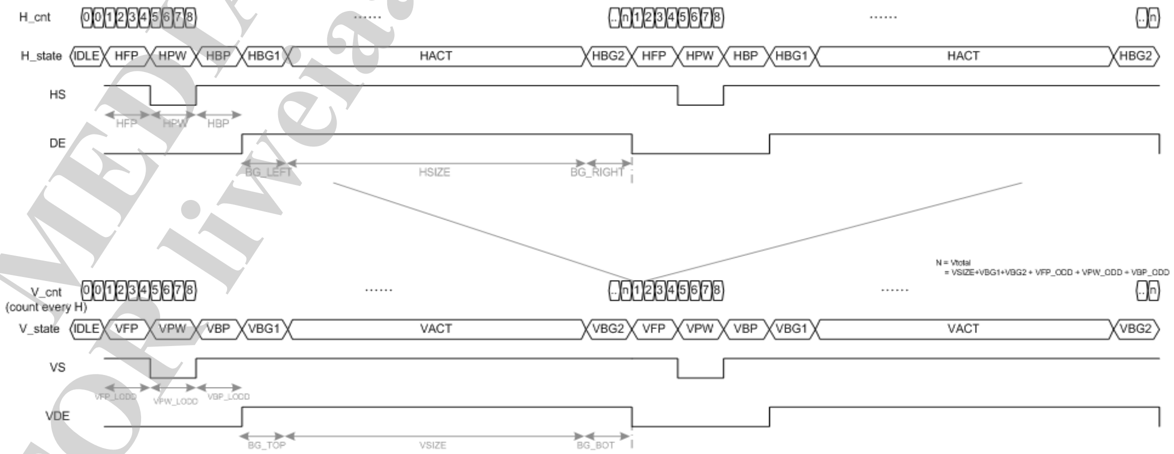


Figure 6-51. Illustration of general timing relationship

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.19.4.2 Data Timing Programming

The DPI engine supports four data/clock timing combinations in dual edge mode. In dual edge mode, one pixel is sent by 2 clock edges, and the order of sending MSB (High bits) and LSB (Low bits) is configurable. Another option is determining sending first half pixel by rising or falling clock edge. Figure 6-52 shows the data/clock timing and their corresponding settings in 4 cases.

```
(1) dpi_ck_pol    = 0
    dpi_edge_sel = 0
                           ____      ____      ____      ____
    DPI_CK               __|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |___
                          ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____
    DPI_DATA[11:0]      <_H0_><_L0_><_H1_><_L1_><_H2_><_L2_><_H3_><_L3_>

(2) dpi_ck_pol    = 0
    dpi_edge_sel = 1
                           ____      ____      ____      ____
    DPI_CK               __|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |___
                          ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____
    DPI_DATA[11:0]      <_L0_><_H0_><_L1_><_H1_><_L2_><_H2_><_L3_><_H3_>

(3) dpi_ck_pol    = 1
    dpi_edge_sel = 0
                       ____      ____      ____      ____      ____
    DPI_CK           __|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |__
                          ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____
    DPI_DATA[11:0]      <_H0_><_L0_><_H1_><_L1_><_H2_><_L2_><_H3_><_L3_>

(4) dpi_ck_pol    = 1
    dpi_edge_sel = 1
                       ____      ____      ____      ____      ____
    DPI_CK           __|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |____|    |__
                          ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____
    DPI_DATA[11:0]      <_L0_><_H0_><_L1_><_H1_><_L2_><_H2_><_L3_><_H3_>
```

Figure 6-52. Data/Clock timing

Table 6-7 shows explicitly the data map of the 4 cases above.

Table 6-7. Data map

	Case 1		Case 2		Case 3		Case 4	
Pin name	Rising edge	Falling edge	Rising edge	Falling edge	Falling edge	Rising edge	Falling edge	Rising edge
D0	G4	B0	B0	G4	G4	B0	B0	G4
D1	G5	B1	B1	G5	G5	B1	B1	G5
D2	G6	B2	B2	G6	G6	B2	B2	G6
D3	G7	B3	B3	G7	G7	B3	B3	G7
D4	R0	B4	B4	R0	R0	B4	B4	R0
D5	R1	B5	B5	R1	R1	B5	B5	R1
D6	R2	B6	B6	R2	R2	B6	B6	R2
D7	R3	B7	B7	R3	R3	B7	B7	R3
D8	R4	G0	G0	R4	R4	G0	G0	R4

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

	Case 1		Case 2		Case 3		Case 4	
Pin name	Rising edge	Falling edge	Rising edge	Falling edge	Falling edge	Rising edge	Falling edge	Rising edge
D9	R5	G1	G1	R5	R5	G1	G1	R5
D10	R6	G2	G2	R6	R6	G2	G2	R6
D11	R7	G3	G3	R7	R7	G3	G3	R7

6.19.4.3 Programming Flow

Figure 6-53 shows the DPI programming flow diagram. First, configure each timing register based on the target frame timing. Next, reset and enable DPI.

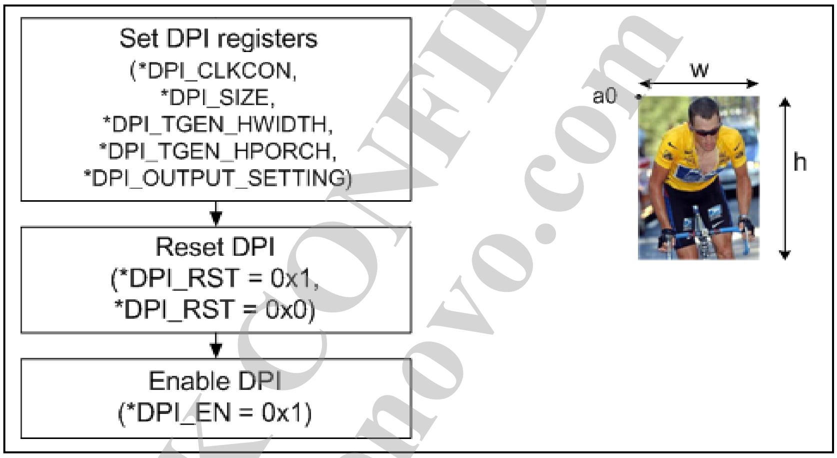


Figure 6-53. Programming flow diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.20 Display Serial Interface

6.20.1 Introduction

The display serial interface (DSI) is based on MIPI Alliance Specification, supporting high-speed serial data transfer between host processor and peripheral devices such as display modules. DSI supports both video mode and command mode data transfer defined in MIPI spec, and it also provides bidirectional transimission with low-power mode to receive mesaages from the peripheral. DSI should work with MIPI_TX_Config module to obtain its engine clock to analog DPHY macro, and it should work with DMA engines in the previous stage of DISP path to read frame pixels from memory.

6.20.2 Features

The DSI engine has the following features for display serial interface:

- 1 clock lane and up to 4 data lanes
- Throughput up to 1G bps for 1 data lane
- Bidirectional data transmisstion in low-power mode in data lane 0
- Uni-directional data transmission in high-speed mode in data lane 0 ~ 3
- 128-enrty command queue for command transmission
- Supports 3 types of video modes: sync-event, sync-pulse, burst mode
- Pixel format of RGB565/RGB666/loosely RGB666/RGB888
- Supports non-continuous high-speed transmission in both data lanes
- Supports command mode frame transmission free-run
- Supports peripheral TE and external TE signal detection
- Supports limited high-speed residual packet transmission during video mode blanking period
- Supports ultra-low power mode control
- Supports frame compression with UFOE module
- Supports low frame-rate (LFR) technique

6.20.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.20 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.20.4 Programming Guide

6.20.4.1 Clock Control

After enabling PLL clock from MIPI DPHY macro and CG cells in MMSYS, a primary module clock enable shouble be set to turn on for the entire design (see Table 6-8). To disable clock for DSI, unset it. For more details on MIPI DPHY PLL clock control, please refer to the functional specification of MIPI TX Config module.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-8. Sequence to enable module clock

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable primary module clock	W	DSI_COM_CON [1]	1

6.20.4.2 DSI HS Clock Control

After enabling the module clock and properly setting up the related registers, it is necessary to enable the clock lane before starting high-speed data transmission by setting up the DSI_PHY_LCCON register. Please follow the steps shown in Table 6-9 to turn on the high-speed clock.

Table 6-9. Sequence to enable high-speed clock

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable DSI high-speed clock	W	DSI_PHY_LCCON [0]	1

To disable high-speed clock, follow steps in Table 6-10. Sequence of exiting ultra-low power mode on clock lane Note that the high-speed clock should be turned off before ultra-low power mode.

Table 6-10. Sequence of exiting ultra-low power mode on clock lane

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Disable DSI high-speed clock	W	DSI_PHY_LCCON [0]	0

6.20.4.3 DSI ULPS Enter Control

In cetain condition, the DISP subsys may be powered off after DSI entering the *ultra-low power state* (ULPS) to reduce more power consumption. ULPS is a protocol defined in MIPI spec and force LCM to enter standby scenario to save power. The sleep-in control in this module is shown in Table 6-11.

Table 6-11. Sequence of sleep-in control (entering ultra-low power mode)

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Disable DSI high-speed clock	W	DSI_PHY_LCCON [0]	0
2	Data lane enter ultra-low power mode	W	DSI_PHY_LD0CON [1]	1
3	Clock lane enter ultra-low power mode	W	DSI_PHY_LCCON [1]	1

6.20.4.4 DSI ULPS Exit Control

To wake up DSI and LCM from ULPM, executing an "ULPS-exit" procedure defined by MIPI spec is required. This procedure performs a protocol to get DP/DN signals from LP-00 through LP-10 to LP-11, where the LP-10 period should not be less than 1ms. The procedure can be easily controlled by the DSI sleep-out sequence with an interrupt indication in Table 6-12. Note that ULPS_WAKEUP_PRD

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

should be changed according to different MIPI frequency to make sure wake-up time is not less than 1ms.

Table 6-12. Sequence of sleep-out control (exiting ultra-low power mode)

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable sleep-out interrupt	W	DSI_INTEN [6]	1
2	Configure corresponding cycle counts for ULPS wakeup period according to current MIPI frequency (ex. 1Gbps)	W	DSI_TIME_CON0 [15:0]	0x80
3	Recover lane number (4-lane)	W	DSI_TXRX_CON [5:2]	0xF
4	Sleep-out start	W	DSI_START [2]	1
5	Issue interrupt and sleep-out done	R	DSI_INTSTA [6]	1
6	Clear interrupt	W	DSI_INTSTA [6]	1

6.20.4.5 DPHY Timing Control

All of the timing parameters defined in MIPI DPHY should be properly written in the DSI registers for correct timeing control. The writtern value is based on the DSI internal clock cycle period which is related to DPHY PLL clock settings through MIPI TX Config engine.

For example, the timing parameter $T_{HS\text{-}PREPARE}$ is mandatory to be between 40ns+4*UI and 85ns +6*UI, where UI means time interval, equal to the duration of any HS state on clock lane. If the clock lane is set to 500MHz frequency, as well as bit-rate 1Gbps, the UI should be 1ns. In other words, the value of $T_{HS\text{-}PREPARE}$ must between 44 ~ 91ns. The internal DSI clock is 4x divided by clock lane, as well as 125MHz. To satisfy $T_{HS\text{-}PREPARE}$, the register value DA_HS_PREP should be 6 ~ 11 (see Table 6-13).

Table 6-13. DPHY timing parameters register settings

	Timing specification	Absolute time for UI: 1ns	DA_HS_PREP value
$T_{HS\text{-}PREPARE}$	40ns+4*UI ~ 85ns +6*UI	44 ~ 91 ns	6 ~ 11

Table 6-14 lists the timing parameters which should be configured in the DSI registers. Note that for different bit-rate requirements, the UI values are various. For more precise timing control, select DPHY clock as fast as possible. However, the faster DPHY clock is set, the more the power waste. A suitable clock is beneficial to the optimization of system power consumption.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Table 6-14. DPHY global operation timing parameter defined by MIPI spec

Parameter	Description	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Notes
$T_{CLK-MISS}$	Detection time that the clock has stopped toggling			60	ns	1
$T_{CLK-POST}$	Time that the transmitter shall continue sending HS clock after the last associated Data Lane has transitioned to LP mode	60 ns + 52*UI			ns	
$T_{CLK-PRE}$	Time that the HS clock shall be driven prior to any associated Data Lane beginning the transition from LP to HS mode	8			UI	
$T_{CLK-PREPARE}$	Time to drive LP-00 to prepare for HS clock transmission	38		95	ns	
$T_{CLK-TERM-EN}$	Time to enable Clock Lane receiver line termination measured from when Dn crosses $V_{IL,MAX}$	Time for Dn to reach $V_{TERM-EN}$		38	ns	
$T_{CLK-TRAIL}$	Time to drive HS differential state after last payload clock bit of a HS transmission burst	60			ns	
$T_{CLK-PREPARE} + T_{CLK-ZERO}$	$T_{CLK-PREPARE}$ + time for lead HS-0 drive period before starting Clock	300			ns	
$T_{D-TERM-EN}$	Time to enable Data Lane receiver line termination measured from when Dn crosses $V_{IL,MAX}$.	Time for Dn to reach $V_{TERM-EN}$		35 ns + 4*UI		
T_{EOT}	Time from start of $T_{HS-TRAIL}$ or $T_{CLK-TRAIL}$ period to start of LP-11 state			105 ns + n*12*UI		3
$T_{HS-EXIT}$	Time to drive LP-11 after HS burst	100			ns	
$T_{HS-PREPARE}$	Time to drive LP-00 to prepare for HS transmission	40 ns + 4*UI		85 ns + 6*UI	ns	
$T_{HS-PREPARE} + T_{HS-ZERO}$	$T_{HS-PREPARE}$ + Time to drive HS-0 before the Sync sequence	145 ns + 10*UI			ns	
$T_{HS-SKIP}$	Time-out at RX to ignore transition period of EoT	40		55 ns + 4*UI	ns	
$T_{HS-TRAIL}$	Time to drive flipped differential state after last payload data bit of a HS transmission burst	max(n*8*UI, 60 ns + n*4*UI)			ns	2, 3
T_{INIT}	Initialization period (PHY might calibrate)	100			µs	
T_{LPX}	Length of any Low-Power state period	50			ns	4
Ratio T_{LPX}	Ratio of $T_{LPX(MASTER)}/T_{LPX(SLAVE)}$ between Master and Slave side	2/3		3/2		
T_{TA-GET}	Time to drive LP-00 by new TX		5*T_{LPX}		ns	
T_{TA-GO}	Time to drive LP-00 after Turnaround Request		4*T_{LPX}		ns	
$T_{TA-SURE}$	Time-out before new TX side starts driving	T_{LPX}		2*T_{LPX}	ns	
T_{WAKEUP}	Recovery time from Ultra-Low Power State	1			ms	

The registers of timing parameters for data lanes and clock lane are illustrated in Figure 6-54 and Figure 6-55 respectivly. The registers for BTA (Bus turn-around) timing are illustrated in Figure 6-56.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

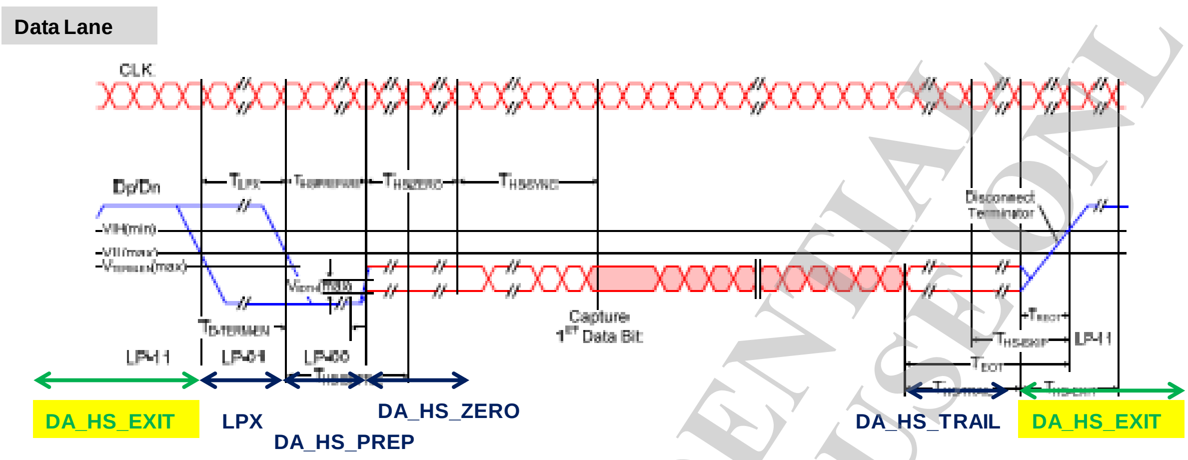


Figure 6-54. Registers for data lane timing parameters

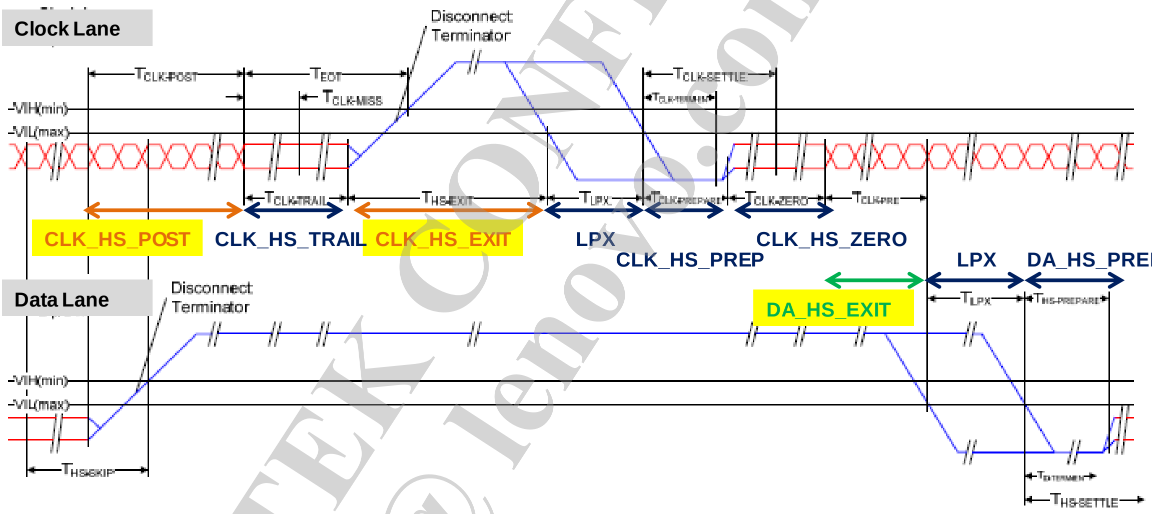


Figure 6-55. Registers for clock lane timing paramaters

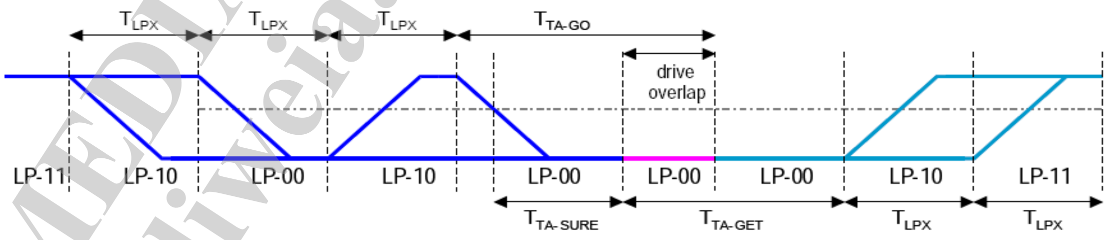


Figure 6-56. Register for BTA timing parameters

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.20.4.6 Command Mode

DSI supports command mode transmission through writing commands to a dedicated command queue. By configuring commands and triggering, the transmission can be executed sequentially.

6.20.4.6.1 Command Queue

DSI has a dedicated command queue that are 32-bit wide and up to 128-entry deep, as shown in Figure 6-57. To simplify the settings for transmitting a packet in the command mode, the command queue is designed to categorize all possible transmission types and commands into four primary instructions and unifies all DSI specification commands into one or several 32-bit wide instructions. Figure 6-57 also illustrates a 32-bit instruction structure with the instruction format of CONFG byte.

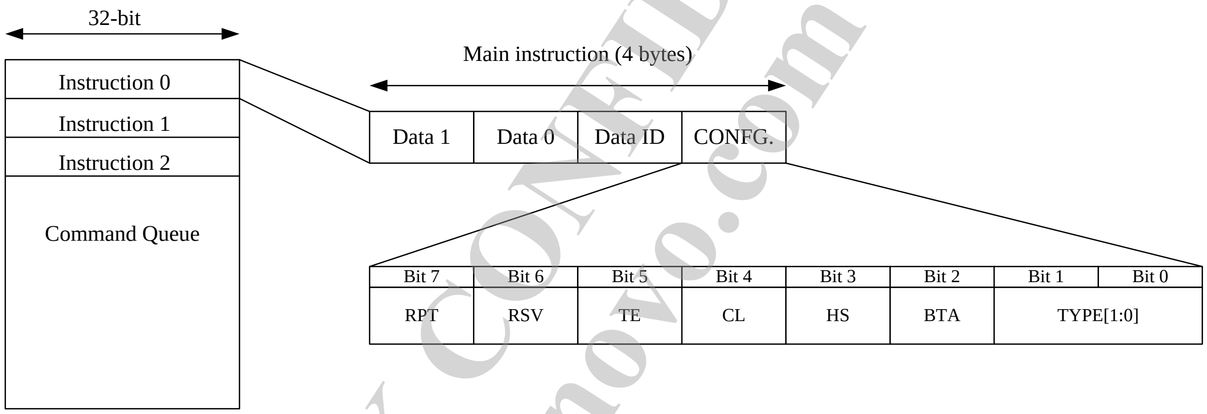


Figure 6-57. DSI command queue instruction format

Table 6-15 shows the descriptions of the CONFG byte to a instruction. For convenience's sake, virtual channel 0 is used for all packets in the following examples. Software programmers should take charge of the real virtual channel numbers to the slave devices.

Table 6-15. Config. field description of main instruction

	Value	Function	Description
Type[1:0]	00	-	Used for DSI short packet read/write command
	01	-	Used for DSI frame buffer write command (long packet)
	10	-	Used for DSI generic long packet write command
	11	-	Used for DSI frame buffer read command (short packet)
BTA	0	Off	Turns around the DSI link after the DSI command is transmitted
	1	On	
HS	0	Off	Enables HS Tx transmission for this packet; otherwise transmit packet via LP Tx
	1	On	
CL	0	8-bit	Selects command length for frame buffer read/write instruction. Only effective for type 1 and type 3 instructions.
	1	16-bt	

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei.a@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

	Value	Function	Description
TE	0	Off	Enables TE request. Will only turn around the DSI link without any packet transmission
	1	On	
Resv	-	-	Reserved for further use
Resv	-	-	Reserved for further use

6.20.4.6.2 Type-0 Instruction

Type-0 instruction is used to transmit short packets. Figure 6-58 lists the formats of type-0 instruction where (Data ID + Data 0 + Data 1) is constructed by a DSI short packet command (without ECC).

Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0
Data 1	Data 0	Data ID	CONFG.

Figure 6-58. Type-0 instruction format

Suppose we are to send "Turn On Peripheral" and "Color Mode On" commands which are transmitted via LP Tx and HS Tx respectively and request slave response after the second command finished, the descriptions can be translated into two 32-bit instructions and achieved by the steps illustrated in Table 6-16.

Table 6-16. Type-0 Tx example

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Fill command queue entry-0	W	DSI_CMDQ_0	0x0000120C
2	Fill command queue entry-1	W	DSI_CMDQ_1	0x00003200
3	Set command count	W	DSI_CMDQ_CON	0x2
4	Start command	W	DSI_START [0]	0x1
5	Issue interrupt and receive slave response	R	DSI_INTSTA [0]	0x1
6	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [0]	0x1
7	Read trigger status (Acknowledge)	R	DSI_RX_TRIG_STA [3:0]	0x4
8	Reponse read ack to module and go to next commends in queue	W	DSI_RX_RACK [0]	0x1
9	Issue interrupt and command done	R	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1
10	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1

6.20.4.6.3 Type-1 Instruction

Type-1 command is used to write data into the frame buffer. As shown in Figure 6-59, there are 4 bytes constructing this type of instruction where Mem_start_0 and Mem_start_1 can be generic commands defined by slave vendors or DCS commands. Mem_start_1 is optional, i.e. the memory

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

start/continue command can be single-byte as DCS defines. To indicate whether the DSI controller sends Mem_start_1 or not depends on the CL bit of the CONFG. byte. Since the length of frame butter to be updated is not a constant, this type of instruction may send several long packets to the slave. The payload data and length of each packet (excluding mem_start_0 and mem_start_1) is prepared by the RDMA controller which couples the output of image data path or layer overlay result to the DSI controller. For the first packet, mem_start_0 and mem_start_1 (if CL = 1) are used as the parameters to inform the slave that the host is starting to write the frame buffer. For the remaining packets, the register value MEM_CONTI[15:0] will be used as the parameters to inform the slave side to write these data following the last pixel of the previous packet. For more flexibility, Mem_start_0, Mem_start_1, MEM_CONTI[15:0] and CL are all programmable. However, it consumes only one entry of command queue.

The user needs to set up two registers to define the packet length and packet count for a frame-based type-1 transmission. Frame width in bytes should be set to DSI_PSCON, and frame height in lines should be set to DSI_VACT_NL, respectively. These two registers are used in both video and command mode frame data transmission.

Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0
Mem start 1 (optional)	Mem start 0	Data ID	CONFG.

Figure 6-59. Type-1 instruction format

Follow the example in Table 6-17 to write the frame buffer via DCS command in the HS Tx mode.

Table 6-17. Type-1 Tx example

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Fill command queue entry-0	W	DSI_CMDQ_0	0x002C3909
2	Set command count	W	DSI_CMDQ_CON	0x1
3	Set memory continue command	W	DSI_MEM_CONTI [15:0]	0x3C
4	Start command	W	DSI_START [0]	0x1
5	Issue interrupt and command done	R	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1
6	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1

6.20.4.6.4 Type-2 Instruction

Type-2 instruction is used to send a long packet. As shown in Figure 6-60, this type of main instruction requires several sub-instructions which do not have CONFIG. To send a type-2 command, the user needs to write a CONFIG with TYPE = 2 and packet header information (Data ID + 2 byte word count) to enrty 0, and a series of data bytes in size of word count to the following entries, excluding ECC and checksum. The bytes in following entries will be treated as long packet data instead of the next instruction until the word count size is reached. The command queue count should be set as the number of multiple entries used.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

The type-2 command is sent in LPTX mode due to memory latency in reading sub-instruction data. Besides, type-2 command should be sent individually without the next instruction followed. For the 32-entry command queue, the maximum word count for long packet is 124 bytes.

Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0
WC 1	WC 0	Data ID	CONFG.
Data 3	Data 2	Data 1	Data 0
		Data WC-1	Data WC-2

Figure 6-60. Type-2 instruction format

See Table 6-18 below for the example of sending 3 parameters (0x33, 0x22, 0x11) by a generic long packet command with 3-byte word count.

Table 6-18. Type-2 Tx example

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Fill command queue entry-0 (data ID and word count)	W	DSI_CMDQ_0	0x00032902
2	Fill command queue entry-1 (parameters)	W	DSI_CMDQ_1	0x00112233
3	Set command count	W	DSI_CMDQ_CON	0x2
4	Start command	W	DSI_START [0]	0x1
5	Issue interrupt and command done	R	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1
6	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1

Note that the RPT bit of CONFIG. is designed for this type of instruction. It is useful for the NULL packet or blanking packet. For example, if a null packet is to be sent, only the main instruction (entry-0 of command queue) will be needed, the following payload data will be sent as “0”.

6.20.4.6.5 Type-3 Instruction

Type-3 instruction is used for reading frame buffer. As shown in Figure 6-61, the format is the same as that of type-1. When this instruction is executed, the host will first send a short packet with memory start parameter given in byte 2 and byte 3 and automatically issue the next packet by memory continue parameters programmed in MEM_CONTI[15:0]. The number of total packets required to be sent depends on the FRM_BC and “maximum return packet size”. For example, if we are to read 1,024 bytes from the frame buffer in the slave, and the “maximum return packet size” is set to “4”, after the first short packet described in main instruction is sent, there will be another 255 short packets with memory continue parameters to be sent successively.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR jweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0
Men start 1 (optional)	Mem start 0	Data ID	CONFG.

Figure 6-61. Type-3 instruction format

See Table 6-19 for the example of using type-3 instruction to perform the frame buffer read.

Table 6-19. Type-3 Tx example

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Fill command queue entry-0	W	DSI_CMDQ_0	0x002E0603
2	Set command count	W	DSI_CMDQ_CON	0x1
3	Set memory read continue command	W	DSI_MEM_CONTI[15:0]	0x3E
4	Start command	W	DSI_START [0]	0x1
5	Issue interrupt and receive slave response	R	DSI_INTSTA [0]	0x1
6	Read receive data bytes	R	DSI_RX_DATA03	-
7	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [0]	0x1
8	Reponse read ack to module and go to next commends in queue	W	DSI_RX_RACK [0]	0x1
9	Issue interrupt and command done	R	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1
10	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1

6.20.4.6.6 Command Mode Status Debug Register

Sometimes an inproper configuration settings to DSI, DISP paths and MUTEX may cause hanged issues on DSI because command mode control needs to wait for memory data from DMA in previous stages. As a result, a debugging registers DSI_STATE_DBG6 is designed for users to observe internal states of DSI controller in order to reduce debugging efforts. Table 6-20 shows the status mapping to the register bit [14:0]. The user can check the on-hot bit to find incorrect settings.

Table 6-20. Command mode status in debugging register

Bit	Value	Description
0	0x0001	Idle (wait command)
1	0x0002	Reads command queue for packet header
2	0x0004	Sends type-0 command
3	0x0008	Waits for data from the previous module to send type-1 command
4	0x0010	Sends type-1 command
5	0x0020	Sends type-2 command
6	0x0040	Reads command queue for paket data
7	0x0080	Sends type-3 command
8	0x0100	Sends BTA
9	0x0200	Waits for RX-read data

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY weiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Bit	Value	Description
10	0x0400	Waits for software RACK for RX-read data
11	0x0800	Waits for peripheral TE
12	0x1000	Gets TE signaling
13	0x2000	Waits for software RACK for peripheral TE
14	0x4000	Waits for external TE

6.20.4.7 Video Mode

DSI supports video mode traffic sequences, including sync pulse mode, sync event mode and burst mode. To facilitate the translation of the parameters of packets, see the timing diagrams below for the corresponding register settings.

6.20.4.7.1 Sync-Pulse Mode

A non-burst sync-pulse mode enables the periphera to accurately reconstructoriginal video timing, including sync pulse widths. A timing diagram for sync-pulse mode is shown in Figure 6-62, which also shows registers mappings to lines of VSA/VBP/VACT/VFP periods

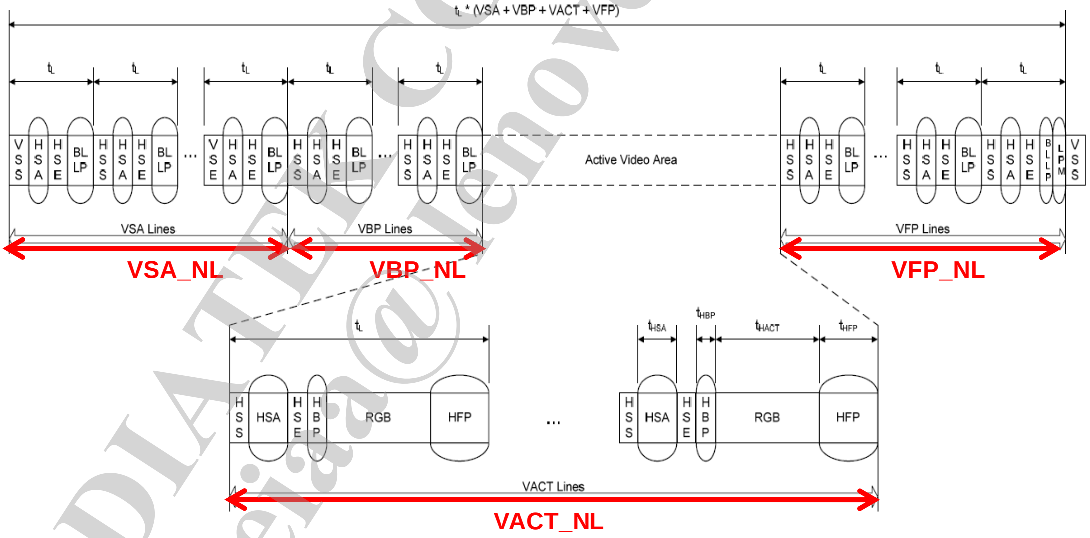


Figure 6-62. Non-burst transmission: sync-pulse mode

A detailed timing diagram for one line period is shown in Figure 6-63. In this diagram, the user needs to base on real timing parameters of HPW/HBP/HFP and pixel format to figure out the correct value to registers. In addition, a slight adjustment for HFP_WC should also be performed because it needs to leave some space time for HS preparation time due to non-continuous data lane transmission. The formulas for these registers are shown in Figure 6-64.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweijia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

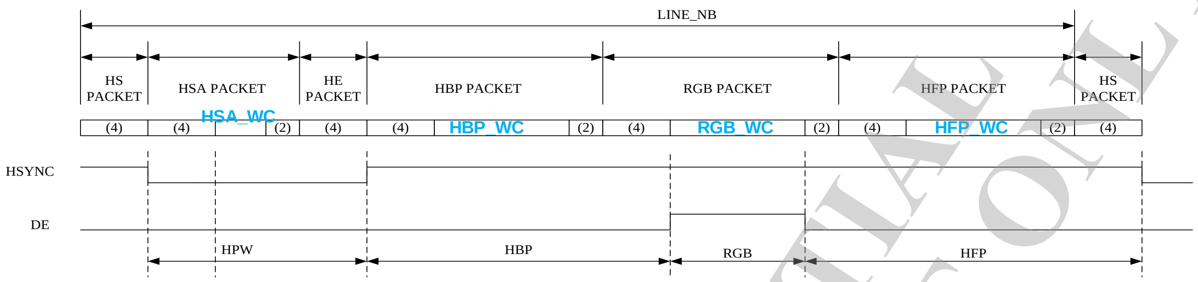


Figure 6-63. Sync-pulse mode line period

- HSA_WC = HPW * BPP - 10
- HBP_WC = HBP * BPP - 10
- RGB_WC = active_pixel * BPP
- HFP_WC = HFP * BPP - 12 - data_init_cycle * lane_num
- data_init_cycle = T_hs-exit + T_lpx + T_hs-prep + T_hs-zero

Figure 6-64. Sync-pulse mode word-count parameters

6.20.4.7.2 Sync-Event Mode

A non-burst sync-event mode is similar to the pulse-sync mode, but accurate reconstruction of sync pulse widths is not required. Therefore, a single sync event is substituted. The timing diagram is shown in Figure 6-65.

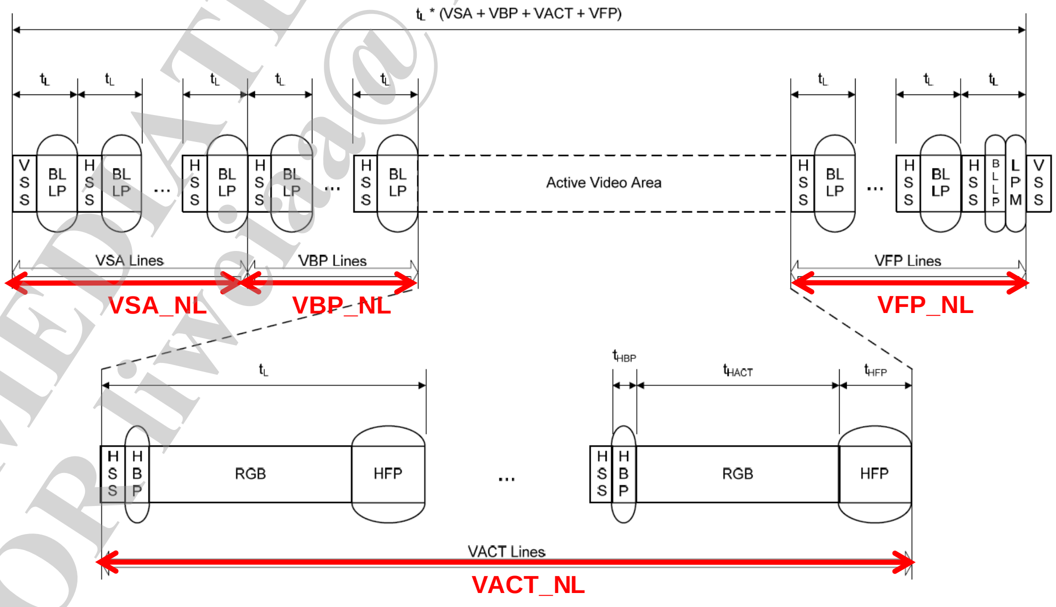


Figure 6-65. Non-burst transmission: Sync-event mode

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiai@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

A detailed timing diagram for one line period is shown in Figure 6-66, and the register settings of word count is listed in Figure 6-67.

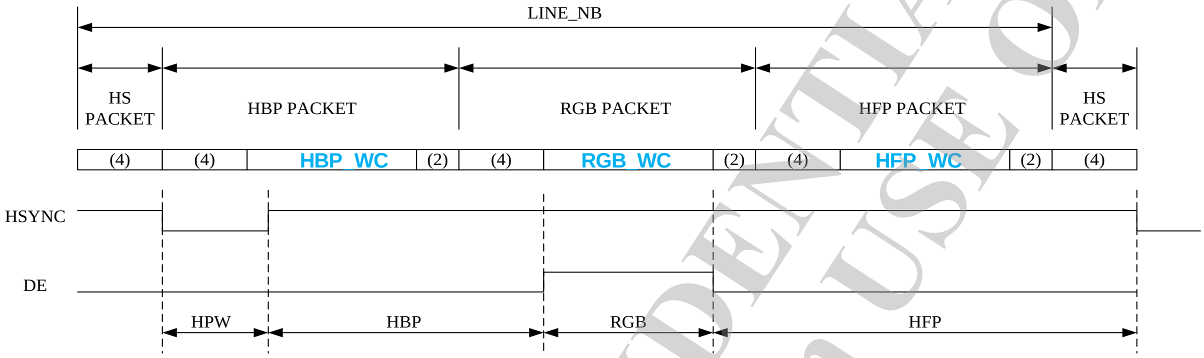


Figure 6-66. Sync-event mode line period

- HSA_WC = don't care
- HBP_WC = (HPW + HPW) * BPP - 10
- RGB_WC = active_pixel * BPP
- BLLP_WC = only set in Burst Mode
- HFP_WC = HFP * BPP - 12 - data_init_cycle * lane_num
- data_init_cycle = T_hs-exit + T_lpx + T_hs-prep + T_hs-zero

Figure 6-67. Sync-event mode word-count parameters

6.20.4.7.3 Burst Mode

A burst mode let RGB pixel packets time-compressed, leaving more time during a scan line for LP mode to save power or for multiplexing other transmissions onto DSI link. The timing diagram is shown in Figure 6-65.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

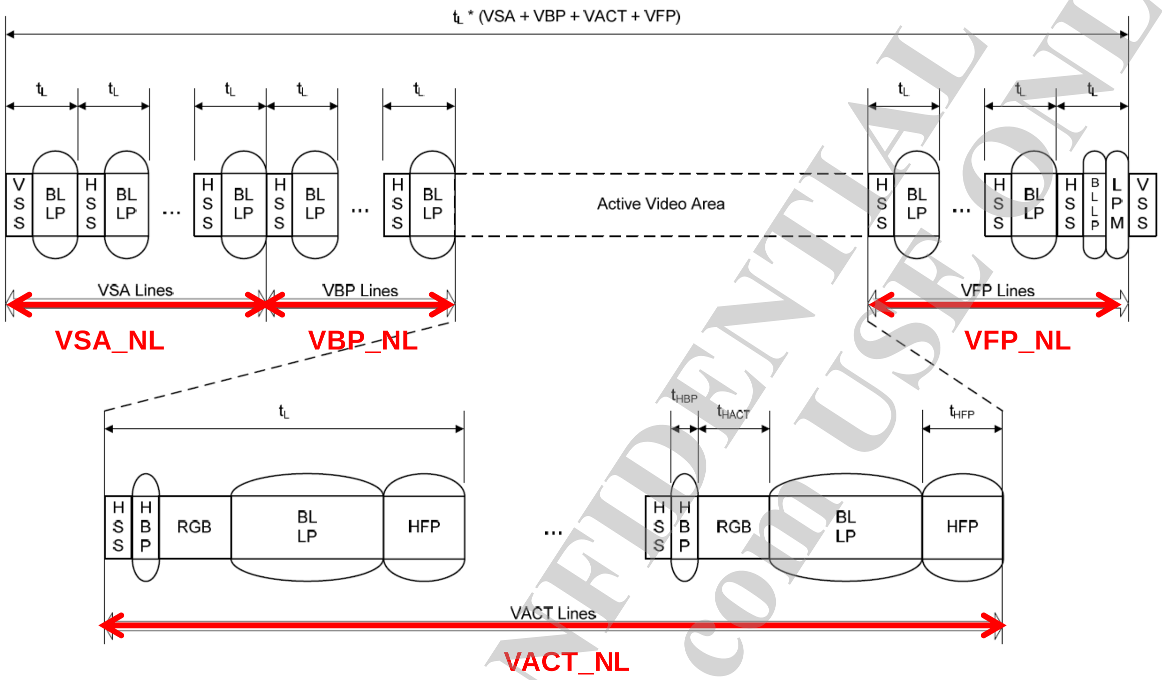


Figure 6-68. Burst mode transmission

Detailed timing diagram for one line period of burst mode is almost the same as sync-event mode shown in Figure 6-66 and Figure 6-67 except that the BLLC_WC register should be set.

6.20.4.8 Peripheral TE Detection

6.20.4.8.1 TE Signaling

DSI has ability to receive peripheral TE (Tearing Effect) signals via BTA process. Before starting to receive TE signals from the peripheral, make sure a DCS command of “set_tear_on” is sent and register configuration of TE is enabled in the peripheral to avoid TE hanged issue. Here is an example in Table 6-21 to show how to trigger TE commands by command queue.

Table 6-21. Example of TE signaling detection

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Fill command queue : DCS “set_tear_on”	W	DSI_CMDQ_0	0x00351500
2	Fill command queue : get TE	W	DSI_CMDQ_1	0x00000020
3	Fill command queue : type-1 command	W	DSI_CMDQ_2	0x002C3909
4	Set command count	W	DSI_CMDQ_CON	0x3
5	Set memory write continue command	W	DSI_MEM_CONTI[15:0]	0x3C
6	Start command	W	DSI_START [0]	0x1
7	Issue interrupt and receive TE	R	DSI_INTSTA [2]	0x1

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
8	Read trigger status (TE)	R	DSI_RX_TRIG_STA [3:0]	0x2
9	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [2]	0x1
10	Reponse read ack to module and go to next commends in queue	W	DSI_RX_RACK [0]	0x1
11	Issue interrupt and command done	R	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1
12	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [1]	0x1

6.20.4.8.2 External TE Pin

In certain case we may use external TE pin instead of TE signals for some reasons. DSI supports such mechanism to issue external TE interrupt signals. Refer to the sequences shown in Table 6-22 for detailed control information.

Table 6-22. Example of external TE pin detection

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable external TE interrupt	W	DSI_INTEN [4]	0x1
2	Enable external TE	W	DSI_TXRX_CON [10]	0x1
3	Select external TE polarity (active-high)	W	DSI_TXRX_CON [9]	0x0
4	Issue interrupt and receive external TE	R	DSI_INTSTA [4]	0x1
5	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [4]	0x1

6.20.4.9 Video Mode Extra Packet Transmission

DSI supports sending out an extra short/long packet during video mode transmission. This operation must use a set of special registers instead of the original command queue. The single extra packet is sent once and immediately when the user triggers the VM_CMD_START bit of register DSI_START. Refer to the registers with prefix of "DSI_VM_CMD" for more detailed descriptions.

6.20.4.9.1 Short Packet

To transmit an extra short packet in the video mode, follow the example illustrated in Table 6-23.

Table 6-23. Example of short packet transmission in video mode

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable vm-cmd function	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [0]	0x1
2	Select short packet to be sent	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [1]	0x0
3	Enable sending period (VBP, VFP)	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [5:3]	0x6
4	Fill short packet ID and bytes 0~1	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [31:8]	0x001535
5	Enable vm-cmd done interrupt	W	DSI_INTEN [5]	0x1
6	Start vm-cmd transmission	W	DSI_START [16]	0x1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
7	Issue interrupt and vm-cmd transmission done	R	DSI_INTSTA [5]	0x1
8	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [5]	0x1

6.20.4.9.2 Long Packet

To transmit an extra long packet in the video mode, follow the example illustrated in Table 6-24.

Table 6-24. Example of long packet transmission in video mode

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable vm-cmd function	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [0]	0x1
2	Select long packet to be sent	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [1]	0x1
3	Enable sending period (VSA, VBP, VFP)	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [5:3]	0x7
4	Fill long packet ID and word count	W	DSI_VM_CMD_CON [31:8]	0x000739
5	Fill long packet data byte 0~3	W	DSI_VM_CMD_DATA0	0x332211FF
6	Fill long packet data byte 4~6	W	DSI_VM_CMD_DATA1	0x00665544
7	Enable vm-cmd done interrupt	W	DSI_INTEN [5]	0x1
8	Start vm-cmd transmission	W	DSI_START [16]	0x1
9	Issue interrupt and vm-cmd transmission done	R	DSI_INTSTA [5]	0x1
10	Clear interrupt status	W	DSI_INTSTA [5]	0x1

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.21 MIPI TX Configuration Module

6.21.1 Introduction

The MIPI TX configuration module, as well as MIPI_TX_Config described in the following sections, is used to control MIPI TX related registers for MIPI DPHY macro. This analog macro includes design of SDM PLL, bandgap, LDO core, lane control, GPI pads, output enable, etc. It provides MIPI DSI high-speed clock up to 1.5Gbps, as well as 768MHz and provides primary clocks to DSI module.

6.21.2 Features

The following functions of MIPI DPHY can be controlled by this module.

- Bandgap control
- LDO core power and configuration
- SDM PLL configuration
- SSC control
- Analog function related settings and status
- Output pads control and electronic features
- GPI pads control
- Software-control mode for each lanes

6.21.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.21 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

6.21.4 Programming Guide

6.21.4.1 MIPI PLL Initial Sequence

Figure 6-69 illustrates the waveform of the initial sequence to enable power of MIPI DPHY macro and initialize MIPI PLL. The user should follow the steps described in Table 6-23 to perform waveform behavior for MIPI DPHY control. In this example, 520MHz clock is set.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiqa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

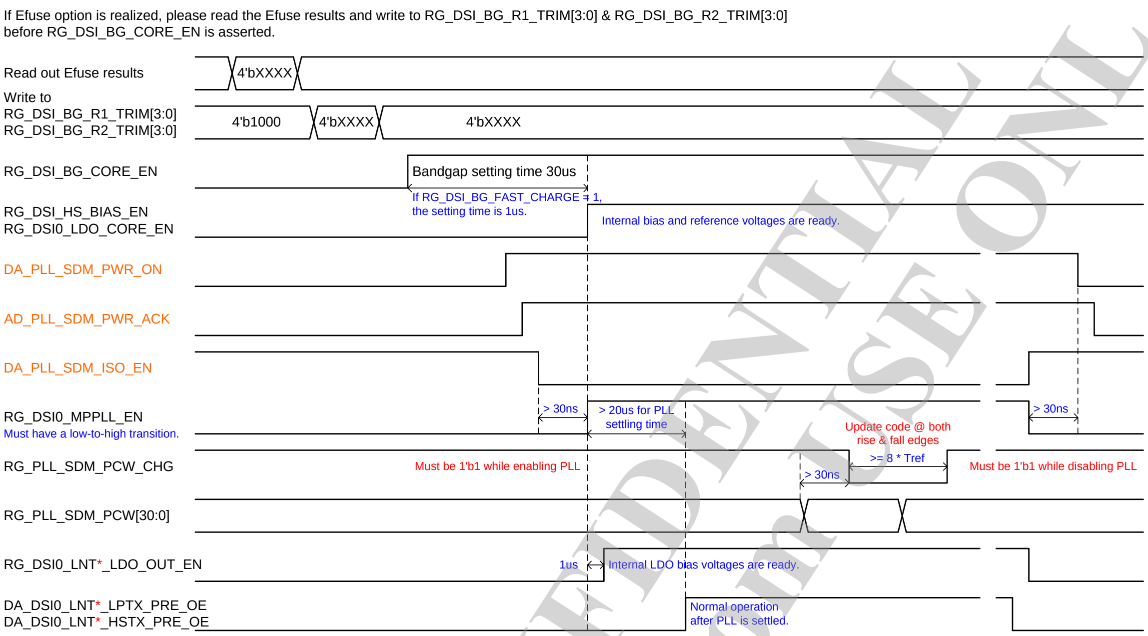


Figure 6-69. Initial waveform of MIPI PLL

Table 6-25. MIPI PLL initial sequence

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable 26MHz reference clock	W	AP_PLL_CON0 [6] (0x10209000)	1
2	Enable BG core power and clock	W	DSI_BG_CON [1:0]	3
3	Wait for 30 us	-		
4	Enable HS bias	W	DSI_TOP_CON [1]	1
5	Enable LDO core power and CKG	W	DSI_CON [1:0]	3
6	Enable PLL power	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [0]	1
7	Disable PLL isolation	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [1]	0
8	Set divider control for PLL (no division)	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [9:1]	0
9	Set SSC control for PLL (no SSC)	W	DSI_PLL_CON1	1
10	Set PLL frequency (512MHz)	W	DSI_PLL_CON2	0x50000000
11	Enable clock lane	W	DSI_CLOCK_LANE [0]	1
12	Enable data lane 0	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_0 [0]	1
13	Enable data lane 1	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_1 [0]	1
14	Enable data lane 2	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_2 [0]	1
15	Enable data lane 3	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_3 [0]	1
16	Enable PLL	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [0]	1
17	Wait for 20 us	-		
18	Disable pad tie low	W	DSI_TOP_CON [11]	0

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.21.4.2 MIPI PLL De-initial Sequence

For power-off of MIPI PLL for sleep-in or suspend purpose, follow the steps listed in Table 6-26. Be sure to make all registers to default settings to avoid unexpected power consumption.

Table 6-26. MIPI PLL de-initial sequence

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Disable PLL	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [0]	0
2	Enable pad tie low	W	DSI_TOP_CON [11]	1
3	Disable clock lane	W	DSI_CLOCK_LANE [0]	0
4	Disable data lane 0	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_0 [0]	0
5	Disable data lane 1	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_1 [0]	0
6	Disable data lane 2	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_2 [0]	0
7	Disable data lane 3 (if it exists)	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_3 [0]	0
8	Enable PLL isolation	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [1]	1
9	Disable PLL power	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [0]	0
10	Disable HS bias	W	DSI_TOP_CON [1]	0
11	Disable LDO core power and CG	W	DSI_CON [1:0]	0
12	Disable BG core power and clock	W	DSI_BG_CON [1:0]	0
13	Reset divider control for PLL	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [9:1]	0
14	Reset SSC control for PLL	W	DSI_PLL_CON1	0
15	Reset PLL frequency (default value)	W	DSI_PLL_CON2	0x50000000
16	Disable 26MHz reference clock	W	AP_PLL_CON0 [6] (0x10209000)	0

6.21.4.3 Suspend/Resume Control

If the system enters suspend mode, DSI module should be operated to enter the ultra-low power state (ULPS) before execution of the sequence shown in Table 6-26. When the system needs to resume from suspend mode, the sequence shown in Table 6-23 should be performed first followed by the ULPS-exit procedure to return the normal output status.

6.21.4.4 Software Control Mode

The software control mode allows user control output DP/DN pads directly. It is usually used for test or signal measurement. To enable output signals, it needs to setup PRE_OE and OE bits under this mode. Table 6-27 is an example of software control mode operation which sets all output pads to low voltage.

Table 6-27. Software control mode example

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Set up clock lane PRE_OE/OE signal	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_CON0 [1:0]	0x3

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
2	Set up Data Lane 0 PRE_OE/OE signal	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_CON0 [8:7]	0x3
3	Set up Data Lane 1 PRE_OE/OE signal	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_CON0 [15:14]	0x3
4	Set up Data Lane 2 PRE_OE/OE signal	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_CON0 [21:20]	0x3
5	Set up Data Lane 3 PRE_OE/OE signal	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_CON0 [27:26]	0x3
6	Enable softwate control mode	W	DSI_SW_CTRL_EN	1

6.21.4.5 MIPI PLL SSC

MIPI PLL supports SSC (Spread-Spectrum Control) with fractional précised frequency multiplication. To enable SSC function, the user needs to set up the SSC_EN bit of register DSI_PLL_CON1 and other proper settings. Table 6-28 is an example of initial sequence with SSC for 0 ~ -4% and frequency of 208MHz.

Table 6-28. MIPI PLL initial sequence with SSC enable

Step	Description	R/W	Register [bit]	Value
1	Enable BG core power and clock	W	DSI_BG_CON [1:0]	3
2	Wait for 30 us	-		
3	Enable HS bias	W	DSI_TOP_CON [1]	1
4	Enable LDO core power and CG	W	DSI_CON [1:0]	3
5	Enable PLL power	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [0]	1
6	Disable PLL isolation	W	DSI_PLL_PWR [1]	0
7	Set up TXDIV0 divider (divided by 2)	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [4:3]	1
8	Set up SSC fraction enable	W	DSI_PLL_CON1 [0]	1
9	Set up SSC phase initial (downward)	W	DSI_PLL_CON1 [1]	1
10	Set up SSC period	W	DSI_PLL_CON1 [31:16]	0x01B1
11	Set up PLL frequency	W	DSI_PLL_CON2	0x40000000
12	Set up SSC amplitude	W	DSI_PLL_CON3	0x07900790
13	Enable clock lane	W	DSI_CLOCK_LANE [0]	1
14	Enable Data Lane 0	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_0 [0]	1
15	Enable Data Lane 1	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_1 [0]	1
16	Enable Data Lane 2	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_2 [0]	1
17	Enable Data Lane 3	W	DSI_DATA_LANE_3 [0]	1
18	Enable PLL	W	DSI_PLL_CON0 [0]	1
19	Wait for 20 us	-		
20	Enable SSC	W	DSI_PLL_CON1 [2]	1
21	Disable pad tie low	W	DSI_TOP_CON [11]	0

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lhweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.22 JPEG Encoder

6.22.1 Introduction

The hardware JPEG encoder implements the baseline mode of Standard ISO/IEC 10918-1. After initialization by software, the hardware JPEG encoder can generate the entire compressed file. Figure 6-70 shows the procedure of the JPEG encoder. The YUV pixel data are retrieved from the memory and grouped into 8x8 blocks. YUV422 one plane and YUV420 two plane formats are supported. When encoding, the first thing to do is turning the pixel data into the frequency domain using FDCT. After the quantization is done, the quantized DCT coefficients are encoded by RLE and VLC. Then the bitstream of JPEG file is generated.

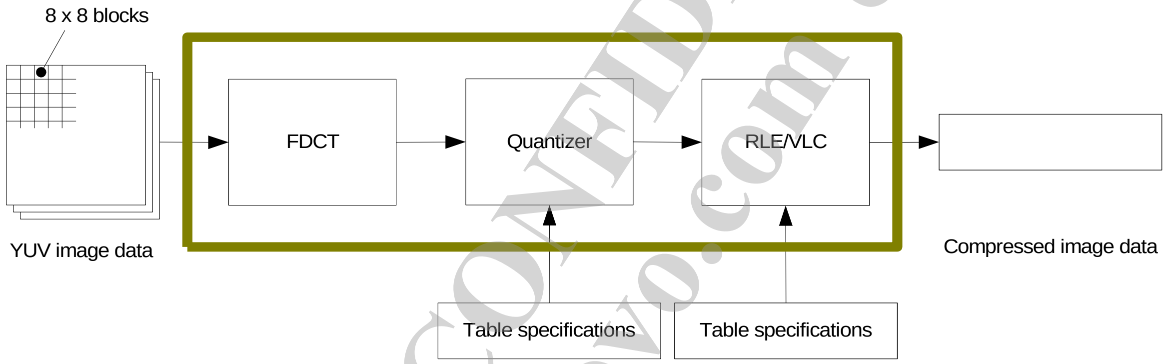


Figure 6-70. Procedure of JPEG encoder

6.22.2 Features

The JPEG encoder supports YUV 422 and 420 formats for color pictures. With software assistance and suitable destination memory address setting; JFIF/EXIF JPEG format can also be supported. For hardware reduction, it uses standard DC and AC Huffman tables for both luminance and chrominance components. To adjust the picture compression ratio and picture quality, there are 15 levels of quantization that can be programmed.

6.22.2.1 Software Reset Mechanism

To avoid problem occurred with wrong SMI protocol, the software should do reset based on the following procedure.

1. The EN bit in JPGENC_CTL should be set to 0.
2. The software polls the GMC_IDLE bit in JPGENC_DEBUG_INFO0.

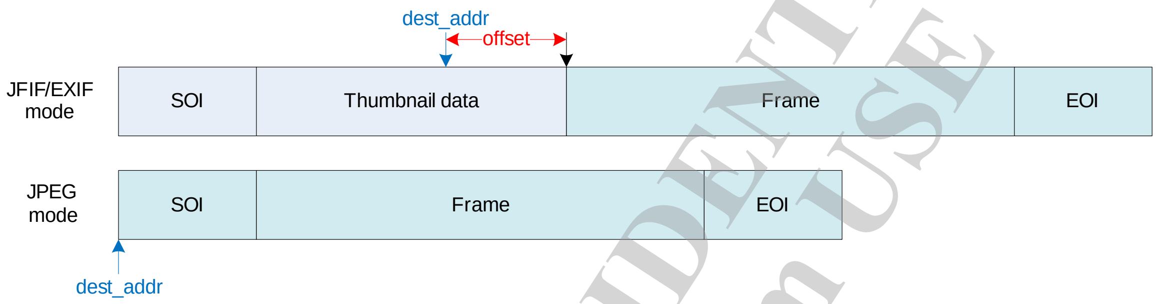
Only when the GMC_IDLE bit is 1 can the RSTB bit in JPGENC_RST be set to 0 to do the reset scheme. Be sure to follow this procedure to do software reset.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.22.2.2 Byte Offset Address Setting

To align SMI bus bitwidth, the buffer address should be 16-bytes aligned. However, to reduce software bitstream copy and concatenate effort, software can program a byte offset setting (from 0~15 bytes) to offset the start position of bitstream written out by hardware. The illustration of this feature is as the following.



- Example: If SOI starts at 0x0000,
  - JFIF/EXIF mode: SOI+thumbnail data length = 50 bytes
    - dest_addr = 0x0030
      offset = 0x0002

6.22.3 DRAM Buffer Requirement

- Source frame buffer
  - YUV422:
    - One frame buffer
    - Buffer size
      - {[(width_y*2) + 127]/128}*128*[(height_y + 7)/8]*8
  - YUV420: Two frame buffers
    - Two frame buffers
    - Buffer size
      - Y: [(width_y + 127)/128]*128*[(height_y + 15)/16]*16
      - UV: [(width_y + 127)/128]*128*[(height_y + 7)/8]*8
- Bitstream buffer
  - One buffer
  - Buffer size (suggested)
    - YUV422: width_y* height_y*2
    - YUV420: width_y* height_y*1.5
    - Must be multiple of 128 bytes.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiga@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

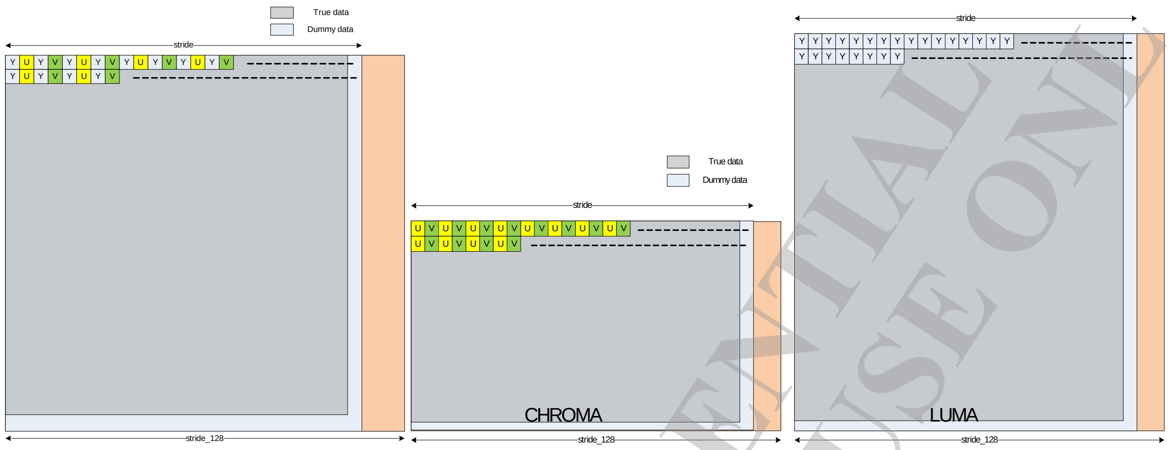


Figure 6-71. Memory footprint of source frame buffer

6.22.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.22 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.23 Video Decoder

6.23.1 Introduction

MediaTek Video Decoder (VDEC) in project MT6737 supports multi-standard video compression format, which greatly reduces the CPU loading and achieves high performance video decompression.

The video standard supported by VDEC includes:

- MPEG1/2
- H.264 CBP/MP/HP
- MPEG4 ASP
- DIVX3/DIVX4/DIVX5/DIVX6/DIVX HD/XVID
- Sorenson H.263, H.263
- De-Blocking Filter for MPEG2, H.263
- H.264 decoder Constraint Baseline Profile/Main/High Profile

VDEC supports full-HD 30fps under the limitation of picture size > full-HD, (i.e. does not support picture width > 1920 or picture height > 1088).

6.23.2 Block Diagram

The architecture and core blocks of VDEC are shown in Figure 6-72, including the following parts: Entropy Decoder, IS/IQ/IT, MV Calculation, Intra Prediction, Motion Compensation and De-blocking Filter. The input to VDEC is a compressed video bitstream. After the decoding process, the reconstructed video will be sent to the display stage.

6.23.3 Interface

The interface of VDEC is shown in Figure 6-73. Related modules include SMI interface, APB interface and handshaking bus between VDEC and CDP. The output format supported by VDEC is:

- NV12_BLK (Video block mode), 420 format block mode, 2 plane (UV)
- NV12_BLK_FCM (Video field compact mode), 420 format block mode, 2 plane (UV)

VDEC use DRAM as bitstream input, working buffer, reference buffer and output, and DRAM access process is achieved by using SMI interface. 7 sets of SMI interface with 128 bits read/write are used including MC/PP/PP_WRAP/AVC_MV/PRED_RD/PRED_WR/VLD. In addition, all ports are EMI ports, i.e. no SYSRAM required.

Register settings are passed to VDEC by APB interface. There are 1 set of APB interface.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

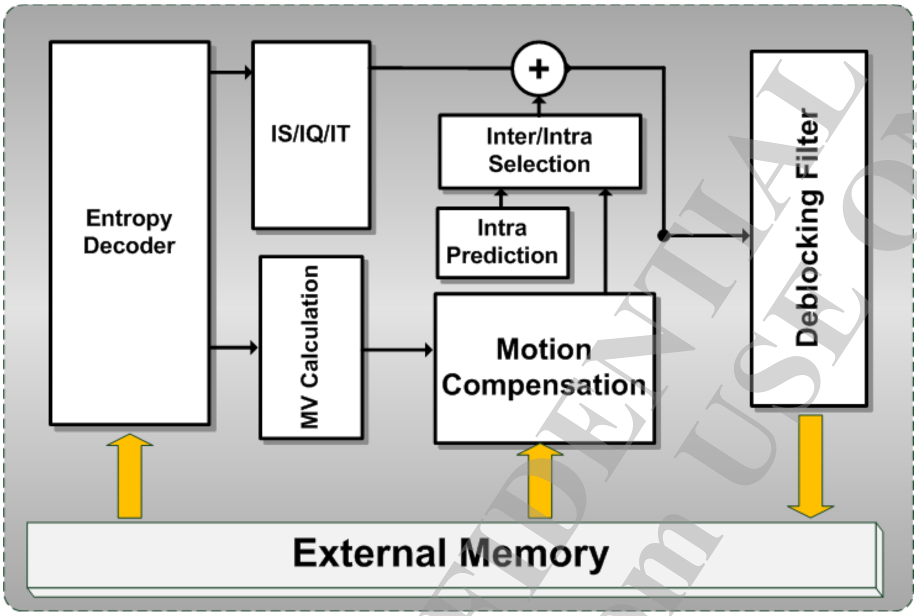


Figure 6-72. Block diagram of video decoder

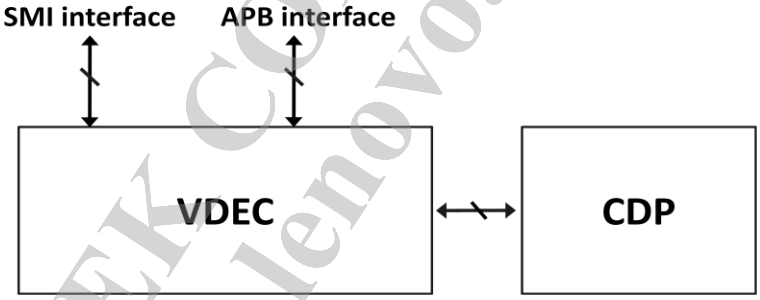


Figure 6-73. Interface of VDEC

6.23.4 Programming Guide

This section defines the recommended programming procedure for using VDEC to perform video decompression correctly. Moreover, this section also introduces common functions and settings, that is, these functions do not change under different video coding standards.

6.23.4.1 Base Settings

This section describes useful settings before programming VDEC, including clocks and base address of VDEC.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.23.4.1.1 Clocks

Two clocks are required for VDEC.

- smi_clk: 300MHz
- vdec_clk: 273MHz

For more details, see the CKGEN register map.

6.23.4.1.2 VDEC Register Base Address

Base address of each sub-module is described in Table 6-29.

Table 6-29. VDEC base address

CS	BASE (hex)	HW cs	comment
VDEC_MISC	0x16020000	cs_vdec_dv	Legacy naming is DV_BASE
VLD	0x16021000	cs_vdec_vld	
VLD_TOP	0x16021800	cs_vdec_vld	Partial bank of VLD_BASE, i.e. (VLD | 0x800)
MC	0x16022000	cs_vdec_mc	
AVC_VLD	0x16023000	cs_avc_vld	
AVC_MV	0x16024000	cs_avc_mv	
PP	0x16025000	cs_vdec_pp	
VDEC_GCON	0x16000000		VDEC global control registers
SMI_LARB1	0x16010000		SMI Larb1 control registers

6.23.4.2 VDEC Hardware Architecture

Figure 6-74 is the hardware architecture; Figure 6-75 is the detail architecture of VLD. It is essential to know the architecture of VLD because most common settings are related to this module.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

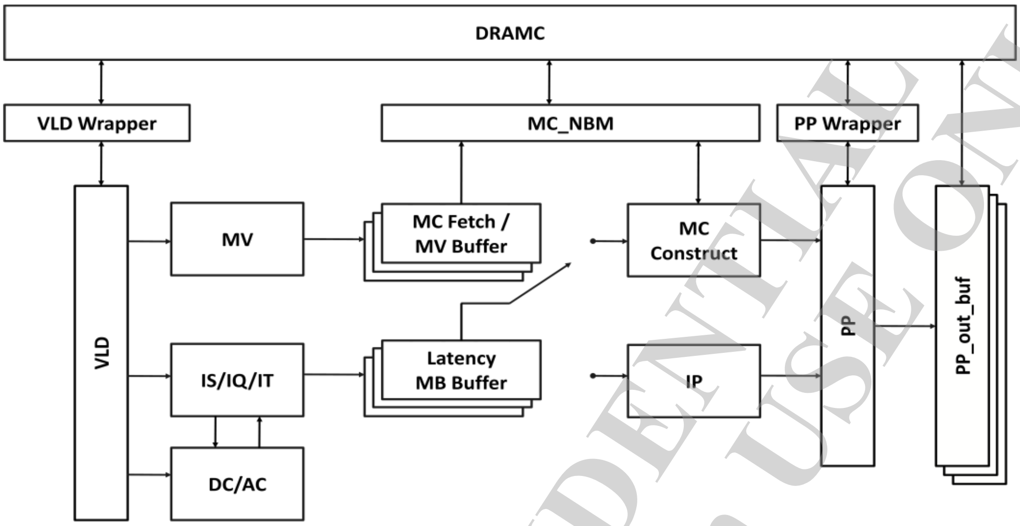


Figure 6-74. VDEC hardware architecture

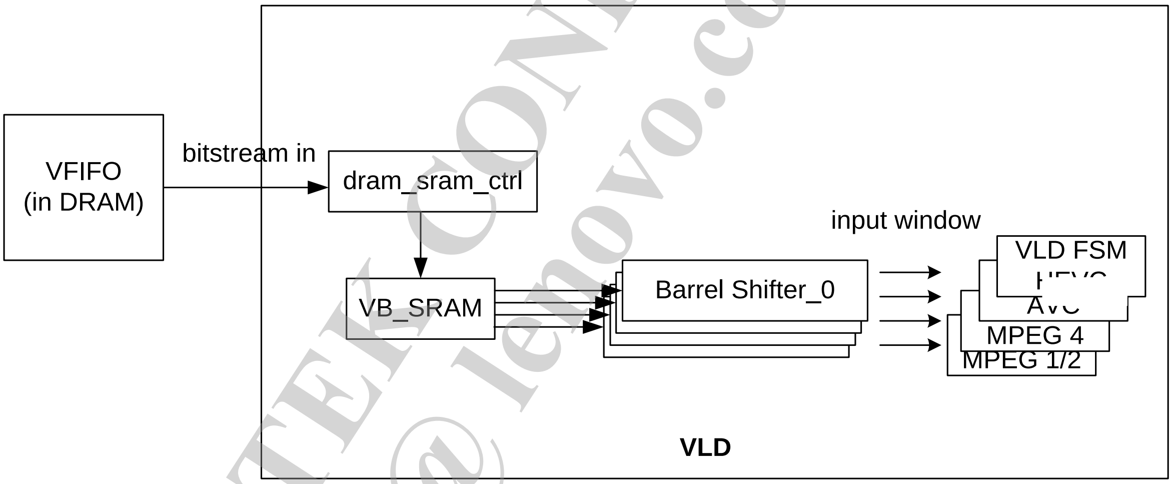


Figure 6-75. VLD hardware architecture

6.23.4.3 Firmware Hardware Partition

Figure 6-76 shows a typical decoding flow with FW/HW partition. SW takes charge of the frame level setting, including syntax decoded from frame header and proper DRAM buffer allocation, and triggers HW to decode the bitstream. An interrupt signal will be sent to CPU when HW finishes decoding a frame and FW can reset HW and program settings for the next frame if necessary. Details of FW decoding are described in section 6.23.4.4.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

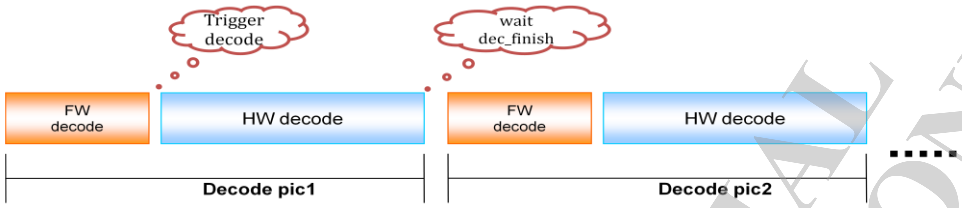


Figure 6-76. VDEC decoding flow

6.23.4.4 FW Decoding Flow

This section describes our recommended step-by-step FW setup flow. Each step should be followed to ensure a correct decoding process.

1. Soft reset
    a. Issue reset vld_reg_66[0] = 1.
    b. Turn on VDEC related clocks.
    c. Release soft reset vld_reg_66[0] = 0.
2. Initial Bitstream DMAs and Barrel-Shifters.
3. Decode frame layer syntax.
4. Maintain DPB buffer.
5. HW registers setting
    a. SQT setting
    b. MV setting
    c. MC setting
    d. De-blocking (PP) setting
    e. VLD setting
6. Trigger HW decoding.
7. Wait for decoding picture to finish via VDEC interrupt (HW auto turns off VDEC related clocks).

6.23.4.4.1 Software Reset and Power Control Flow

Figure 6-77 is the software reset and power control flow. Details of each step are described in the following sections.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

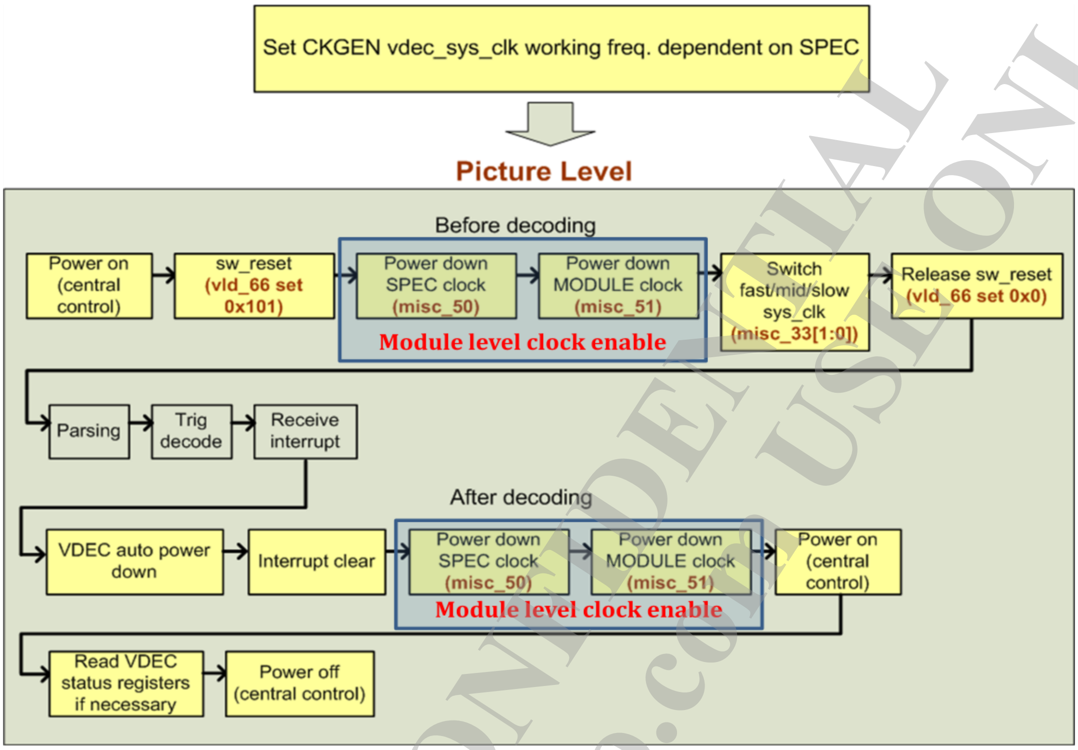


Figure 6-77. Software reset and power control

- ✓ Power on (central control)
  - Set VDEC_GCON reg 0 bit[0] (vdec subsys clock enable) = 1.
  - Enable global clocks of VDEC (DRAM clock, vdec_sys clock, bus clock).
- ✓ VDEC auto power-down
  - Auto turn off DRAM clock, vdec_sys clock.
  - Auto set pdn_con_spec (vdec_misc_reg 50) = 32'hffffffff.
  - Auto set pdn_con_module (vdec_misc_reg 51) = 32'hffffffff.
- ✓ Interrupt clear
  - No interrupt clear from CPU
  - Use internal VDEC RISC clear int
    - VDEC_MISC reg 41
      - Bit [0] (risc_clr_int_mode) always set to 1
      - Bit [4] (risc_int_clr): Internal VDEC RISC clear int
- ✓ Power off (central control)
  - Set VDEC_GCON reg 0 bit[0] (vdec subsys clock enable) = 0

6.23.4.4.2 Turn off VDEC Auto Power Down

FW can turn off VDEC auto power down by disabling the setting of "auto turn off dram clk, vdec sys clock" and disabling "Auto set pdn_con_spec = 32'hffffffff & Auto set pdn_con_module = 32'hffffffff".

Related register settings are:

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- Disable "Auto turn off dram clock, vdec_sys clock"
  - Set VDEC_GCON reg 6 bit[0] = 1
- Disable "Auto set pdn_con_spec = 32'hffffffff & Auto set pdn_con_module = 32'hffffffff"
  - Set VDEC_MISC reg 59 bit[0] = 1

The decoding process will change after FW turns off VDEC auto power-down control. The difference is shown Figure 6-78.

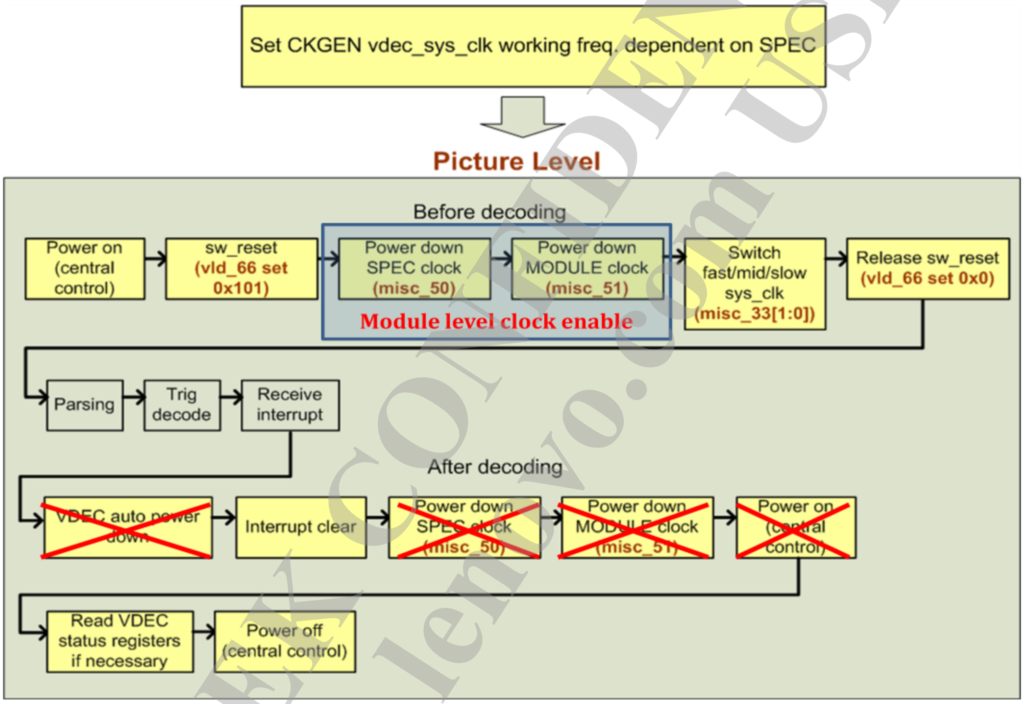


Figure 6-78. Software reset and power control (turn off VDEC auto power down)

6.23.4.4.3 Other Relative Registers for Power Control

FW can disable "Auto turn off dram clock, vdec_sys clock" when dec_error occurs by setting VDEC_GCON reg 6 bit[4] = 1.In addition, when dec_error occurs, there is **always no** "Auto set pdn_con_spec = 32'hffffffff & Auto set pdn_con_module = 32'hffffffff".

6.23.4.4.4 Clock and Power Down Setting

a. Enable global clocks of VDEC (DRAM clock, vdec_sys clock, bus clock).
   i. Set VDEC_GCON reg 0 bit[0] (vdec subsys clock enable) = 1.
b. Enable SRAMs of SMI/VDEC.
   i. ***SLEEP_IFR_PWR_CON** = (*SLEEP_IFR_PWR_CON&0xffff0off);
   ii. ***SLEEP_VDE_PWR_CON** = (*SLEEP_IFR_PWR_CON&0xffff0off);

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

c. Set up clock gating for each standard and modules.
   i. Software reset: Set VLD reg 66 = 0x101.
   ii. Set up **pdn_con_spec** & **pdn_con_module** setting for different specs.
      1. **pdn_con_spec (VDEC_MISC reg 50 (0xC8)**)
         A) **pdn_con_module (VDEC_MISC reg 51 (0xCC)**)
   iii. Set up vdec_sys_clk_sel for different specs:
      1. **vdec_sys_clk_sel (VDEC_MISC reg 33(0x84))**
   iv. Release software reset: reset VLD reg 66 = 0x0

VDEC system clock frequent, as well as Module level power down control, depend on different specs. Details are described in Table 6-30.

Table 6-30. Power down control and clock selection

SPEC	VDEC_MISC reg 50 (0xC8) pdn_con_spec (set 1: turn off clock)	VDEC_MISC reg 51 (0xCC) pdn_con_module (set 1: turn off clock)	VDEC_MISC reg 33(0x84) vdec_sys_clk_sel (0 = Slow; 1 = Mid; 2 = Fast)
MPEG1_2	0x1FE	0x7F6A_15FD (w/o DBK) 0x7F6A_151D (w DBK)	0x1 (mid)
MPEG4	0x1FD	0x7F6A_11E8 (w/o DBK) 0x7F6A_1108 (w DBK)	0x1 (mid)
H.264/MVC	0x1F7	0x53E2_0180	0x2 (fast)

6.23.4.4.5 Interrupt Clear

In MT6737, there is no interrupt clear from CPU, i.e. interrupt clear should be achieved by FW setting up internal VDEC RISC. To perform interrupt clear, set up the following:

VDEC_MISC reg 41
– Bit [0] (risc_clr_int_mode) always set to 1
– Bit [4] (risc_int_clr): Internal VDEC RISC clear int

6.23.4.5 Initial Bitstream DMAs and Barrel-Shifters

Before triggering HW VDEC to decode a picture, load bitstream from DRAM to VDEC internal memory and set up correct read location of bitstream. These steps are known as the initial fetch and initial barrel-shifters. The concept is described in Figure 6-79, and the flow chart is in Figure 6-80.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

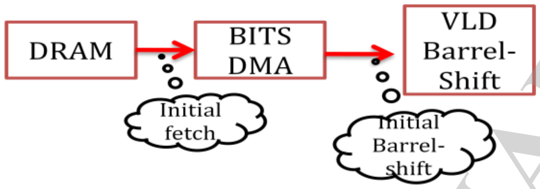


Figure 6-79. Initial fetch and initial Barrel-shift

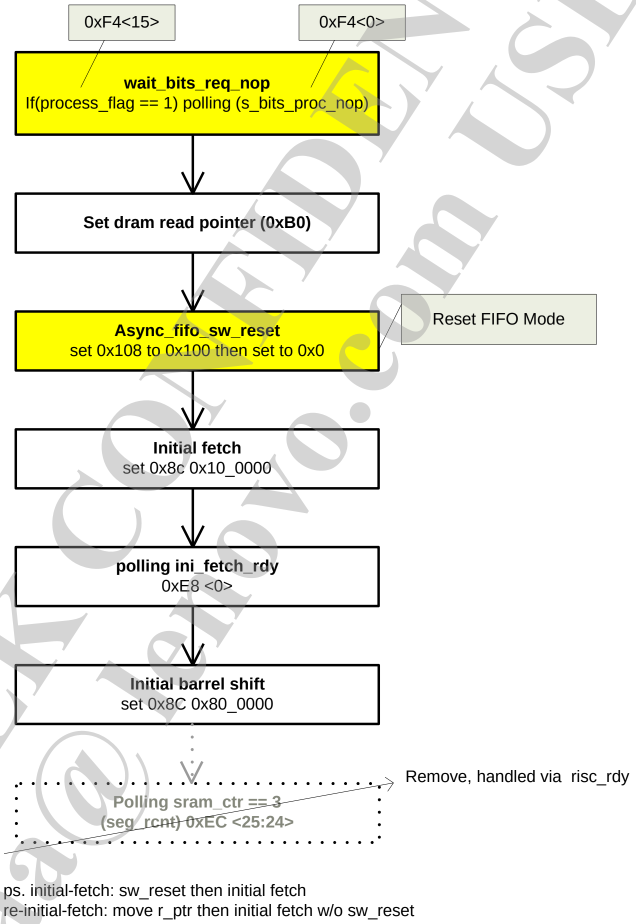


Figure 6-80. Flow chart of initial fetch and initial Barrel-shift

6.23.4.5.1 Bitstream FIFO (vb SRAM)

After initial fetch, the bitstream will be loaded in to bitstream FIFO (vb SRAM). When the amount of empty data is less than the threshold, the engine will auto fetch bitstream from DRAM to bitstream FIFO (see Figure 6-81).

- Read pointer of bitstream buffer: vb_sram_ra (0x0EC VB_SRAM_RA<4:0>)
- Write pointer of bitstream buffer: vb_sram_wa (0x0EC VB_SRAM_WA<12:8>)
- Read counter for each 128-bit data: seg_rcnt (0x0EC SEG_RCNT<25:24>)

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

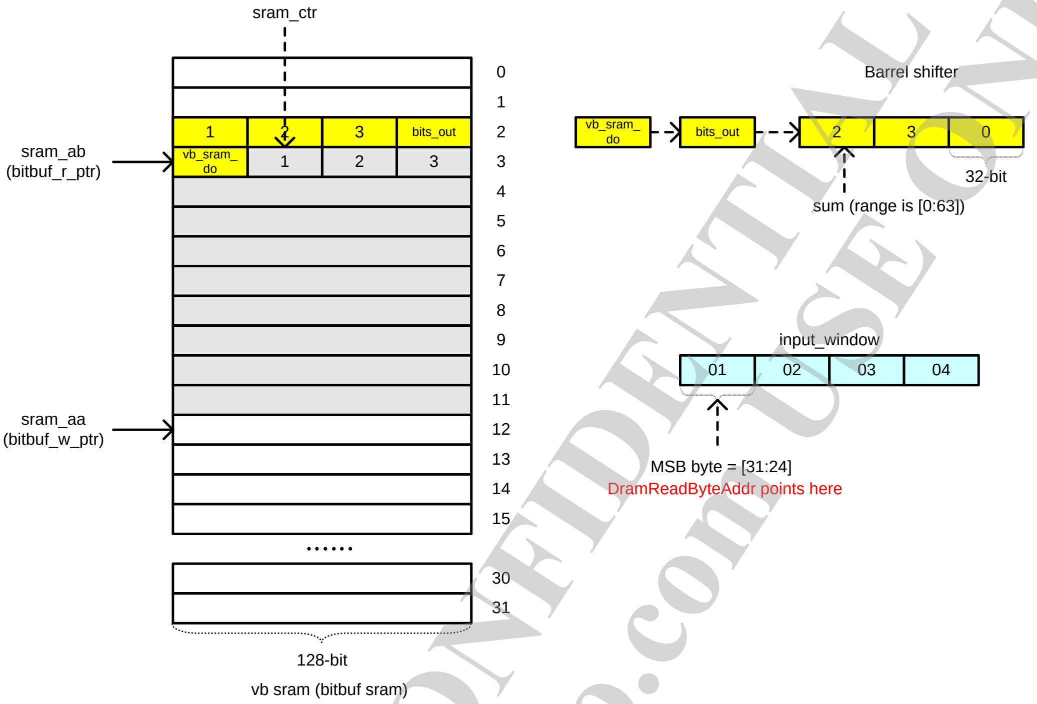


Figure 6-81. Block diagram of bitstream buffer and barrel shifter

When vb_sram_ra points to row 3 and seg_rcnt value is 1, the barrel shifter content is {row2{2}, row2{3}, row3{0}}.

6.23.4.5.2 Barrel Shifter

The barrel shifter has 3*32 bits. The sum is the read pointer of barrel shifter, i.e. the start address of input window. Figure 6-82 is the block diagram.

- Read pointer of barrel shifter: Sum (0x114 BSSR<5:0>); range [0, 63]
- Input window (0x0F0 BIW(#60) <31:0>)

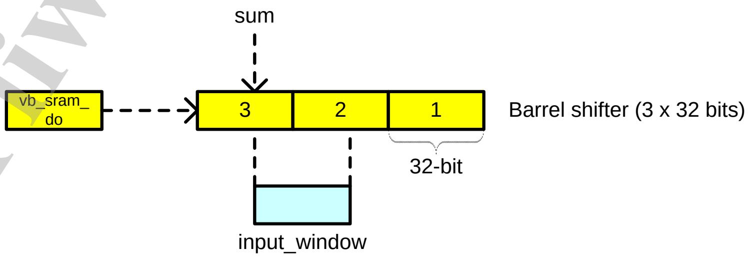


Figure 6-82. Block diagram of barrel shifter and input window

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

VDEC also provides checksum register for debugging. By checking the values of these registers with simulation result, you can confirm whether the above process is correct. The location of checksum registers are listed in Table 6-31.

Table 6-31. Checksum register

Spec	Base	Reg offset
BITS_DMA		
MPEG-2	VLD	69 (0x114) bit [5:0]
H.264/MVC	AVC_VLD	33 (0xa4) bit [21:16]

6.23.4.6 VDEC Output Format

VDEC supports two types of output formats:

- 16*32 Progressive Mode (NV12_BLK)
  - Original block mode (default)
- 16*32 Field Compact Mode (NV12_BLK_FCM)
  - PP, set PP reg 15 bit[28] = 0
  - MC, set MC reg 584 bit[24] = 0

The difference between progressive mode and field compact mode is shown in Figure 6-83. Besides MPEG2, MPEG4 and VP6, it is recommended that the output results are written to DRAM by PP for better efficiency.

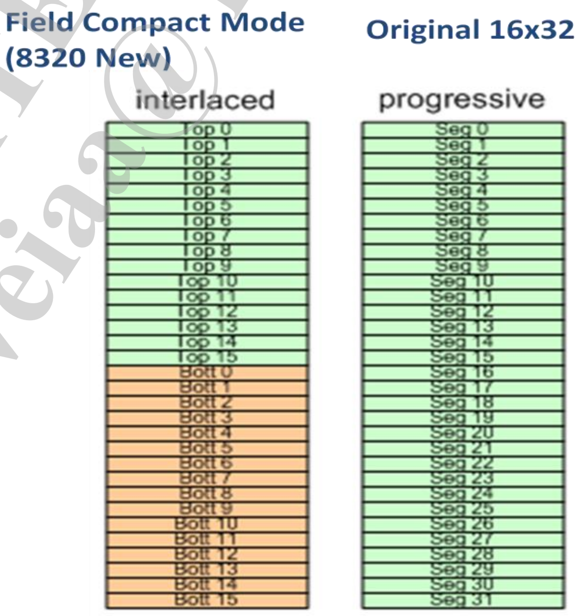


Figure 6-83. Field compact mode and progressive mode

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweia@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.23.4.7 VDEC Break Function

This section describes the correct steps for FW to break VDEC before finishing decoding a picture.

1. Set up vdec_break.
   – Set VDEC_MISC reg 64 Bit [0] (vdec_break) = 1'b1
2. Monitor status vdec_break_ok
   – VDEC_MISC reg 65 Bit [0]: vdec_break_ok_0
   – VDEC_MISC reg 65 Bit [4]: vdec_break_ok_1
   – Monitor until both vdec_break_ok _0 = 1 && vdec_break_ok_1= 1
3. Software reset
   – VLD reg 66 Bit [0]: vdec_sw_rst
   – Set vdec_sw_rst = 1 then reset vdec_sw_rst = 0
4. Turn off the clocks.
5. Finish.

6.23.5 Register Definition

See chapater 4.23 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.24 MPEG-4 Video Encoder

6.24.1 Introduction

MT6737 MPEG-4 VENC is a MPEG-4 simple profile 720p 30FPS @ 15Mbps encoder hardware design. It is composed of algorithm flexibility and guaranteed performance.

6.24.2 Features

- MPEG-4 simple profile @ level 3
- H.263 profile 0
- VOP type = I or P
- DC prediction
- Unrestricted motion compensation (with half-pel precision)
- Short header mode
- fcode = 1 ~ 7
- intra_dc_vlc_threshold = 0
- Maximum horizontal luma pixel resolution up to 1,280
- Maximum vertical luma pixel resolution up to 720

6.24.3 Block Diagram

MPEG-4 VENC adopts hybrid architecture. The hardware part processes texture coding and entropy coding, and other coding tools are processed by the ARM processor. VENC hardware and ARM processor transfer data through DRAM interface and ACE interface.

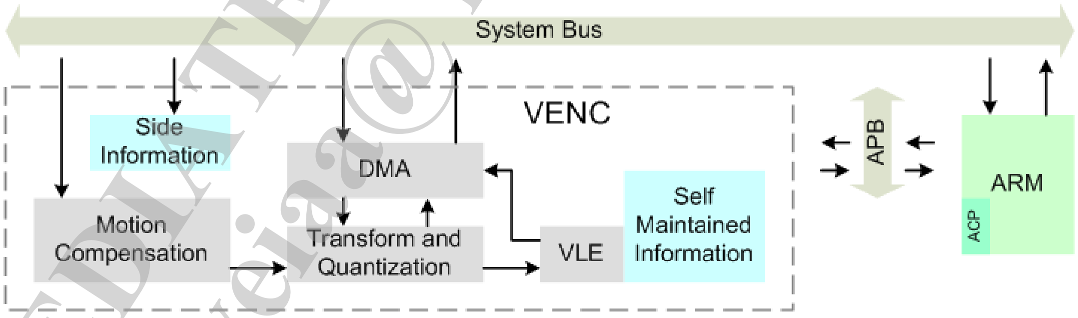


Figure 6-84. Block diagram of MPEG-4 VENC

6.24.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.24 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiqiao@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.25 MFG

6.25.1 Introduction

MFG contains Mali-T720 MP1 GPU and clock/reset control logic. The Mali-T720 series of GPUs process extremely complicated graphics and perform general processing tasks assigned by the main application processor. This diagram shows the main components and interface of MFG.

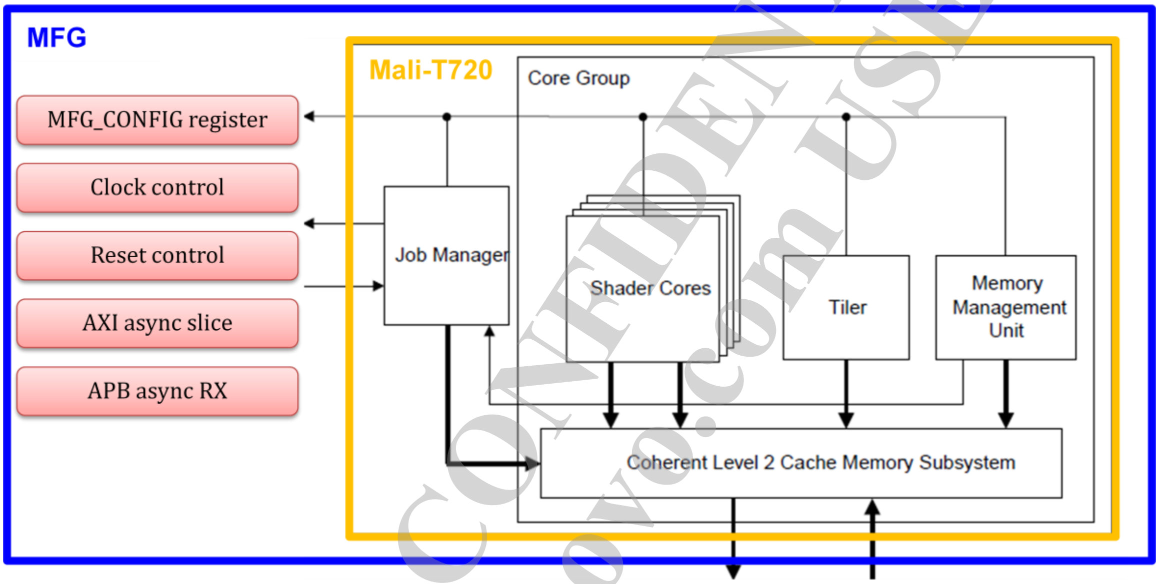


Figure 6-85. Block diagram and interface of MFG

6.25.2 Features

The Mali-T720 MP1 GPU includes the following features:

- A rich API feature set with high-performance support for both shader-based and fixed-function graphics APIs. These API graphics industry standards are:
  - *OpenGL ES 1.1 Specification* at Khronos
  - *OpenGL ES 2.0 Specification* at Khronos
  - *OpenGL ES 3.0 Specification* at Khronos
  - *OpenCL 1.0 Specification* at Khronos
  - *OpenCL 1.1 Specification* at Khronos
  - *OpenCL 1.2 Specification* at Khronos
  - *DirectX 9 Specification*
- Anti-aliasing capabilities
- An effective core for *General Purpose computing on GPU* (GPGPU) applications
- Image quality using double-precision FP64, and anti-aliasing
- Bus protocol
  - 128-bit AXI bus with up to 32 outstanding

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR lenovo.com USE ONLY
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

  - 32-bit APB bus
- Level-2 cache
  - 64KB
  - 4-way set associative
- Performance
  - Triangle rate 72M Tri/sec
  - Fill rate 650M Pixels/sec
  - Shader rate 11 GFLOPS

6.25.3 Register Definition

See chapater 4.25 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

6.26 Multimedia Memory Management Unit (M4U)

6.26.1 Introduction

In the smart phone system, the multimedia (MM) engine usually requires a certain amount of contiguous memory region. In order to avoid memory fragmentation, the Operating System (OS) needs to perform memory copy to align the requested ranges with one another. However, excessive memory copy may greatly degrade the system performance. For some performance-critical engines, a common method to guarantee sufficient memory available for them is to statically reserve the physical memory. This solution is straightforward but expensive since a large amount memory is reserved for a certain engine without sharing with others.

The Multimedia Memory Management Unit (M4U), which is also referred to as the IOMMU, is therefore designed to solve the fragmentation problem by paging the memory space and to reduce the cost of static memory reservation. Each page has an identical size of 4KB and can inherently be self-aligned without needing any memory copies. This means the system performance will be enhanced a lot due to exempting memory copies. With the unit of 4KB, the chance of occurring internal fragmentation is acceptable in our system and moreover the virtual memory efficiency is much better than that of using a larger unit of page size, e.g. 1MB. Therefore, with a smaller unit of page size, there will be ample page numbers available in the system. The engines will have even more chances to obtain the pages from the OS.

The major function of the M4U is to translate a virtual address into a physical one by performing page table look-up. As a result, the memory space of the MM engines is virtualized and contiguously seen by the MM engines. Along with the page table managed by the OS, there is no longer need to statically reserve any physical memory for the MM engines on system-up. The physical memory can be allocated dynamically in the unit of 4KB by the OS. From the system cost of view, the physical memory size is greatly reduced.

Since all the MM engines can use the M4U to perform address translation, M4U plays a critical role in MM performance, especially for hard real-time MM engines. The translation look-aside buffer (TLB), a major component in the M4U, caches the page numbers to accelerate the translation process. Besides, M4U performs auto-prefetching function to further lower the impact of page table walk caused by cache compulsory misses as well. In addition, a non-blocking TLB interface is designed to support miss-under-miss capability to achieve high performance translation.

6.26.2 Features

- One-level address translation with 4KB page size
- Two-level of TLB structure (main TLB and prefetch TLB):
  - Level 1 is used to cache the most-recently-used pages.
  - Level 2 performs table walk when TLB miss and auto-prefetching when TLB hit
  - Entry number: 48
- Entry lock in the main TLB for critical pages

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

- Supports TLB range invalidation and full range invalidation to free TLB entries
- Supports range sequential single-entry and multi-entry mode to minimize the entry usage
  - 16 sequential ranges available
- Supports range wrap mode in prefetch TLB for better address prediction
  - 4 wrap ranges available
- Each master port can be programmed to use M4U or not.
- Supports TrustZone security
- Supports high-performance bus prioritization for transactions with different priority levels

Descriptor format				
31:12	11:4	3	2	1:0
Page number	Reserved	Non-secure	Sharable	Access type

Figure 6-86. Descriptor attributes

In Figure 6-86, bit[3]:NS is used to differentiate secure and non-secure memory region for TrustZone security support. bit[2]:sharable is used to indicate if the coherence access with the CPU caches is required or not. bit[1:0]:should be 2'b10 for a valid 4KB page.

6.26.3 Block Diagram

In the system architecture, M4U is placed between the Smart Multimedia Interface (SMI) and the External Memory Interface (EMI) (see Figure 6-87). In Figure 6-87, M4U is shared by all MM engines and performs virtual to physical address translation for MM engines.

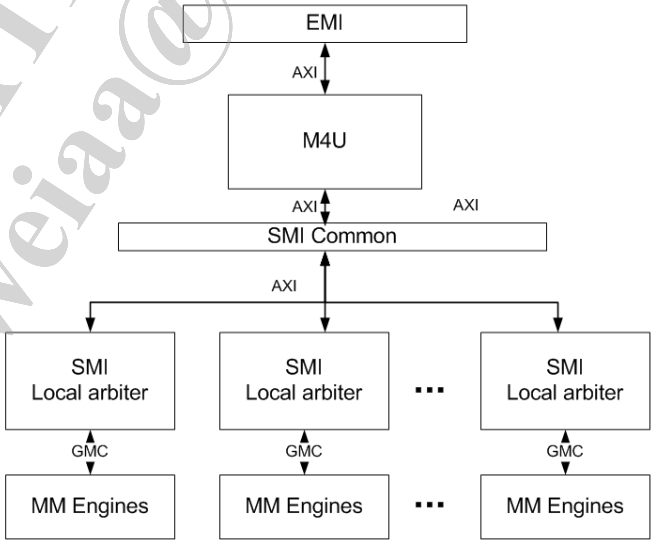


Figure 6-87. MM bus architecture

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

When a virtual address comes from the master port, M4U will perform page table look-up to translate the virtual address into a physical one. main_tlb and pre_fetch_tlb in (see Figure 6-88) are two levels of caches for the page table. They are used to accelerate the translation process. If a page number is a miss in tlbs, prefetch_tlb will perform “table walk” to obtain the page number in the DRAM. prefetch_tlb contains auto-prefetching logic as well to increase the cache hit-rate. The non-blocking TLB interface is designed to support miss-under-miss capability to achieve high performance translation.

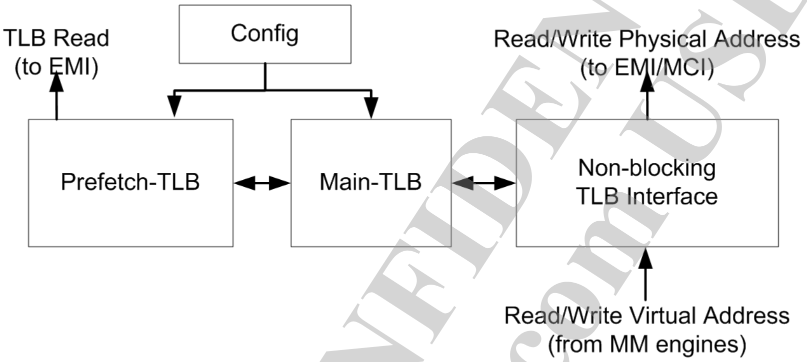


Figure 6-88. Block diagram of M4U

In Figure 6-88, M4U has a non-blocking interface to support miss-under-miss behavior and TLBs to cache the recently-used pages.

6.26.4 Register Definition

See chapater 4.26 of *“MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table”*.

6.26.5 Programming Guide

1. Enable M4U for the corresponding ports (refer to the SMI_LARB/SMI_COMMON functional spec).
2. Request for a page table from the OS for the working address space.
3. Confirm the memory access behavior of each master.
4. Program the registers based on the master’s memory-access behavior, e.g. set the range sequential single-entry for the scan-line based masters then the range sequential multiple-entry and wrap mode for the rotators.
5. Set the pre-fetch distance to either “forward” or “backward” direction for the ports (default: forward 1).
6. Set up the page table base address.
7. Launch the engines.

© 2016 MediaTek Inc.

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.
MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL FOR weiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

7 Analog Baseband

7.1 AP Mixedsys

7.1.1 Block Diagram

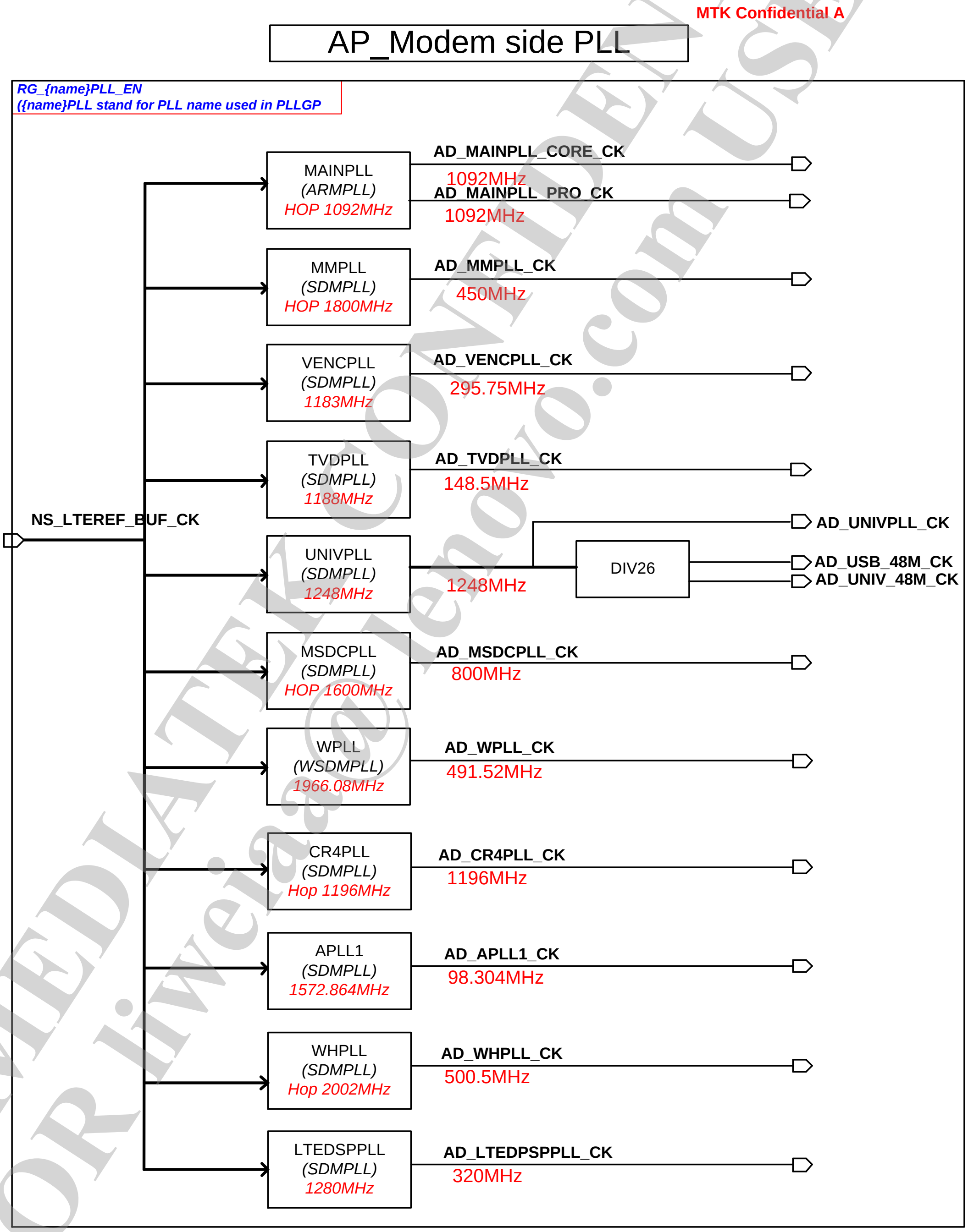


Figure 7-1. PLL block diagram

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liwei@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

7.1.2 Register Definition

See chapater 5.1 of *"MT6737 LTE Smartphone Application Processor Software Register Table"*.

MEDIATEK CONFIDENTIAL
FOR liweiaa@lenovo.com USE ONLY

This document contains information that is proprietary to MediaTek Inc.
Unauthorized reproduction or disclosure of this information in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.